SUTRO
STACKS

SAN FRANCISCO PUBLIC LIBRARY

VITA SINE LITERIS MORS EST

Book No. *971 C358:2²

Accession 228329 ✓

NOT TO BE TAKEN FROM THE LIBRARY

Form No. 37—5M—9-24—C.P.

SAN FRANCISCO PUBLIC LIBRARY
3 1223 04026 9095

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2025

https://archive.org/details/bwb_S0-EAJ-087_2

THE PUBLICATIONS OF THE CHAMPLAIN SOCIETY

THE PUBLICATIONS OF THE CHAMPLAIN SOCIETY

THE WORKS OF SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN

VOLUME II

TORONTO
THE CHAMPLAIN SOCIETY

Five Hundred and Fifty Copies of this Volume have been printed. Fifty are reserved for Editorial purposes. The remaining Five Hundred are supplied only to Members of the Society and to Subscribing Libraries.

This copy is No. 53.

A subsequent edition of Six Hundred Copies will be printed for sale to the general public.

THE WORKS OF SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN

IN SIX VOLUMES

REPRINTED, TRANSLATED AND ANNOTATED BY SIX CANADIAN
SCHOLARS UNDER THE GENERAL EDITORSHIP OF

H. P. BIGGAR

VOLUME II

1608–1613

TRANSLATED BY
JOHN SQUAIR

THE FRENCH TEXTS COLLATED BY
J. HOME CAMERON

TORONTO
THE CHAMPLAIN SOCIETY
1925

x971
C358:2 2
228329

All rights reserved

PREFACE

IN addition to the Second Book of Champlain's *Les Voyages* and to his *Quatriesme Voyage*, which appeared together in 1613, this volume contains six contemporary documents relating to his career between 1610 and 1618. Besides being the only documents bearing upon Champlain's early life that have so far been discovered, they throw a most valuable light upon the objects he had in view at this time. For these reasons the General Editor, who is responsible for these texts, decided to print them here rather than in the projected supplementary volume mentioned in the last paragraph of the Editor's Introduction in Volume I. Will members of the Society please note the error there on page xvii regarding the illustrations in the portfolio being in colour, which was not found to be feasible?

The General Editor would like to take this opportunity of giving expression to his sense of the great loss which Canada has sustained by the sudden death in 1923 of the late Mr. S. V. Blake. Not only had Mr. Blake a very wide knowledge of all that was best in English literature but his own literary judgment was excellent. If the translations in Volume I have met with the approval of the members of the Champlain Society, this must be attributed in great part to the valuable help given by the late Mr. Blake to the General Editor when the final proofs of Volume I were going through his hands.

The General Editor also wishes to express his warmest thanks to Mr. J. L. Morris, of Pembroke, Ontario, for allowing him to reproduce the map of Champlain's route on Plate XI, and also for obtaining the photographs given on Plates XIII and XIV. Independently each of us discovered that the island visited by Champlain in Lake Allumette was not Allumette island, as has hitherto been supposed, but Morrison island. The members of the Society are also greatly indebted to Mr. C. W. Jeffreys for permission to reproduce his very interesting drawing of Champlain's first building at Quebec on Plate IV. Finally, Professor W. F. Ganong has been good enough to draw three more modern maps for comparison with those of Champlain on Plates II, III and VII. He has thus contributed to this edition a modern drawing of every locality mapped by Champlain.

H. P. B.

May 5, 1925.

CONTENTS

Part I.

PAGE

THE VOYAGES, 1613. Book II, 1608–1612 1

THE FOURTH VOYAGE, 1613 237

The French texts have been collated and annotated by J. Home Cameron.

The English translations are by J. Squair.

Part II.

SIX CONTEMPORARY DOCUMENTS RELATING TO CHAMPLAIN

1. His Marriage Contract dated December 27, 1610 315

2. Agreement for the Hire of a Servant dated July 22, 1617 324

3. Petition to the King and the Lords of His Council 326

4. Articles Attached to this Petition . . . 329

5. Petition to the Chamber of Commerce . . 339

6. Extract from the Letters of the Chamber of Commerce dated February 9, 1618 . . 346

The General Editor is responsible for the French texts.

The translations have been made under the direction of J. Squair.

ERRATA

Page viii, line 9, and last line of the List of Illustrations, *for* Jeffreys, *read* Jefferys.

Page 271, Notes 1 and 3, *for* Chat, *read* Chats.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS

PLATE

I. CHAMPLAIN'S SMALL MAP OF 1613 . *To face p.* 1

II. CHAMPLAIN'S MAP OF PORT DE TADOUSSAC . . . . . ,, ,, 19

III. CHAMPLAIN'S MAP OF QUEBEC . ,, ,, 25

IV. CHAMPLAIN'S PICTURE PLAN OF THE ABITATION DE QVEBECQ . . ,, ,, 39

V. CHAMPLAIN'S PICTURE PLAN OF THE DEFFAITE DES YROQUOIS AU LAC DE CHAMPLAIN . . . . ,, ,, 101

VI. CHAMPLAIN'S PICTURE PLAN OF THE FORT DES YROQUOIS . . . ,, ,, 134

VII. CHAMPLAIN'S MAP OF LE GRAND SAULT ST. LOUIS . . . ,, ,, 185

VIII. TITLE-PAGE OF NAUTONIER'S *MECOMETRIE* . . . . ,, ,, 222

IX. HENRI II. DE BOURBON PRINCE DE CONDE . . . . . ,, ,, 239

X. HUDSON'S MAP OF 1612 . . . ,, ,, 257

XI. J. L. MORRIS'S MAP OF CHAMPLAIN'S ROUTE, 1613 . . . . . ,, ,, 273

XII. CHAMPLAIN'S ASTROLABE . . . ,, ,, 275

XIII. VIEWS OF MORRISON ISLAND . . ,, ,, 278

XIV. VIEWS OF MORRISON ISLAND . . ,, ,, 280

On Plates II, III, and VII will be found modern drawings of the same localities by W. F. GANONG; and on Plate IV one by C. W. JEFFREYS of the *Abitation*.

SOMMAIRES DES CHAPITRES

SECOND LIVRE

Auquel sont descrits les voyages faits au grand fleuue sainct Laurens, par le sieur de Champlain

CHAP. I

PAGE

Resolution du sieur de Mons, pour faire les descouuertures par dedans les terres: sa commission & enfrainte d'icelle, par des Basques, qui desarmerent le vaisseau de Pont-graué; & l'accord qu'ils firent aprés entre eux 3

CHAP. II

De la riuiere de Saguenay, & des Sauuages, qui nous y vindrent abborder. De l'isle d'Orleans, & de tout ce que nous y auons remarqué de singulier 16

SUMMARIES OF THE CHAPTERS

BOOK SECOND

Wherein are described the voyages made to the great river St. Lawrence by the Sieur de Champlain

CHAPTER I

PAGE

Determination of the Sieur de Monts to make explorations in the interior; his commission and infringement of the same by Basques, who disarmed the ship of Pont-Gravé; and the agreement afterwards made between them 3

CHAPTER II

Of the River Saguenay and the savages who visited us there. Of the Island of Orleans and of all the remarkable things observed by us there 16

CHAP. III

PAGE

Arriuée à Quebec, où nous fismes nos logemens. Sa situation. Conspiration contre le service du Roy, & ma vie, par aucuns de nos gens. La punition qui en fut faite, & tout ce qui se passa en cet affaire. 24

CHAP. IV

Retour du Pont-graué en France. Description de nostre logement, & du lieu où seiourna Iaques Quartier en l'an 1535 35

CHAP. V

Semences & vignes plantées à Quebec. Commencement de l'hyuer & des glaces. Extresme necessité de certains sauuages 52

CHAP. VI

Maladie de la terre à Quebec. Le suiect de l'hyuernement. Description dudit lieu. Arriuée du sieur de Marais, gendre de Pont-graué, audit Quebec 59

CHAPTER III

PAGE

Arrival at Quebec, where we made places to lodge in. Its situation. Plot by some of our men against the king's service, and against my life. The punishment that was meted out to them, and all that happened in connection with this affair 24

CHAPTER IV

Pont-Gravé's return to France. Description of our quarters and of the place where Jacques Cartier lived in 1535 35

CHAPTER V

Grain sowed and vines planted at Quebec. Beginning of winter and frost. Extreme destitution of certain savages 52

CHAPTER VI

The scurvy at Quebec. Winter the cause. Description of the aforesaid place. Arrival of the Sieur des Marais, son-in-law of Pont-Gravé, at Quebec 59

CHAP. VII

PAGE

Partement de Quebec iusques à l'isle saincte Esloy, & de la rencontre que i'y fis des sauuages Algoumequins, & Ochatequins 65

CHAP. VIII

Retour à Quebec : & depuis continuation auec les sauuages iusques au saut de la riuiere des Yroquois 72

CHAP. IX

Partement du saut de la riuiere des Yroquois. Description d'vn grand lac. De la rencontre des ennemis que nous fismes audit lac, & de la façon & conduite qu'ils vsent en allant attaquer les Yroquois . . . 82

CHAP. X

Retour de la Bataille & ce qui se passa par le chemin . . . 101

CHAP. XI

Retour en France & ce qui se passa iusques au rembarquement . . 108

CHAPTER VII

PAGE

Departure from Quebec, as far as the Island of St. Eloi. Meeting there with the Algonquins and Ochataiguins 65

CHAPTER VIII

Return to Quebec, and afterwards continuation of our journey with the Indians as far as the Rapids in the river of the Iroquois . . 72

CHAPTER IX

Departure from the Rapids of the river of the Iroquois. Description of a great lake. Our meeting with the enemy at the aforesaid lake and of the manner in which our Indians attack the Iroquois . . 82

CHAPTER X

Return from the battle and what took place on the way . . . 101

CHAPTER XI

Return to France and what occurred up to the time of re-embarkation . 108

SECOND VOYAGE DV SIEVR DE CHAMPLAIN

CHAP. I

PAGE

Partement de France pour retourner en la nouuelle France : & ce qui se passa iusques à nostre arriuée en l'habitation 115

CHAP. II

Partement de Quebec pour aller assister nos sauuages alliez à la guerre contre les Yroquois leurs ennemis & tout ce qui se passa iusques à nostre retour en l'habitation 122

CHAP. III

Retour en France. Rencontre d'vne Baleine & de la façon qu'on les prent 148

SECOND VOYAGE OF THE SIEUR DE CHAMPLAIN

CHAPTER I

PAGE

Departure from France to return to New France, and what happened until we arrived at the settlement 115

CHAPTER II

Departure from Quebec to go and help our Indian allies in the war against the Iroquois their enemies, and all that happened until our return to the settlement 122

CHAPTER III

Return to France. Meeting with a whale and how these are taken . 148

LE TROISIESME VOYAGE DV SIEVR DE CHAMPLAIN EN L'ANNEE 1611

CHAP. I

PAGE

Partement de France pour retourner en la Nouuelle France. Les dangers & autres choses qui arriuerent iusques en l'habitation . . . 157

CHAP. II

Descente à Quebec pour faire raccommoder la barque. Partement dudit Quebecq pour aller au saut trouuer les sauuages & recognoistre vn lieu propre pour vne habitation 173

CHAP. III

Deux cens sauuages rameinent le François qu'on leur auoit baillé, & remmenerent leur sauuage qui estoit retourné de France. Plusieurs discours de part & d'autre 186

THE THIRD VOYAGE OF THE SIEUR DE CHAMPLAIN IN THE YEAR 1611

CHAPTER I

PAGE

Departure from France to return to New France. The dangers and other things which occurred until we reached the settlement . 157

CHAPTER II

Landing at Quebec to repair the pinnace. Departure from Quebec for the Rapids to meet with the savages and to select a proper site for a settlement 173

CHAPTER III

Two hundred savages bring back the Frenchman who had been given to them, and take away again their Indian who had returned from France. Several speeches on both sides 186

CHAP. IV

PAGE

Arriuuée à la Rochelle. Association rompue entre le sieur de Mons & ses associés les sieurs Colier & le gendre de Rouen. Enuie des François touchant les nouuelles descouuertures de la nouuelle France . . 215

Intelligence des deux cartes Geografiques de la nouuelle France . . 222

Plus est adiouté le voyage à la petite carte du destroit qu'ont trouué les Anglois au dessus de Labrador depuis le 53. degré de latitude, iusques au 63. qu'ils ont descouuert en ceste presente annee 1612. pour trouuer vn passage d'aller à la Chine par le Nort, s'il leur est possible: & ont hyuerné au lieu où est ceste marque, €. Ce ne fut pas sans auoir beaucoup enduré de froidures, & furent contraincts de retourner en Angleterre : ayans laissé leur chef dans les terres du Nort, & depuis six mois, trois autres vaisseaux sont partis pour penetrer plus auant, s'ils peuuent, & par mesmes moyens voir s'ils trouueront les hommes qui ont esté delaissez audict pays . . 239

CHAPTER IV

PAGE

Arrival at La Rochelle. Partnership dissolved between the Sieur de Monts and his associates, the Sieurs Colier and Le Gendre of Rouen. Jealousy of the French regarding the new explorations in New France 215

Explanation of the two maps of New France 222

Further there is added the voyage by the small map to the strait which the English have found above Labrador from the 53rd to the 63rd degree of latitude, discovered by them in this present year 1612, in order to find a passage to China by the north if possible: and they have wintered at the place marked thus €. This was not without much suffering from cold and they were obliged to return to England, having left their leader in these northern lands, and six months ago three more ships set out to penetrate still farther if they can, and see by the same means if they could find the men who were left in that country 239

p. 161.

LES VOYAGES

FAITS AV GRAND FLEVVE

SAINCT LAVRENS PAR LE

sieur de Champlain Capitaine ordinaire
pour le Roy en la marine, depuis
l'année 1608. iusques en 1612.

THE VOYAGES

TO THE GREAT RIVER

ST. LAWRENCE BY THE

Sieur de Champlain, Captain in
the Royal Navy, from the
year 1608 until 1612.

LIVRE SECOND.

Resolution du sieur de Mons pour faire les descouuertures par dedans les terres; sa commission, & enfrainte d'icelle par des Basques qui desarmerent le vaisseau de Pont-graué; & l'accort qu'ils firent aprés entre eux.

CHAP. I.

ESTANT de retour en France aprés auoir seiourné trois ans au pays de la nouuelle Frãce,[1] ie fus trouuer le sieur de Mons, auquel ie recitay les choses les plus singulieres que i'y eusse veues depuis son partemēt, & luy donnay la carte & plan des costes & ports les plus remarquables qui y soient.

Quelque temps aprés ledit sieur de Mons se delibera de continuer ses dessins, & paracheuer de descouurir dans les

---

BOOK SECOND

Determination of the Sieur de Monts to make explorations in the interior; his commission and infringement of the same by Basques, who disarmed the ship of Pont-Gravé; and the agreement afterwards made between them.

CHAPTER I

HAVING returned to France after a stay of three years in the country of New France,[1] I went to see the Sieur de Monts, to whom I related the most striking things I had observed there since his departure, and I gave him the map and drawings of the more remarkable coasts and harbours in those parts.

Some time afterwards, the Sieur de Monts determined to continue his plans and to complete the exploration of the

[1] See Vol. I, 233 *et seq.*

terres par le grand fleuue S. Laurens, où i'auois esté par le commandement du feu Roy HENRY LE GRAND[1] en p. 162 l'an 1603. quelque 180. lieues, commençant par la hauteur de 48. degrez deux tiers de latitude, qui est Gaspé entree dudit fleuue iusques au grand saut, qui est sur la hauteur de 45. degrez & quelques minuttes de latitude, où finist nostre descouuerture, & où les batteaux ne pouuoiēt passer à nostre iugement pour lors :[2] d'autāt que nous ne l'auions pas bien recogneu comme depuis nous auons fait.

Or aprés que par plusieurs fois le sieur de Mons m'eust discouru de son intention touchant les descouuertures, print resolution de continuer vne si genereuse, & vertueuse entreprinse, quelques peines & trauaux qu'il y eust eu par le passé. Il m'honora de sa lieutenance pour le voyage: & pour cest effect fit equipper deux vaisseaux, où en l'vn commandoit du Pont-graué, qui estoit deputé pour les

---

interior along the great river St. Lawrence, where in the year 1603 by the command of the late King HENRY THE GREAT,[1] I had travelled some 180 leagues, beginning in the latitude 48° 40′ which is Gaspé, the entrance to the said river, as far as the great fall in latitude 45° and some minutes, where our exploration ended and where in our then opinion no boats could pass farther;[2] for we had not yet thoroughly reconnoitred it as we have done since.

When the Sieur de Monts had conversed with me several times regarding his intention on the subject of the explorations, he decided to continue such a noble and worthy enterprise, notwithstanding the difficulties and labours it had cost him in the past. He honoured me by choosing me as his lieutenant for the expedition; and for this purpose had two vessels equipped, one of which was commanded by Pont-Gravé, who was deputed to carry on negotiations with

[1] Henri IV was assassinated on May 14, 1610.

[2] See Vol. I, 91–165.

negotiations, auec les sauuages du pays, & ramener auec luy les vaisseaux : & moy pour yuerner audict pays.

Le sieur de Mons pour en supporter la despence obtint lettres de sa Maiesté pour vn an, où il estoit interdict à toutes personnes de ne trafficquer de pelleterie auec les sauuages, sur les peines porte[e]s[a] par la commission qui ensuit.

p. 163. HENRY PAR LA GRACE DE DIEV ROY DE FRANCE ET DE NAVARRE, *A nos amez & feaux Conseillers, les officiers de nostre Admirauté de Normandie, Bretaigne & Guienne, Baillifs, Seneschaux, Preuosts, Iuges ou leurs Lieutenans, & à chacun d'eux endroict soy, en l'estenduë de leurs ressorts, Iurisdictions & destroits, Salut : Sur l'aduis qui nous a esté donné par ceux qui sont venus de la nouuelle France, de la bonté, & fertilité des terres dudit pays, & que les peuples d'iceluy sont disposez à receuoir la cognoissance de Dieu, Nous auons resolu de faire continuer l'habitation qui auoit esté cy deuant commencée audit pays, à fin que nos subjects y puissent aller librement trafficquer. Et sur l'offre que le sieur de Monts Gentil-*

[a] Nous mettons entre parenthèses les lettres ou mots supprimés, et entre crochets les lettres ou mots ajoutés.

---

the natives of the region and to bring back the vessels with him, whilst I was to spend the winter in those parts.

The Sieur de Monts, in order to bear the expense, obtained from His Majesty letters for one year, wherein all persons were forbidden to trade in peltries with the natives, under the penalties set forth in the following Commission :

HENRY, BY THE GRACE OF GOD, KING OF FRANCE AND OF NAVARRE, *to our well-beloved and faithful councillors, the officers of our Admiralty of Normandy, Brittany, and Guyenne, magistrates, marshals, provosts, judges or their deputies, and to each of them for his own part, to the extent of their powers, jurisdictions and authority, Greeting : Upon the information which has been given to us by those who have come from New France regarding the good quality and fertility of the lands in that country, and that the inhabitants thereof are disposed to receive the knowledge of God, we have resolved to continue the settlement which had already been begun in those parts, in order that our subjects may go there and trade freely. And by virtue of the offer made to us by the Sieur de Monts, Gentleman-in-Ordinary*

homme ordinaire de nostre chambre, & nostre Lieutenant General audit pays, nous auroit proposee de faire ladite habitation, en luy donnant quelque moyen & commodité d'en supporter la despence : Nous auons eu aggreable de luy promettre & asseurer qu'il ne seroit permis à aucuns de nos subiects qu'à luy de trafficquer de pelleteries & autres marchandises, durant le temps d'vn an seulement, és terres, pays, ports, riuieres & aduenuës de l'estenduë de sa charge : Ce que voulons auoir lieu. Nous pour ces causes & autres considerations, à ce nous mouuans, vous mandons & ordonnons que vous ayez chacun de vous en l'estend[u]ë de vos pouuoirs, iurisdictions & destroicts, à faire de nostre part, comme nous faisons tres-expressement inhibitions & deffences à tous marchands, maistres & Capitaines de nauires, matelots, & autres nos subiects, de quelque qualité & condition qu'ils soient, d'equipper aucuns vaisseaux, & en iceux aller ou enuoyer faire traffic, ou trocque de Pelleteries, & autres choses auec les Sauuages de la nouuelle France, frequenter, negotier, & communiquer durant ledit temps d'vn an en l'estenduë du pouuoir dudit sieur de Monts, à peine de desobeyssance, de confiscation entiere de leurs vaisseaux, viures, armes, & marchandises, au proffit dudit sieur de Monts & pour asseurance de la punition de leur desobeissance : Vous permettrez, comme nous auons permis & permettons audict sieur de Monts ou ses lieutenans, de saisir,

---

of our chamber, and our Lieutenant-General in that country, to undertake the said settlement if we grant him the means and possibility of bearing the expense thereof, it has pleased us to promise and assure him that none of our subjects but himself shall be permitted to barter in furs or other merchandise for the period of one year only, in the lands, regions, harbours, rivers and points of access throughout his jurisdiction. This we desire to be done. We, for these causes and other considerations thereto us moving, command and order that each of you, to the extent of your powers, jurisdictions and authority, shall on our behalf, as we ourselves do, very expressly prohibit and forbid all merchants, masters and captains of vessels, sailors, and others of our subjects of whatever rank and condition they may be, to equip any ships, in which to carry on themselves, or to send others to carry on, trade or barter in furs or in any other things with the natives of New France or to visit, trade and communicate with them for the said period of one year throughout the extent of the jurisdiction of the Sieur de Monts, on pain of disobedience and of complete confiscation of their ships, provisions, arms and merchandise to the profit of the said Sieur de Monts, and to ensure the punishment of their disobedience you will permit, as we have permitted and do permit, the said Sieur de Monts or his lieutenants

apprehender, & arrester tous les contreuenans à nostre presente deffence & ordonnance, & leurs vaisseaux, marchandises, armes, viures, & vituailles, pour les amener & remettre és mains de la Iustice, & estre procedé, tant contre les personnes que contre les biens des desobeyssans, ainsi qu'il appartiendra. Ce que nous voulons, & vous mandons faire incontinent lire & publier par tous les lieux & endroicts publics de vosdits pouuoirs & iurisdictions, où vous iugerez besoin estre, par le premier nostre Huissier ou Sergent sur ce requis, en vertu de ces presentes, p. 164. *ou coppie d'icelles, deuëment collationnees pour vne fois seulement, par l'vn de nos amez & feaux Conseillers, Notaires & Secretaires, ausquelles voulons foy estre adioustee comme au present original, afin qu'aucuns de nosdits subiects n'en pretendent cause d'ignorance, ains que chacun obeysse & se conforme sur ce à nostre volonté. Mandons en outre à tous Capitaines de nauires, maistres d'iceux, contre-maistres, matelots, & autres estans dans vaisseaux ou nauires aux ports & haures dudit pays, de permettre, comme nous auons permis audit sieur de Monts, & autres ayant pouuoir & charge de luy, de visiter dans leursdits vaisseaux qui auront traicté de laditte Pelleterie, aprés que les presentes deffences leur auront esté signifiees. Nous voulons qu'à la requeste dudit sieur de Monts,*

---

to seize, apprehend, and arrest all those violating our present injunction and ordinance as well as their vessels, merchandise, arms, provisions, and victuals, in order to bring and deliver them into the hands of the officers of the law, and to take action, as well against the persons as against the property of the delinquents as the case may require. This is our will, which we order you immediately to have read and published in all parts and public places of your authority and jurisdiction, where you shall judge this to be necessary, by the first of our bailiffs or sergeants so asked to do, by virtue of these presents, or a copy of the same duly collated once only by one of our well-beloved and faithful councillors, notaries, and secretaries, to which it is our will that authority should be accorded as to this present original, so that none of our subjects may urge the plea of ignorance, but that every one may obey and conform in this matter to our will. We order, moreover, all captains of ships, masters, mates, sailors and others on board vessels or ships in the ports and harbours of that country to allow, as we have allowed the said Sieur de Monts and others holding power and authority from him, to make search in their said vessels which have engaged in the fur-trade after they have received notice of this present prohibitory order. It is our will that, on the request of the said Sieur de Monts, his

ses lieutenans, & autres ayans charge, vous procediez contre les desobeyssans & contreuenans, ainsi qu'il appartiendra : De ce faire vous donnons pouuoir, authorité, commission, & mandement special, nonobstant l'Arrest de nostre Conseil du 17. *iour de Iuillet dernier, clameur de haro, chartre normande, prise à-partie, oppositions, ou appellations quelsconques : Pour lesquelles, & sans preiudice d'icelles, ne voulons estre differé, & dont si aucune*[a] *interuiennent, nous en auons retenu & reserué à nous & à nostre Conseil la cognoissance, priuatiuement à tous autres Iuges, & icelle interdite & deffenduë à toutes nos Cours & Iuges : Car tel est nostre plaisir. Donné à Paris le septiesme iour de Ianuier, l'an de grace, mil six cents huict. Et de nostre regne le dix-neufiesme. Signé,* HENRY. *Et plus bas, Par le Roy, Delomenie. Et seellé sur simple queuë du grand seel de cire jaulne.*[1]

Collationné à l'original par moy Conseiller,
Notaire & Secretaire du Roy.

Ie fus à Honnefleur[2] pour m'enbarquer, où ie trouuay le vaisseau de Pontgraué prest, qui partit du port, le 5. d'Auril ;

[a] Il faut sans doute lire *aucuns.*

---

deputies or others in authority, you should proceed against those disobeying and contravening this order as the case may require : to do this we grant you power, authority, warrant, and special mandate, notwithstanding the decision of our council of the seventeenth day of July last, of protest, of privilege granted by letters patent, accusation of one's judge, opposition, or appeals of whatsoever kind ; on account of which and without renouncing them, it is our will that there should be no delay, and if any such should occur, we have retained and reserved cognisance thereof for ourselves and our Council, exclusive of all other judges, and have prohibited and forbidden them to all our Courts and judges : for such is our pleasure. Given at Paris on the seventh day of January in the year of Grace, one thousand six hundred and eight and of our reign the nineteenth. Signed HENRY. *And lower down, By the King Delomenie. And sealed with a single label of the great seal of yellow wax.*[1]

Collated with the original by me, councillor,
notary and secretary of the King.

For the purpose of embarking I went to Honfleur[2] where I found Pont-Gravé's vessel ready, who sailed from that

---

[1] Cf. Giry, *Manuel de diplomatique,* 628, 759, and 771–774.

[2] See Vol. I, 91.

& moy le 13. & arriuay sur le grand banc le 15. de May, par la hauteur de 45. degrez & vn quart de latitude, & le 26. eusmes cognoissance du cap saincte Marie, qui est par la hauteur de 46. degrez, trois quarts de latitude, tenant à l'isle de terreneufue.[1] Le 27. du mois eusmes la veue du cap sainct p. 165. Laurens tenant à la terre du cap Breton[2] & isle de sainct Paul, distante du cap de saincte Marie 83. lieues.[3] Le 30. du mois eusmes cognoissance de l'isle percée,[4] & de Gaspé, qui est soubs la hauteur de 48. degrez deux tiers de latitude, distant du cap de sainct Laurens, 70. à 75. lieues.

Le 3. de Iuin arriuasmes deuant Tadoussac, distant de Gaspé 80. ou 90. lieues, & mouillasmes l'ancre à la radde du port, de Tadoussac,[5] qui est à vne lieue du port, lequel

---

port on the fifth of April. I sailed on the thirteenth and arrived on the Grand Bank on the fifteenth of May in latitude 45° 15′, and on the twenty-sixth, in latitude 46° 45′, we sighted cape St. Mary, being part of the island of Newfoundland.[1] On the twenty-seventh of the month we sighted cape St. Lawrence, forming part of Cape Breton island ;[2] and the island of St. Paul, eighty-three leagues distant from cape St. Mary.[3] On the thirtieth of the month we sighted isle Percée[4] and Gaspé which is in latitude 48° 40′, and distant from cape St. Lawrence from seventy to seventy-five leagues.

On the third of June we arrived off Tadoussac, eighty or ninety leagues from Gaspé, and cast anchor in the roadstead of Tadoussac,[5] a league from the harbour, which is a

[1] Cape St. Mary lies in 46° 50′. See Vol. I, 93, note 2.

[2] Cape St. Lawrence, the north-eastern extremity of Cape Breton island. See Vol. I, 94.

[3] St. Paul island lies fifteen miles off cape North. See Vol. I, 94.

[4] Percé Rock, a huge mass of red sandstone, 290 feet high and 1500 feet long.

[5] See Vol. I, 96.

est cōme vne ance à l'entree de la riuiere du Saguenay, où il y a vne maree fort estrāge pour sa vistesse, où quelquesfois il vient des vents impetueux qui ameinent de grandes froidures. L'on tient que ceste riuiere a quelque 45. ou 50. lieues du port de Tadoussac iusques au premier saut, qui vient du Nort Norouest. Ce port est petit, & n'y pourroit que quelque 20. vaisseaux : Il y a de l'eau assez, & est à l'abry de la riuiere de Saguenay & d'vne petite isle de rochers qui est presque coupee de la mer. Le reste sōt mōtaignes hautes esleue[e]s, où il y a peu de terre, sinon rochers & sables rēplis de bois, cōme sappins & bouleaux. Il y a vn petit estanc proche du port rēfermé de mōtagnes couuertes de bois. A l'ētree y a deux pointes l'vne du costé du Surouest, contenant prés d'vne lieue en la mer, qui s'appelle la pointe sainct Matthieu, ou autrement aux Allouettes,[1] p. 166.
& l'autre du costé du Nordouest contenāt demy quart de

---

sort of cove at the mouth of the river Saguenay, where there is a tide quite remarkable for its swiftness, and where sometimes there come impetuous winds bringing with them intense cold. It is said that from the harbour of Tadoussac there are forty-five or fifty leagues to the first fall in this river which comes from the north-north-west. This harbour is small and can hold only some twenty vessels. There is water enough, and it is sheltered by the river Saguenay and by a small rocky island which is almost cut off by the sea. The rest of the shore is high mountains, where there is little soil and only rocks and sand covered with trees such as fir and birch. There is a small pond near the harbour enclosed with mountains covered with trees. There are two points at the mouth of the river, one on the south-west side, stretching nearly a league into the river [St. Lawrence], which is called point St. Matthew, or otherwise Lark point,[1] and the other on the north-west, stretching out an eighth

[1] See Vol. I, 97, and Plate II, p. 19 *infra*.

lieue, qui s'appele la pointe de tous les Diables,[1] pour le grand danger qu'il y a. Les vents du Su Suest frappēt dans le port, qui ne sont point à craindre : mais bien celuy du Saguenay. Les deux pointes cy dessus nommees assechent de basse mer : nostre vaisseau ne peust entrer dās le port pour n'auoir le vent & maree propre. Ie fis aussitost mettre nostre basteau hors du vaisseau pour aller au port voir si Pont-graué estoit arriué. Cōme i'estois en chemin, ie rēcontray vne chalouppe & le pilotte de Pont-graué & vn Basque, qui me venoit aduertir de ce qui leur estoit suruenu pour auoir voulu faire quelques deffences aux vaisseaux Basques de ne traicter suiuant la cōmission que le sieur de Mons auoit obtenuë de sa maiesté, Qu'aucuns vaisseaux ne pourroient traicter sans la permission du sieur de Monts, comme il estoit porté par icelle :

Et que nonobstant les significations que peust faire

---

of a league, and called All Devils' point,[1] because of the great danger there. The winds from the south-south-east strike into the harbour, but are not dangerous. That from the Saguenay, however, is so. The two above-mentioned points are dry at low tide, and our vessel could not enter the harbour, because wind and tide were unfavourable. I at once had our long-boat lowered to row to the harbour to see whether Pont-Gravé had arrived. On the way I met a shallop with Pont-Gravé's pilot and a Basque, who were coming to tell me what had happened to them because they had tried to prevent the Basque vessels from trading, in accordance with the commission which the Sieur de Monts had obtained from His Majesty, viz., that no vessels should be allowed to trade without the Sieur de Monts' permission, as set forth in the said commission.

He told me that notwithstanding all the notifications

[1] See Vol. I, 97, and Plate II, p. 19 *infra*.

Pont-graué de la part de sa Maiesté, ils ne laissoiēt de traicter la force en la main ; & qu'ils s'estoiēt mis en armes & se maintenoiēt si biē dans leur vaisseau, que faisant iouer touts leurs canons sur celuy de Pont-graué & tirāt force coups de mousquets, il fut fort blessé, & trois des siens, dont il y en eust vn qui en mourut, sans que le Pont fit aucune p. 167 resistance : Car dés la premiere salue de mousquets qu'ils tirerent il(s) fut abbatu par terre. Les Basques vindrent à bort du vaisseau & enleuerent tout le canon & les armes qui estoient dedans, disans qu'ils traicteroient nonobstant les deffences du Roy, & que quand ils seroient prés de partir pour aller en France ils luy rendroient son canon & son amonition, & que ce qu'ils en faisoient estoit pour estre en seureté. Entendant toutes ces nouuelles, cela me fascha fort, pour le commencement d'vne affaire, dont nous nous fussions bien passez.

Or aprés auoir ouy du pilotte toutes ces choses ie luy demanday qu'estoit venu faire le Basque au bort de nostre

which Pont-Gravé could make in His Majesty's name, they ceased not from forcibly carrying on barter, and that they had taken arms and defended themselves so well in their vessel, by bringing all their cannon to play upon Pont-Gravé's vessel, and by firing many musket shots, that he was severely wounded, as well as three of his men, one of whom had died. He had made no resistance ; for, at the first round of musketry which they fired, he was struck down. The Basques came aboard his ship and took away all his cannon and arms, saying that they would barter in spite of the king's orders and that when they were ready to sail for France they would give him back his cannon and ammunition, and that this action of theirs was for safety's sake. On hearing all this I was much annoyed at the brewing of a quarrel we could well have dispensed with.

Whereupon having listened to all these things from the pilot, I asked him what the Basque had come to do on board vaisseau, il me dit qu'il venoit à moy de la part de leur maistre appelé Darache, & de ses cōpagnōs, pour tirer asseurance de moy, Que ie ne leur ferois aucun desplaisir, lors que nostre vaisseau seroit dans le port.

Ie fis responce que ie ne le pouuois faire, que premier ie n'eusse veu le Pont. Le Basque dit que si i'auois affaire de tout ce qui despendoit de leur puissance qu'ils m'en assisteroient. Ce qui leur faisoit tenir ce langage, n'estoit que la cognoissance qu'ils auoient d'auoir failly, cōme ils p. 168. confessoient, & la crainte qu'on ne leur laissast faire la pesche de balene.

Aprés auoir assez parlé ie fus à terre voir le Pont pour prendre deliberation de ce qu'aurions affaire, & le trouuay fort mal. Il me conta particulierement tout ce qui c'estoit passé. Nous considerasmes que ne pouuions entrer audit port que par force, & que l'habitation[1] ne fut pardue[a] pour ceste année, de sorte que nous aduisasmes pour le mieux,

[a] Entendez : *et qu'à moins que l'habitation ne fût abandonnée.*

---

our ship. He told me that he came to me on behalf of their master, called Darache, and of his crew, to obtain assurance from me that I should do them no harm when our ship came into harbour.

I replied that I could do nothing until I had seen Pont-Gravé. The Basque said that if I had need of anything that depended upon them, they would help me. What made him speak thus was merely the conviction of having done wrong, as they confessed, and the fear lest they should not be allowed to fish for whale.

After a good deal of talk, I went ashore to see Pont-Gravé in order to deliberate as to what we should do, and found him in a serious condition. He related to me in detail all that had happened. We concluded that only by force could I enter the harbour, and to avoid the loss to the settlement[1] for this year, we thought it best (so that a good

---

[1] Quebec.

(afin d'vne iuste cause n'en faire vne mauuaise & ainsi se ruiner) qu'il failloit leur donner asseurance de ma part tant que ie serois là & que le Pont n'entreprēdroit aucune chose contre eux, mais qu'en France la iustice se feroit & vuideroit le different qu'ils auoient entr'eux.

Darache maistre du vaisseau me pria d'aller à son bort, où il me fit bonne reception. Aprés plusieurs discours ie fis l'accord entre le Pont & luy, & luy fis promettre qu'il n'entreprendroit aucune chose sur Pont-graué ny au preiudice du Roy & du sieur de Mons. Que s'ils faisoiēt le contraire ie tiēdrois ma parole pour nulle : Ce qui fut accordé & signé d'vn chacun.

En ce lieu y auoit nombre de sauuages qui y estoient venus pour la traicte de pelleterie, plusieurs desquels vindrent à nostre vaisseau auec leurs canots, qui sont de 8. ou 9. pas de long, & enuiron vn pas, ou[a] pas & demy de large par le p. 169.

---

[a] Le texte original porte *où*.

---

cause should not become a poor one and thus all be ruined) to reassure them on my behalf so long as I was there, and that Pont-Gravé should undertake nothing against them, but that in France justice should be done and the differences between them settled.

Darache, master of this ship, invited me to go aboard, where he received me well. After a good deal of discussion, I made peace between Pont-Gravé and him, and made him promise that he would undertake nothing against Pont-Gravé, nor against the king's interest nor that of the Sieur de Monts. That should they do the contrary, I would regard my promise as null and void. All this was agreed to and signed by each of us.

In this place were many Indians, who had come there for the fur-trade, several of whom came to our ship with their canoes, which are eight or nine yards long and about a yard or a yard and a half wide in the middle, tapering off

milieu, & vont en diminuant par les deux bouts. Ils sont fort subiects à tourner si on ne les scay bien gouuerner, & sont faicts d'escorce de boulleau, renforcez par le dedans de petits cercles de cedre blanc, bien proprement arrãgez : & sont si legers qu'vn homme en porte aysement vn. Chacun peut porter la pesanteur d'vne pipe. Quand ils veulent trauerser la terre pour aller en quelque riuiere où ils ont affaire, ils les portent auec eux. Depuis Chouacoet le long de la coste iusques au port de Tadoussac ils sont tous semblables.

at the two ends. They are very liable to upset if one does not know how to handle them, and are made of birch bark, strengthened inside with little hoops of white cedar, very nicely arranged, and are so light that a man can easily carry one of them. Each of them can hold the weight of a hogshead. When they wish to cross land to go into some river where they have business, they carry them with them. From Saco along the whole coast as far as Tadoussac they are all alike.

De la riuiere du Saguenay, & des sauuages qui nous y vindrent abborder. De l'isle d'Orleans ; & de tout ce que nous y auons remarqué de singulier.

CHAP. II.

APRÉS cest accord fait, ie fis mettre des charpentiers à accommoder vne petite barque du port de 12. à 14. tonneaux, pour porter tout ce qui nous seroit necessaire pour nostre habitation, & ne peut estre plustost preste qu'au dernier de Iuin.

Cependant i'eu moyen de visiter quelques endroits de la riuiere du Saguenay, qui est vne belle riuiere, & d'vne profondeur incroyable, comme 150. & 200. brasses. A quelque cinquante lieues de l'entree du port, comme dit est, p. 17
y a vn grand saut d'eau,[1] qui descend d'vn fort haut lieu & de

---

Of the River Saguenay and the savages who visited us there. Of the Island of Orleans and of all the remarkable things observed by us there.

CHAPTER II

WHEN this truce had been arranged, I set the carpenters to fit out a small pinnace of from twelve to fourteen tons, to transport all that would be necessary for our settlement, but it could not be got ready before the end of June.

Meanwhile I was able to visit certain parts of the river Saguenay, which is a fine river, and of an incredible depth, as much as 150 and 200 fathoms. Some fifty leagues from the mouth of the harbour, as already stated, there is a great waterfall,[1] which descends from a considerable height and with great impetuosity. There are some islands in this

[1] Chicoutimi waterfall, forty-five feet high.

grande impetuosité. Il y a quelques isles dedãs icelle riuiere qui sont fort desertes, n'estãs que rochers, couuertes de petits sapins & bruieres. Elle contient de large demie lieue en des endroits, & vn quart en son entree, où il y a vn courant si grand qu'il est trois quarts de maree couru dedãs la riuiere, qu'elle porte encore hors. Toute la terre que i'y ay veuë ne sont que montaignes & promontoires de rochers, la pluspart couuerts de sapins & boulleaux, terre fort mal plaisante, tant d'vn costé que d'autre : enfin ce sont de vrays deserts inhabités d'animaux & oyseaux : car allant chasser par les lieux qui me sembloient les plus plaisans, ie n'y trouuois que de petits oiselets, comme arondelles, & quelques oyseaux de riuiere, qui y viennent en esté ; autrement il n'y en a point, pour l'excessiue froidure qu'il y fait. Ceste riuiere vient du Norouest.

Les sauuages m'ont fait rapport qu'ayant passé le premier saut ils en passent huit autres, puis vont vne i[o]urnee sans

---

river which are very barren, being nothing but rocks, covered with small spruce and heath. It is half a league wide in places, and a quarter of a league at its mouth, where there is such a strong current that at three-quarter tide running into the river, it is still running out. All the land I saw there was nothing but mountains and rocky promontories, for the most part covered with spruce and birch, a very disagreeable country on both sides of the river ; in short a real wilderness uninhabited by animals and birds ; for on going hunting in the places which seemed to me the most agreeable, I found only quite small birds, such as swallows, and some river birds, which come there in summer. Beyond these there are none, by reason of the excessive cold which prevails. This river comes from the north-west.

The natives reported to me that, after passing the first fall, they come to eight others, then travel for a whole day en trouuer, & de rechef en passent dix autres, & vont dans vn lac,[1] où ils font trois iournees, & en chacune ils peuuent faire à leur aise dix lieues en montāt : Au bout du lac y a des peuples qui viuent errans ; & trois riuieres qui se deschargent p. dans ce lac,[2] l'vne venant du Nord, fort proche de la mer, qu'ils tiennent estre beaucoup plus froide que leur pays ; & les autres deux d'autres costes[a] par dedans les terres, où il y a des peuples sauuages errans qui ne viuēt aussi que de la chasse, & est le lieu où nos sauuages vont porter les marchandises que nous leur donnons pour traicter les fourrures qu'ils ont, cōme castors, martres, loups seruiers, & l'outres,[b] qui y sont en quantité, & puis nous les apportent à nos vaisseaux. Ces peuples septentrionaux disent aux nostres qu'ils voient la mer salee ; & si cela est, comme ie le tiens pour certain, ce ne doit estre qu'vn gouffre[c] qui entre

[a] A lire *costés*.

[b] A lire *loutres*.

[c] Ancien emploi, assez fréquent, du mot *gouffre* avec le sens de *golfe*.

---

without finding any, and again pass ten others and enter a lake,[1] which takes three days to traverse, and each day they can easily make ten leagues going up stream. At the end of the lake there are tribes who live in a nomad state, and three rivers which flow into this lake,[2] one coming from the north, very near the sea, which they hold to be much colder than their country, and the other two from other directions in the interior, where there are migratory tribes of savages who also live entirely by hunting. This is the region to which our savages go with the merchandise we give them in exchange for their furs, such as beaver, marten, lynx and otter which are found there in large numbers and which they then bring to our ships. These northern tribes tell our Indians that they see the salt sea, and if this be true, as I consider certain, it can only be a

---

[1] Lake St. John, about twenty-five miles in diameter.

[2] The Peribonka, Mistassini and Ashuapmouchouan. See Vol. I, 123.

dans les terres par les partie[s] du Nort.[1] Les sauuages disent qu'il peut y auoir de la mer du Nort au port de Tadoussac 40. à 50. iournees à cause de la difficulté des chemins, riuieres & pays qui est fort montueux, où la plus grande partie de l'anne[e] y a des neges. Voyla au certain ce que i'ay appris de ce fleuue. I'ay desiré souuent faire ceste descouuerture, mais ie n'ay peu sans les sauuages, qui n'ont voulu que i'allasses auec eux n'y aucuns de nos gens : Toutesfois ils me l'ont promis. Ceste descouuerture ne seroit point mauuaise, pour oster beaucoup de personnes p. 172. qui sōt en doubte de ceste mer du Nort, par où l'on tient que les Anglois ont esté en ces dernieres annees pour trouuer le chemin de la Chine.

[PLANCHE : PORT DE TADOUSSAC.]

p. 173. Ie party de Tadoussac le dernier du mois pour aller à Quebecq, & passames prés d'vne isle qui s'apelle l'isle aux

gulf which penetrates into these northern parts.[1] The natives say that from the northern sea to Tadoussac harbour there may be from forty to fifty days' journey, on account of the difficulty of the trails, rivers and very hilly country in which there is snow for the greater part of the year. That is what I have learned with certainty about that river. I have often desired to explore it, but have been unable to do so without the natives, who have been unwilling that I or any of our people should go with them. However, they have promised me to do so. This exploration would not be a bad thing for removing the doubts of many people regarding that northern sea, where it is claimed the English have gone during these last few years to find a route to China.

[PLATE II]

I set out from Tadoussac on the last day of the month to go to Quebec, and we passed near an island, called Hare lieures,[1] distante de six lieues dud. port, & est à deux lieues de la terre du Nort, & à prés de 4. lieues de la terre du Su. De l'isle au lieures, nous fusmes à vne petite riuiere, qui asseche de basse mer, où à quelque 700. à 800. pas dedãs y a deux sauts d'eau : Nous la nõmasmes la riuiere aux Saulmons, à cause que nous y en prismes.[2] Costoyant la coste du Nort nous fusmes à vne pointe qui aduance à la mer, qu'auons nommé le cap Dauphin, distant de la riuiere aux Saulmons 3. lieues.[3] De là fusmes à vn autre cap que nõmasmes le cap à l'Aigle, distant du cap Daulphin 8. lieues :[4] entre les deux y a vne grande ance, où au fonds y a vne petite riuiere qui asseche de basse mer.[5] Du cap à l'Aigle fusmes à l'isle aux couldres[6] qui en est distante vne bonne lieue, & peut tenir enuiron lieue & demie de long.

---

[1] Hudson Bay. See Vol. I, 124.

island,[1] distant six leagues from the above-mentioned harbour. It is two leagues from the north shore and about four leagues from the south shore. From Hare island we went to a small river, dry at low tide, up which some 700 or 800 yards there are two waterfalls. We called it Salmon river, because we caught some of these fish there.[2] Coasting along the north shore, we came to a point which projects into the river, which we named cape Dauphin, distant from Salmon river three leagues.[3] Thence we went to another cape which we named Eagle cape, distant from cape Dauphin eight leagues.[4] Between the two there is a large cove, at the extremity of which is a small river which is dry at low tide.[5] From Eagle cape we went on to Coudres island,[6] which is a good league distant, and may be a league and a half in

---

[1] So named by Jacques Cartier. See Biggar, *The Voyages of Jacques Cartier*, 234: Ottawa, 1924.

[2] Perhaps port Salmon.

[3] Perhaps the present cap à l'Aigle.

[4] This would be the present Goose cape, twenty miles from cap à l'Aigle.

[5] This would be the Murray river.

[6] So named by Cartier and still so called. See p. 39 *infra*.

Elle est quelque peu vnie venant en diminuant par les deux bouts : A celuy de l'Ouest y a des prairies & pointes de rochers, qui aduancent quelque peu dans la riuiere : & du costé du Surouest elle est fort batturiere ; toutesfois assez aggreable, à cause des bois qui l'enuironnent, distante de la terre du Nort d'enuirō demie lieue, où il y a vne petite riuiere p. 174. qui entre assez auant dedans les terres, & l'auōs nommee la riuiere du gouffre,[1] d'autant que le trauers d'icelle la maree y court merueilleusement, & bien qu'il face calme, elle est tousiours fort esmeuë, y ayāt grande profondeur : mais ce qui est de la riuiere est plat & y a force rochers en son entree & autour d'icelle. De l'isle aux Couldres costoyās la coste fusmes à vn cap, que nous auons nommé le cap de tourmente,[1] qui en est à cinq lieues, & l'auons ainsi nommé, d'autant que pour peu qu'il face de vēt, la mer y esleue cōme si elle estoit plaine. En ce lieu l'eau commence à estre

---

circumference. It is rather level and tapers off towards the two extremities ; at the west end there are meadows and rocky points which project some distance into the river, and on the south-west side there are many shoals ; still it is quite agreeable on account of the woods which surround it. It is about half a league from the north shore, where there is a small river, extending some distance into the interior. This we named Whirlpool river,[1] because the tide runs against it strongly, and although the weather may be calm, the river is always agitated, being very deep there ; but the shore of the river is flat, with many rocks at its mouth and round about. From Coudres island coasting the shore, we came to a cape, which we named cape Tourmente,[1] which is five leagues distant, and we named it thus, because, however little wind there may be, the water rises as at full tide. At this point the water begins to be fresh.

[1] Still so called.

douce. De la fusmes à l'isle d'Orleans,[1] où il y a deux lieues, en laquelle du costé du Su y a nombre d'isles,[2] qui sont basses, couuertes d'arbres, & fort aggreables, remplies de grandes prayries, & force gibier, contenant à ce que i'ay peu iuger les vnes deux lieux, & les autres peu plus ou moins. Autour d'icelles y a force rochers & basses fort dangereuses à passes[a] qui sont esloignés de quelques deux lieues de la grād terre du Su. Toute ceste coste, tāt du Nord que du Su, depuis Tadoussac iusques à l'isle d'Orleans, est terre montueuse & fort mauuaise, où il n'y a que des pins, sappins, & boulleaux, & des rochers tresmauuais, où on ne sçauroit aller en la plus part des endroits.

Or nous rangeasmes l'isle d'Orleans du coste[b] du Su, p. 17 distante de la grand terre vne lieue & demie : & du costé du Nort demie lieue, cōtenāt de long 6. lieues, & de large

[a] *Sic.*

[b] A lire *costé*.

Thence we went on to the island of Orleans,[1] two leagues off, where on the south side there are a number of islands,[2] which are low, covered with trees, and very pleasant, filled with large meadows and much game. Some of them are, as nearly as I could judge, two leagues in circumference, and the others a little more or less. Round about these islands are many rocks and shoals, very dangerous to sail through, lying some two leagues from the south shore. All this coast, both on the north and south sides, from Tadoussac to the island of Orleans, is hilly country, and very poor, with nothing but pine, spruce and birch, and very ugly rocks, amongst which, in most places, one cannot penetrate.

We sailed along the south side of the island of Orleans, distant from the mainland a league and a half, and from the north shore half a league. It has a length of six leagues.

[1] So named by Jacques Cartier. See Biggar, *op. cit.* 232.

[2] Grosse isle and the others about it. See Vol. I, 127, note 4.

vne lieue, ou lieue & demie, par endroits.[1] Du costé du Nort elle est fort plaisante pour la quantité des bois & prayries qu'il y a : mais il y fait fort dāgereux passer, pour la quantité de pointes & rochers qui sont entre la grand terre & l'isle, où il y a quantité de beaux chesnes, & des noyers en quelques endroits ;[2] & à l'ēbucheure[a] des vignes & autres bois cōme nous auons en France. Ce lieu est le commencement du beau & bon pays de la grande riuiere, où il y a de son entree 120.[b] Au bout de l'isle y a vn torēt d'eau du costé du Nort, qui vient d'vn lac qui est quelque dix lieues dedās les terres, & descend de dessus vne coste qui a prés de 25. thoises de haut,[3] au dessus de laquelle la terre est vnie & plaisante à voir, bien que dans le pays on voye de hautes montaignes, qui paroissent de 15. à 20. lieues.

[a] Ce mot *embucheure* aurait-il ici, comme croit Laverdière, le sens d'*entrée du bois*, ou bien celui d'*embouchure* du canal entre l'île et la terre ferme ?

[b] Il faut sous-entendre *lieues*.

---

and a breadth of a league or in places a league and a half.[1] On the north side it is very pleasant, by reason of the great extent of woods and meadows which are there. But this passage is very dangerous on account of the large number of points and rocks lying between the mainland and the island, on which are many fine oaks and in some places nut-bearing trees,[2] and at the [western] extremity there are vines and other trees such as we have in France. Here begins the fine, good country of the great river, distant one hundred and twenty leagues from its mouth. At the end of the island, on the north shore, there is a torrent of water which comes from a lake, some ten leagues in the interior, and falls from an elevation nearly twenty-five fathoms high,[3] above which the land is level and pleasant to see, although in the interior one can see high mountains which seem to be fifteen or twenty leagues away.

[1] The island of Orleans is twenty miles long and five wide.

[2] Probably 'butternut,' as in several other passages. See Vol. I, 140.

[3] Montmorency Falls, the height of which is about 265 feet, instead of 150 as stated by Champlain. See Vol. I, 128.

Arriuée à Quebecq, où nous fismes nos logemens, sa situation. Conspiration contre le seruice du Roy, & ma vie, par aucuns de nos gens. La punition qui en fut faite, & tout ce qui se passa en cet [a] affaire.

CHAP. III.

DE l'isle d'Orleans iusques à Quebecq, y a vne lieue, & y arriuay le 3. Iuillet : où estāt, ie cherchay lieu propre pour nostre habitatiō, mais ie n'en p. 176. peu trouuer de plus commode, n'y [b] mieux situé que la pointe de Quebecq, ainsi appellé des sauuages, laquelle estoit remplie de noyers.[1] Aussitost i'emploiay vne partie de nos ouuriers à les abbatre pour y faire nostre habitation, l'autre à scier des aix, l'autre fouiller la caue & faire des fossez : & l'autre à aller querir nos commoditez à Tadoussac auec

[a] *Affaire* au XVII^e^ siècle est encore quelquefois masculin. Voir p. 244.

[b] A lire *ni*.

Arrival at Quebec, where we made places to lodge in ; its situation. Plot by some of our men against the king's service, and against my life. The punishment that was meted out to them, and all that happened in connection with this affair.

CHAPTER III

FROM the island of Orleans to Quebec is one league, and I arrived there on July the third. On arrival I looked for a place suitable for our settlement, but I could not find any more suitable or better situated than the point of Quebec, so called by the natives, which was covered with nut-trees.[1] I at once employed a part of our workmen in cutting them down to make a site for our settlement, another part in sawing planks, another in digging the cellar and making ditches, and another in going to Tadoussac with the pinnace to fetch our effects. The first thing we made

---

[1] *Cf.* page 23, note 2.

la barque. La premiere chose que nous fismes fut le magazin pour mettre nos viures à couuert, qui fut promptemēt fait par la diligence d'vn chacun, & le soin que i'en eu.

[PLANCHE (HORS TEXTE)[a] : QUEBEC.]

p. 177. Quelques iours aprés que ie fus audit Quebecq, il y eut vn serrurier qui conspira contre le seruice du Roy; qui estoit[b] m'ayant fait mourir, & s'estant rendu maistre de nostre fort, le mettre entre les mains des Basques ou Espagnols, qui estoient pour lors à Tadoussac, où vaisseaux ne peuuent passer plus outre pour n'auoir la cognoissance du passage ny des bancs & rochers qu'il y a en chemin.

Pour executer son mal'heureux dessin, sur l'esperance d'ainsi faire sa fortune, il suborna quatre de ceux qu'il croyoit estre des plus mauuais garçons, leur faisant entendre mille faulcetez & esperances d'acquerir du bien.

Aprés que ces quatre hommes furent gaignez, ils promirēt

[a] La légende est donnée dans le texte.

[b] *Qui* se rapporte sans doute à l'idée de *conspiration* ou de *complot* contenue dans le verbe qui précède.

---

was the storehouse, to put our supplies under cover, and it was promptly finished by the diligence of everyone and the care I took in the matter. [PLATE III]

Some days after my arrival at Quebec, there was a locksmith who conspired against the king's service, and his plan was to put me to death, and having made himself master of our fort, to hand it over to the Basques or Spaniards who were then at Tadoussac; for vessels cannot pass farther up on account of ignorance of the channel and of the sandbanks and rocks on the way.

In order to carry out his wicked plan, hoping thereby to make his fortune, he corrupted four of those whom he considered the worst characters, by telling them a host of falsehoods and leading them to hope for gain.

After these four men had been won over, they all promised chacun de faire en sorte que d'attirer le reste à leur deuotiō ; & que pour lors ie n'auois personne auec moy en qui i'eusse fiãce : ce qui leur dōnoit encore plus d'esperance de faire reussir leur dessin : d'autant que quatre ou cinq de mes compagnons, en qui ils sçauoient que ie me fiois, estoient dedans les barques pour auoir esgard à conseruer les viures & commoditez qui nous estoient necessaires pour nostre habitation.

Enfin ils sceurēt si biē faire leurs menees auec ceux qui restoient, qu'ils deuoient les attirer tous à leur deuotion, & mesme mon laquay, leur promettant beaucoup de choses p. 178. qu'ils n'eussent sceu accomplir.

Estant donc tous d'accord, ils estoient de iour en autre en diuerses resolutions comment ils me feroient mourir, pour n'en pouuoir estre accusez, ce qu'ils tenoient difficile : mais le Diable leur bandant à tous les yeux : & leur ostant la raison & toute la difficulté qu'ils pouuoient auoir, ils

to act in such a way as to attract the rest to their side, so that I should have nobody with me in whom I could place confidence, which gave them still greater hopes of carrying out their plan, particularly since four or five of my companions in whom they knew I had confidence were on board the pinnace for the purpose of taking care of the provisions and other articles which were necessary for our settlement.

In short so successful were they in their intrigues with those who remained that they would have attracted all to their side, and even my lackey, making them many promises which they could not have fulfilled.

Being thus all agreed, they made different plans from day to day as to how to kill me in order not to be accused thereof, but this they considered difficult. However, the devil blinding all their eyes, and taking away their reason and any scruples they might have had, they resolved to seize

arresterent de me prendre à despourueu d'armes & m'estouffer, ou donner la nuit vne fauce alarme, & comme ie sortirois tirer sur moy, & que par ce moyen ils auroient plustost fait qu'autrement : tous promirent les vns aux autres de ne se descouurir, sur peine que le premier qui en ouuriroit la bouche, seroit poignardé : & dās quatre iours ils deuoiēt executer leur entreprise, deuant que nos barques fussent arriuees : car autrement ils n'eussent peu venir à bout de leur dessin.

Ce mesme iour arriua l'vne de nos barques, où estoit nostre pilotte appelé le Capitaine Testu, homme fort discret. Aprés que la barque fut deschargés [a] & preste à s'en retourner à Tadoussac, il vint à luy vn serrurier appelé Natel, compagnon de Iean du Val chef de la traison, qui luy dit, qu'il auoit promis aux autres de faire tout ainsi qu'eux : mais p. 179. qu'en effect il n'en desiroit l'executiō, & qu'il n'osoit s'en

[a] Faute d'impression.

---

me unarmed and to strangle me, or to give a false alarm at night and to shoot me as I came out, and they would rather have accomplished their purpose in this way than otherwise. All promised mutually to make no disclosure, on penalty that the first who should open his mouth should be stabbed to death. In four days they were to execute their plan, before our pinnaces arrived : otherwise they would have been unable to accomplish their design.

On that same day arrived one of our pinnaces, in which was our pilot, whose name was Captain Testu, a very discreet man. After the pinnace had been unloaded, and was ready to go back to Tadoussac, there came to him a locksmith named Natel, a comrade of Jean Duval's, the head of the conspiracy, who told him that he had promised the others to do just the same as they did, but that in reality he did not desire the execution of the plot ; but he did not dare to declarer, & ce qui l'en auoit empesché, estoit la crainte qu'il auoit qu'ils ne le poignardassent.

Aprés qu'Antoine Natel eust fait promettre audit pilotte de ne rien declarer de ce qu'il diroit, d'autant que si ses compagnons le descouuroiēt, ils le feroient mourir.[a] Le pilotte l'asseura de toutes choses, &[b] qu'il luy declarast le fait de l'entreprinse qu'ils desiroient faire : ce que Natel fit tout au long : lequel pilotte luy dist, Mon amy vous auez biē fait de descouurir vn dessin si pernicieux, & montrez que vous estes homme de bien, & conduit du S. Esprit, mais ces choses ne peuuent passer sans que le sieur de Champlain le scache pour y remedier, & vous promets de faire tant enuers luy, qu'il vous pardonnera & à d'autres : & de ce pas, dit le pilotte, ie le vays trouuer sans faire semblant de rien,

[a] Il faut évidemment remplacer ce point par une virgule.

[b] Il faut sans doute suppléer quelque chose comme *lui dist*.

---

divulge anything, and that what had hindered him was the fear that they would kill him.

Then Antoine Natel made the pilot promise that he would disclose nothing of what he should tell him ; for if his companions should find it out, they would put him to death. The pilot reassured him on all points and demanded of him that he should disclose the whole enterprise which they wished to carry out. This Natel did quite fully. The pilot then said to him, ‘ My good man, you have done well to divulge such a wicked scheme, and you show that you are an honest man and are guided by the Holy Spirit. But these things must not go on without the Sieur de Champlain being told, in order that he may take measures against them, and I promise you to use such influence with him that he will forgive you and some of the others. ‘ And,’ said the pilot, ‘ I shall go to him quietly at once, and do you go about

& vous, allez faire vostre besoigne, & entendez tousiours ce qu'ils diront, & ne vous souciez du reste.

Aussitost le pilotte me vint trouuer en vn iardin que ie faisois accommoder, & me dit qu'il desiroit parler à moy en lieu secret, où il n'y eust que nous deux. Ie luy dis que ie le voulois bien. Nous allasmes dans le bois, où il me conta toute l'affaire. Ie luy demanday qui luy auoit dit. Il me p. 180. pria de pardonner à celuy qui luy auoit declaré : ce que ie luy accorday bien qu'il deuoit s'adresser à moy ; Il craignoit, dit-il, qu'eussiez entré en cholere, & que l'eussiez offencé. Ie luy dis que ie sçauois mieux me gouuerner que cela en telles affaires, & qu'il le fit venir, pour l'oyr parler. Il y fut, & l'amena tout tremblant de crainte qu'il auoit que luy fisse quelque desplaisir. Ie l'asseuray, & luy dy qu'il n'eust point de peur & qu'il estoit en lieu de seureté, & que ie luy pardonnois tout ce qu'il auoit fait auec les autres, pourueu

---

your work, and keep your ears open to hear what they say, and do not worry about the rest.'

The pilot came at once to me in a garden which I was having made, and said that he desired to speak to me privately, where there should be only the two of us. I said to him that I was quite willing. We went into the wood, where he related to me the whole affair. I asked him who had told him? He begged me to pardon the man who had told him, to which I consented, although he ought to have come to me. This man feared, said he, lest I should be angry and do him harm. I told him that I was better able to control myself in such affairs and that he was to bring the man so that I might hear his tale. He went, and brought him all trembling with fear lest I should do him some harm. I reassured him and told him not to be afraid; that he was in a place of safety and that I forgave him all that he had done with the others, provided he told the whole truth on every point, and the

qu'il dist entierement la verité de toutes choses, & le subiet qui les y auoit meuz, Riē, dit-il, sinon que ils s'estoient imaginez que rendāt la place entre les mains des Basques ou Espaignols, ils seroient tous riches, & qu'ils ne desiroient plus aller en France ; & me conta le surplus de leur entreprinse.

Aprés l'auoir entendu & interrogé, ie luy dis qu'il s'en allast à ses affaires : Cependant ie commanday au pilotte qu'il fist approcher sa chalouppe : ce qu'il fit ; & aprés donnay deux bouteilles de vin à vn ieune hōme, & qu'il dit à ces quatre galants principaux de l'entreprinse, que c'estoit du vin de present que ses amis de Tadoussac luy auoient dōné & qu'il leur en vouloit faire part : ce qu'ils ne refuserent, & furent sur le soir en la Barque, où il leur deuoit donner la p. 181. collation : ie ne tarday pas beaucoup aprés à y aller, & les fis prendre & arrester attendant le lendemain.

Voyla donc mes galants bien estonnez. Aussitost ie fis

---

reason which had moved them to this. He said there was no reason, save that they had imagined that, in handing over the place to the Basques or Spaniards they would become very rich, and that they did not wish to go back to France. He also related to me the remaining details of their project.

After hearing him and questioning him, I told him to go about his work. Meanwhile, I ordered the pilot to bring in his shallop and he did so. Then I gave two bottles of wine to a young fellow, and directed him to tell these four worthy ringleaders of the undertaking that it was wine which his friends at Tadoussac had given him as a present, and that he wanted to share it with them. They did not decline the invitation, and towards evening went on board the pinnace where he was to offer them the refreshment. I was not long in following them, and ordered them to be seized and held until the following day.

There then were my gentry properly astonished. I at leuer vn chacun (car c'estoit sur les dix heures du soir) & leur pardōnay à tous, pourueu qu'ils me disent la verité de tout ce qui c'estoit[a] passé, ce qu'ils firent, & aprés les fis retirer.

Le lendemain ie prins toutes leurs depositions les vnes aprés les autres deuant le pilotte & les mariniers du vaisseau, lesquelles ie fis coucher par escript, & furent fort aises à ce qu'ils dirent, d'autant qu'ils ne viuoient qu'en crainte, pour la peur qu'ils auoient les vns des autres, & principalemēt de ces quatre coquins qui les auoient ceduits ; & depuis vesquirent en paix, se contentans du traictement qu'ils auoient receu, comme ils deposerent.

Ce iour fis faire six paires de menottes pour les autheurs de laneditiō, vne pour nostre Chirurgien appelé Bonnerme, vne pour vn autre appelé la Taille que les quatre ceditieux

[a] Cette substitution phonétique de *c* pour *s* devant *e* est assez fréquente dans le volume de 1613, et se retrouve trois fois un peu plus bas.

---

once made everyone get up, though it was nearly ten o'clock in the evening, and forgave them all, on condition they should tell the truth about everything that had happened. This they did and I then ordered them to retire.

On the following day I received all their depositions, one after the other, in presence of the pilot and of the sailors of the ship, and had them committed to writing. And they were very glad, according to their statements ; for they were living in constant fear of one another and particularly of the four scoundrels who had misled them. Since then they have lived in peace, satisfied, according to their deposition, with the treatment they here received.

The same day I had six pairs of handcuffs made for the authors of the plot, one for our surgeon, named Bonnerme, one for another man named La Taille whom the four conspirators had accused, which charge however turned out to auoiēt chargez, ce qui se trouua neantmoins faux, qui fut occasion de leur donner liberté.

Ces choses estans faites, i'emmenay mes galants à Tadoussac, & priay le Pōt de me faire ce bien de les garder, d'autant que ie n'auois encores lieu de seureté pour les p. 182. mettre, & qu'estiōs empeschez à edifier nos logemēs ; & aussi pour prendre resolution de luy & d'autres du vaisseau, de ce qu'aurions à faire là dessus. Nous aduisames qu'aprés qu'il auroit fait ses affaires à Tadoussac, il s'en viendroit à Quebecq auec les prisonniers, où les ferions confronter deuāt leurs tesmoins : & aprés les auoir ouis, ordonner que la iustice en fut faite selō le delict qu'ils auroient commis.

Ie m'en retournay le lendemain à Quebecq pour faire diligence de paracheuer nostre magazin, pour retirer nos viures qui auoient esté abandonnez de tous ces belistres, qui n'espargnoiēt rien, sans cōsiderer où ils en pourroiēt

---

be false, and this was the justification for giving them their liberty.

When this had been done, I took my fine fellows off to Tadoussac, and begged Pont-Gravé to do me the favour of guarding them, particularly as I had not yet any safe place to put them in, and we were much occupied with the construction of our houses. I wished also to consult with him and others of the ship as to what we should do in the matter. We decided that after he had completed his business at Tadoussac, he should come up to Quebec with the prisoners, where we should have them confronted with their witnesses. Then after hearing them we should order justice to be done according to the offence they had committed.

On the following day I went back to Quebec to hasten the completion of our storehouse, in order to gather in our provisions which had been left unprotected by all these scoundrels, who husbanded nothing, never considering where they were to find more when these failed ; for I could trouuer d'autres quand ceux là manqueroiēt : car ie n'y pouuois donner remede que le magazin ne fut fait & fermé.

Le Pont-graué arriua quelque temps aprés moy, auec les prisonniers, ce qui apporta du mescontentement aux ouuriers qui restoient, craignant que ie leur eusse pardonné, & qu'ils n'vsassent de vengeance enuers eux, pour auoir declaré leur mauuais dessin.

Nous les fismes confronter les vns aux autres, où ils leur maintindrent tout ce qu'ils auoient declaré dans leurs de-
p. 183. positions, sans que les prisonniers leur deniassent le contraire, s'accusans d'auoir meschament fait, & merité punitiō, si on n'vsoit de misericorde enuers eux, en maudissant Iean du Val, comme le premier qui les auoit induits à telle trahison, dés qu'ils partirent de France. Ledit du Val ne sceut que dire, sinō qu'il meritoit la mort, & que tout le contenu és informations estoit veritable, & qu'on eust pitié de luy, & des autres qui auoient adheré à ses pernicieuses vollontez.

---

not mend matters until the storehouse had been built and covered in.

Some time after this arrived Pont-Gravé with the prisoners, which stirred up discontent amongst the other workmen who feared lest I had forgiven the wrongdoers and lest these should wreak vengeance upon them for having disclosed their wicked plot.

We had them confronted and all that had been stated in the depositions was reaffirmed, without any denial on the part of the prisoners, who confessed that they had acted wickedly, and deserved punishment, unless mercy should be shown them; and they cursed Jean Duval for being the first who led them into this conspiracy as soon as they sailed from France. The said Duval was unable to say anything, except that he deserved death; and that everything contained in the depositions was true, begging for pity for himself and for the others who had sided with him in his wicked intentions.

Aprés que le Pont & moy, auec le Capitaine du vaisseau, le Chirurgiē, maistre, contre maistre, & autres mariniers eusmes ouy leurs depositions & confrontations, Nous aduisames que ce seroit assez de faire mourir ledit du Val, comme le motif de l'entreprinse, & aussi pour seruir d'exemple à ceux qui restoient, de se cōporter sagement à l'aduenir en leur deuoir, & afin que les Espagnols & Basques qui estoient en quantité au pays n'en fissent trophee : & les trois autres condamnez d'estre pendus, & cependant les rēmener en Frāce entre les mains du sieur de Mons, pour leur estre fait plus ample iustice, selon qu'il aduiseroit, auec toutes les informations, & la sentence, tant dudict Iean du Val qui fut pendu & estranglé audit Quebecq, & sa teste mise au bout d'vne pique pour estre plantee au lieu le plus eminent de nostre fort & les autres trois renuoyez en France.[a] p. 184.

[a] Entendez : *tant dudict Iean du Val . . . que des autres trois qui furent renvoyez,* etc.

After Pont-Gravé and I, along with the Captain of the ship, the surgeon, master, mate, and other seamen, had heard their depositions and cross-examinations, we decided that it would be sufficient to put to death Duval as the first mover in the conspiracy, and also to serve as an example to those who remained, to behave properly in future in doing their duty, and in order that the Spaniards and Basques who were numerous in the region might not rejoice over the affair. We decided that the three others should be condemned to be hanged, but meanwhile should be taken back to France and handed over to the Sieur de Monts, to receive fuller justice, according as he might decide, with all the papers and the sentence upon Jean Duval before him, by virtue of which sentence Duval was hanged and strangled at Quebec,[1] and his head placed on the end of a pike and set up in the highest spot in our fort, and the other three were sent back to France.

[1] The usual method was hanging and quartering. See D. Masson, *Life of John Milton*, VI, 96. London, 1880, and *cf.* p. 294 *infra.*

Retour du Pont-graué en France. Descriptiō de nostre logemēt & du lieu où seiourna Iaques Quartier en l'an 1535.

CHAP. IV.

APRÉS que toutes ces choses furent passees le Pont partit de Quebecq le 18. Septembre pour s'en retourner en France auec les trois prisonniers. Depuis qu'ils furent hors tout le reste se comporta sagement en son deuoir.

Ie fis continuer nostre logement, qui estoit de trois corps de logis à deux estages. Chacun contenoit trois thoises de long & deux & demie de large. Le magazin six & trois de large, auec vne belle caue de six pieds de haut. Tout autour de nos logemens ie fis faire vne galerie par dehors au secōd[a] estage, qui estoit fort commode, auec des fossés de 15. pieds

---

[a] Aujourd'hui on dirait plutôt *au premier*.

Pont-Gravé's return to France. Description of our quarters and of the place where Jacques Cartier lived in 1535.

CHAPTER IV

WHEN all this was over, Pont-Gravé sailed from Quebec on September 18, to return to France with the three prisoners. After their departure the others all conducted themselves properly in their duty.

I continued the construction of our quarters, which contained three main buildings of two stories. Each one was three fathoms long and two and a half wide. The storehouse was six long and three wide, with a fine cellar six feet high. All the way round our buildings I had a gallery made, outside the second story, which was a very convenient thing. There were also

de large & six de profond : & au dehors des fossés, ie fis pluſieurs pointes d'esperons qui enfermoient vne partie du logement, là où nous mismes nos pieces de canon : & deuant le bastiment y a vne place de quatre thoises de large, & six ou sept de lōg, qui dōne sur le bort de la riuiere. Autour du logement y a des iardins qui sont tres-bons, & vne place du costé de Septemptrion qui a quelque cent ou six vingts pas de long, 50. ou 60. de large. Plus proche dudit Quebecq, p. 185. y a vne petite riuiere[1] qui vient dedans les terres d'vn lac distant de nostre habitation de six à sept lieues. Ie tiens que dans ceste riuiere qui est au Nort & vn quart du Norouest de nostre habitation, ce fut le lieu où Iaques Quartier yuerna, d'autant qu'il y a encores à vne lieue dans la riuiere des vestiges cōme d'vne cheminee, dont on a trouué le fondement, & apparence d'y auoir eu des fossez autour de leur logement, qui estoit petit. Nous trouuasmes aussi de grādes pieces

---

ditches fifteen feet wide and six deep, and outside these I made several salients which enclosed a part of the buildings, and there we put our cannon. In front of the building there is an open space four fathoms wide and six or seven long, which abuts upon the river's bank. Round about the buildings are very good gardens, and an open place on the north side of a hundred, or a hundred and twenty, yards long and fifty or sixty wide. Nearer Quebec there is a little river,[1] which comes from a lake in the interior, distant six or seven leagues from our settlement. I consider that in this river, which is north a quarter north-west of our settlement, was the place where Jacques Cartier passed the winter; since at a league's distance up this river are still the remains as of a chimney, whose foundation we discovered, and to all appearance what seem to have been ditches about his house, which was small. We found also large, squared, worm-

[1] The St. Charles.

de bois escarrees, vermoulues, & quelques 3. ou 4. balles de canon. Toutes ces choses monstrent euidemment que c'à esté vne habitation, laquelle a esté fondee par des Chrestiens : & ce qui me fait dire & croire que c'est Iaques Quartier, c'est qu'il ne se trouue point qu'aucun aye[a] yuerné ny basty en ces lieux que ledit Iaques Quartier au temps de ses descouuertures, & failloit,[b] à mon iugemēt, que ce lieu s'appelast sainte Croix, comme il l'auoit nommé, que l'on a transferé depuis à vn autre lieu qui est 15. lieues de nostre habitatiō à l'Ouest, & n'y a pas d'apparence qu'il eust yuerné en ce lieu que maintenant on appelle saincte Croix, ny en d'autres : d'autant qu'en ce chemin il n'y a riuiere ny autres lieux capables de p. 186. tenir vaisseaux, si ce n'est la grande riuiere [1] ou celle dont i'ay parlé cy dessus,[2] où de basse mer y a demie brasse d'eau, force rochers & vn banc à son entree : Car de tenir des vaisseaux dans la grande riuiere, où il y a de grands courans, marees

---

[a] *Sic.*

[b] Confusion assez fréquente de *faillir* et *falloir*.

eaten pieces of wood, and some three or four cannon-balls. All these things show clearly that this was a settlement which was founded by Christians. And what makes me say and think that it was Jacques Cartier, is the fact that there is no evidence that anyone wintered or put up buildings there, except Jacques Cartier at the time of his explorations. And in my opinion it must have been this place that was named Ste. Croix, as he called it, which name was afterwards transferred to another place, fifteen leagues to the west of our settlement ; and there is no sign that he wintered in the place now called Ste. Croix, nor in any others near there. For on the way thither there is no river or any other place where there is room for ships, except in the great river [1] or in the one of which I have spoken above,[2] where at low tide there is half a fathom of water, with many rocks and a shoal at its mouth : for to keep ships in the great

---

[1] St. Lawrence.

[2] The St. Charles.

& glaces qui charient en hyuer, ils courroient risque de se perdre, aussi qu'il y a vne pointe de sable qui aduance sur la riuiere, qui est remplie de rochers, parmy lesquels nous auons trouué depuis trois ans vn passage qui n'auoit point encore esté descouuert : mais pour le passer il faut bien prendre son temps, à cause des pointes & dangers qui y sont. Ce lieu[1] est à descouuert des vēt[s] de Norouest, & la riuiere y court cōme si c'estoit vn saut d'eau, & y pert de deux brasses & demie. Il ne s'y voit aucune apparence de bastimens, n'y[a] qu'vn homme de iugement voulust s'establir en cest endroit, y en ayant beaucoup d'autres meilleurs quand on seroit forcé de demeurer. I'ay bien voulu traicter de cecy, d'autant qu'il y en a beaucoup qui croyent que ce lieu[1] fust la residence dudit Iaques Quartier : ce que ie ne croy pas pour les raisōs cy dessus : car ledit Quartier en eust aussi bien fait le discours

[a] *Sic.*

---

river, where there are strong currents, tides, and ice floating about in winter, would be to run the risk of losing them, particularly since there is a sandy point jutting out into the river, covered with boulders, amongst which we found during the last three years a passage, which had not been discovered before. But in order to get through it, one must choose the right moment, on account of the points and other dangers there. This place[1] is open to north-west winds, and there the river runs as if it were a rapid, and at low tide falls two and a half fathoms. There is no sign whatsoever of buildings there, nor anything to show that a man of judgment would have tried to make a settlement at that spot, there being many other better places, if one were forced to stay there. I very much desired to discuss this point, particularly since there are many who think that this spot[1] was the residence of Jacques Cartier, which view I do not accept for the reasons given above; for the said Cartier would moreover have left

[1] The present Ste. Croix.

pour le laisser à la posterité comme il l'a fait de tout ce qu'il a veu & descouuert : & soustiens que mon dire est veritable : ce qui ce[a] peut prouuer par l'histoire qu'il en a escrite.

p. 187. [PLANCHE : ABITATION DE QVEBECQ.]

p. 188. Et pour mōstrer encore que ce lieu que maintenāt ōn appelle saincte Croix n'est le lieu où yuerna Iaques Quartier, cōme la pluspart estiment, voicy ce qu'il en dit en ses descouuertures, extrait de son histoire, assauoir, Qu'il arriua à l'isle aux Coudres le 5. Decembre[1] en l'an 1535. qu'il appella de ce nom pour y en auoir, auquel lieu y a grand courant de maree, & dit qu'elle contient 3. lieues de long, mais quand on contera lieue & demie c'est beaucoup.[2]

Et le 7. du mois iour de nostre dame,[3] il partit d'icelle pour aller à mont le fleuue, où il vit 14. isles distantes de

[a] *Sic.*

---

an account of it for posterity, just as he did of all that he saw and explored. And I maintain that what I say is true, and that it can be proved from the account which he wrote.

[PLATE IV]

And to show still further that the place now called Ste. Croix is not the place where Jacques Cartier wintered, as the majority suppose, here is what he says about it in his explorations, taken from his voyages, that is to say : that he arrived at Coudres island on December[1] 5 in the year 1535 ; that he called it by this name, because there were hazelnuts on it ; that at this place there is a strong tidal current, and that the island is three leagues long ; but really if you reckon it at a league and a half it is a good deal.[2]

And on the seventh of the month, being Our Lady's Day,[3] he sailed from this island to go up the river, and discovered l'isle aux Coudres de 7. a 8. lieues du Su. En ce cōpte il s'esgare vn peu, car il n'y en a pas plus de trois : & dit que le lieu où sont les isles susd. est le commencement de la terre ou prouince de Canada, & qu'il arriua à vne isle de 10. lieues de long & cinq de large, où il se fait grande pescherie de poisson, comme de fait elle est fort abondante, principalement en Esturgeon : mais de ce qui est de sa longueur elle n'a pas plus de six lieues & deux de large, chose maintenant assez cogneue.[1] Il dit aussi qu'il mouilla l'ancre entre icelle isle & la terre du Nort, qui est le plus petit passage & dāgereux, & là mit deux sauuages à terre qu'il auoit amenez en Frāce, & qu'aprés auoir arresté en ce lieu quelque tēps auec les peuples du pays il fit admener ses barques, & passa outre à p. 189. mōt led. fleuue auec le flot pour cercher haure & lieu de seureté pour mettre les nauires, & qu'ils furēt outre le fleuue costoyant ladite isle contenāt 10. lieues, cōme il met, où au

---

[1] *Sic pro* September. See Biggar, *op. cit.* 119.

[2] Coudres island is about six miles long and two and a half wide.

[3] In reality the Eve of Lady Day.

fourteen islands, seven or eight leagues to the south of Coudres island. In this reckoning he is a little astray ; for these islands are not more than three leagues away. And he says that the place where the above islands lie is the beginning of the land or province of Canada, and that he came to an island ten leagues long and five wide where much fishing is carried on, as indeed they do greatly abound there, especially sturgeon. But regarding the length of the island, it is well known now that it is not more than six leagues long and two wide.[1] He states also that he cast anchor between this island and the north shore, which is the narrowest passage and a dangerous one, and that there he put on shore two natives whom he had taken to France and that, after having stayed in this place for some time with the tribes of the region, he had his longboats brought up, and went farther up the river with the tide, to seek harbour and a place of safety for the ships. And he says that he went on

---

[1] *Cf.* p. 23, note 1.

bout ils trouuerent vn affour[a] d'eau fort beau & plaisant, auquel y a vne petite riuiere & haure de barre, qu'ils trouuerent fort propre pour mettre leurs vaisseaux à couuert, & le nommerent saincte Croix, pour y estre arriuez ce iour là lequel lieu s'appeloit au tẽps & voyage dudit Quartier, Stadaca,[1] que maintenant nous appelons Quebecq, & qu'aprés qu'il eust recogneu ce lieu, il retourna querir ses vaisseaux pour y yuerner.

Or est il donc à iuger que de l'isle aux Coudres iusques à l'isle d'Orleans, il n'y a que 5. lieues, au bout de laquelle vers l'Occidant la riuiere est fort spacieuse, & n'y a audit affour, comme l'appelle Quartier, aucune riuiere que celle qu'il nomma saincte Croix, distante de l'isle d'Orleans d'vne

[a] La forme *affourcq*, dans la seconde relation de Cartier, montre sa parenté, non seulement avec *affourche* (=ancre dont le câble fait une espèce de fourche avec celui d'une ancre déjà jetée), mais aussi avec *four* (pour *fourc* et *forc*), vieil mot = bifurcation d'un arbre, d'une route, etc. (cf. *carrefour*). Cartier aurait voulu marquer sans doute le confluent de deux cours d'eau.

---

up the river coasting this island, which he makes ten leagues long, and that at the end of it they found a very fine and agreeable forking of the waters, where there was a small river and a shallow harbour, which they considered very suitable for sheltering their vessels. And this they called Ste. Croix because they arrived there on that day, but at the time of Cartier's expedition it was called Stadaca.[1] We now call it Quebec. After having reconnoitred the place he sent back to bring up his ships in order to winter there.

Now from Coudres island to the island of Orleans there are only five leagues, and at the western end of this latter the river is very wide, and at this forking, as Cartier calls it, there is no river but the one which he named Ste. Croix, distant a full league from the island of Orleans. Here at

[1] Cartier's MSS. have *Stadacone*. See Biggar, *op. cit.* 123–124.

bonne lieue, où de basse mer n'y a que demie brasse d'eau, & est fort dãgereuse en son entree pour vaisseaux, y ayant quantité d'esprons, qui sont rochers espars par cy par la, & faut ballisser pour entrer dedãs, où de plaine mer, comme i'ay dict, il y a 3. brasses d'eau, & aux grandes marees 4. brasses, & 4. & demie ordinairement à plain flot, & n'est qu'a p. 190. 1500. pas de nostre habitatiõ, qui est plus à mont dãs ladite riuiere, & n'y a autre riuiere, comme i'ay dit, depuis le lieu que maintenant on appelle saincte Croix, où on puisse mettre aucuns vaisseaux : Ce ne sont que de petits ruisseaux. Les costes sont plattes & dangereuses, dont Quartier ne fait aucune mentiõ que iusques à ce qu'il partit du lieu de saincte Croix appelé maintenant Quebecq, où il laissa ses vaisseaux, & y fit edifier son habitation comme on peut voir ainsi qu'il s'ensuit.

Le 19. Septembre il partit de saincte Croix où estoient ses vaisseaux, & fit voile pour aller auec la maree à mont ledit

---

low water there is only half a fathom, and the entrance is very dangerous for ships, there being many spurs, composed of boulders lying here and there. In order to get inside, buoys are needed where at high tide, as I have said, there are three fathoms of water, and at spring tides four, and at high tides ordinarily four and a half. It is only fifteen hundred yards from our settlement, which is higher up the said river, and as I have stated, after leaving the place which is now called Ste. Croix, there is no other river in which ships can be laid up : there are nothing but small brooks. The shores are flat and dangerous, a fact of which Cartier only makes mention at the time he left the place, Ste. Croix, now called Quebec, where he laid up his ships. Here he built his house as may be seen from what follows :

On September the nineteenth he departed from Ste. Croix, where lay his ships, and set sail in order with the tide fleuue qu'ils trouuerēt fort aggreable, tant pour les bois, vignes & habitatiōs qu'il y auoit de son tēps, qu'autres choses : & furēt poser l'ācre à vingt cinq lieues de l'entree de la terre de Canada, qui est au bout de l'isle d'Orleans du costé de l'oriant ainsi appelee par ledit Quartier.[1] Ce qu'on appelé[a] auiourd'huy S. Croix s'appeloit lors Achelacy,[2] destroit de la riuiere, fort courāt & dangereux, tāt pour les rochers qu'autres choses, & ou on ne peut passer que de flot, distāt de Quebecq & de la riuiere ou yuerna led. Quartier 15. lieues.

Or en toute ceste riuiere n'y a destroit depuis Quebecq p. 191. iusques au grand saut,[3] qu'en ce lieu que maintenant on appelle saincte Croix,[4] où on a transferé ce nom d'vn lieu à vn autre qui est fort dangereux, comme i'ay descript : & appert fort clairement par son discours, que ce n'est point

[a] A lire *appelle*.

---

to proceed up the river, which he and his men found very pleasant, both on account of the woods, vines and habitations, which were there in his times, as for other reasons. And they cast anchor twenty-five leagues from the entrance to the land of Canada, which is at the eastern extremity of the island of Orleans as it was named by Cartier.[1] What is to-day called Ste. Croix was then called Achelacy,[2] a narrow part of the river, swift and dangerous, both on account of the rocks as for other reasons, where one can only pass up at high tide. It is distant from Quebec and from the river where Cartier spent the winter fifteen leagues.

Now, in all this river there are no narrows, from Quebec as far as the Great Rapid,[3] except in the place now called Ste. Croix,[4] to which this name has been transferred from another place, which former place is a very dangerous spot

[1] After the third son of Francis I. See Biggar, *op. cit.* 232.

[2] Pointe-Platon. See Vol. I, 131, and Biggar, *op. cit.* 142.

[3] Lachine rapids.

[4] The present Ste. Croix.

le lieu de son habitation, comme dit est, & que ce fut proche de Quebecq & qu'aucun n'auoit encore recerché ceste particularité, sinon ce que i'ay fait en mes voyages : Car dés la premiere fois qu'on me dit qu'il auoit habité en ce lieu, cela m'estonna fort, ne voyāt apparence de riuiere pour mettre vaisseaux, comme il descrit. Ce fut ce qui m'en fit faire exacte recerche pour en leuer le soubçon & doubte à beaucoup.

Pendant que les Charpentiers, scieurs d'aix & autres ouuriers trauailloient à nostre logement, ie fis mettre tout le reste à deffricher au tour de l'habitatiō, afin de faire des iardinages pour y semer des grains & grennes pour voir comme le tout succederoit, d'autant que la terre parroissoit fort bonne.

Cependant quantité des sauuages estoient cabannés proche de nous, qui faisoient pesche d'anguilles qui cōmencent à venir comme au 15. de Septembre, & finit au 15.

---

as I have already described. And it appears quite clear from what he states that this was not the place where he abode, as has been said, but that it was near Quebec, and that no one has ever investigated this matter, except what I have done in my travels. For the very first time I was told that he had lived in this place I was much surprised since there was no sign of a river in which to shelter ships as he describes. This was what caused me to make a careful examination in order to remove uncertainty and doubt from many minds.

Whilst the carpenters, sawyers, and other workmen were busy at our quarters, I set all the rest to work clearing the land about our settlement in order to make gardens in which to sow grains and seed, for the purpose of seeing how the whole thing would succeed, particularly since the soil seemed to be very good.

Meanwhile many of the natives had encamped near us, who used to fish for eels, which begin to come up about September 15 and finish on October 15. During this time

Octobre. En ce temps tous les sauuages se nourrissent de ceste manne, & en font secher pour l'yuer iusques au mois p. 192. de Feurier, que les neiges sont grandes comme de 2. pieds & demy, & 3. pieds pour le plus, qui est le temps que quād leurs anguilles & autres choses qu'ils font checher,[a] sont accōmodees, ils vōt chasser aux Castors, où ils sōt iusques au cōmencemēt de Ianuier. Cōme ils y furent, ils nous laisserent en garde toutes leurs anguilles & autres choses iusques à leur retour, qui fut au 15. Decembre, & ne firent pas grand chasse de Castors pour les eaux estre trop grādes, & les riuieres desbordees, ainsi qu'ils nous dirent. Ie leur rendis toutes leurs vituailles qui ne leur durerent que iusques au 20. de Ianuier. Quand leurs anguilles leur faillent ils ont recours à chasser aux Eslās & autres bestes sauuages, qu'ils peuuent trouuer en attendant le printēps, où i'eu moyen de les entretenir de plusieurs choses. Ie consideray fort particulierement leurs coustumes.

[a] A lire *secher*.

---

the natives all live upon this manna and dry some for the winter to last till the month of February, when the snow is two and a half or even three feet deep at the most. At that time when their eels and the other things which they dry are prepared, they go off beaver-hunting and remain away until the beginning of January. When they were engaged on this, they left in our keeping all their eels and other things till their return, which took place on December 15. And they told us that they did not take many beavers because the waters were too high, on account of the rivers overflowing. I gave them back all their provisions which only lasted them till January 20. When their eels give out they resort to hunting the moose and any other wild beasts they may find, until springtime, at which season I was able to furnish them with various supplies. I studied their customs very particularly.

Tous ces peuples patissent tant, que quelquesfois ils sont contraincts de viure de certains coquillages, & manger leur[s] chiens & peaux dequoy ils se couurent contre le froid. Ie tiens que qui[a] leur mōstreroit à viure, & leur enseigneroit le labourage des terres & autres choses, ils apprendroient fort bien : car il s'en trouue assez qui ont bon iugement & respondent à propos sur ce qu'on leur demande. Ils ont vne meschanceté en eux, qui est d'vser de vēgeance, & d'estre p. 193. grāds menteurs, gens ausquels il ne se faut par trop asseurer, sinon auec raison, & la force en la main. Ils promettent assez, mais ils tiennent peu. Ce sont gens dont la pluspart n'ont point de loy, selon que i'ay peu voir, auec tout plain d'autres fauces croyances. Ie leur demanday de quelle sorte de ceremonies ils vsoient à prier leur Dieu, ils me dirent qu'ils n'en vsoient point d'autres, sinon qu'vn chacun le prioit en son cœur, comme il vouloit. Voila pourquoy il n'y

[a] Ancien emploi de *qui* suivi du futur ou du conditionnel comme l'équivalent de *si quelqu'un,* suivi du présent ou de l'imparfait.

All these tribes suffer so much from hunger that sometimes they are obliged to live on certain shell-fish, and to eat their dogs and the skins with which they clothe themselves against the cold. I consider that, if anyone were to show them how to live, and how to till the soil, and other things, they would learn very well; for there are many of them who have good judgment, and reply pointedly to the questions put to them. But they have bad points : they are revengeful and awful liars, people whom one must not trust too far, but rather judiciously, and with force in one's hand. They promise readily, but perform badly. They are people, the majority of whom, so far as I have been able to see, respect no law, but have plenty of false beliefs. I asked them what sort of ceremonies they used in praying to their God. They told me that they had no other than this, that each one prayed to God in his heart, just as it suited him. That

a aucune loy parmy eux, & ne sçauent que c'est d'adorer & prier Dieu, viuās cōme bestes bruttes, & croy que bien tost ils seroient reduits bons Chrestiens si on habitoit leur terre, ce qu'ils desirent la pluspart. Ils ont parmy eux quelques sauuages qu'ils appellēt Pillotois, qu'ils croient parler au Diable visiblement, leur disant ce qu'il faut qu'ils facent, tant pour la guerre que pour autres choses, & s'il(s) leur commandoit qu'ils allassent mettre en execution quelque entreprinse, ils obeiroient aussitost à son commandemēt : Comme aussi ils croyent que tous les songes qu'ils font, sont veritables : & de fait, il y en a beaucoup qui disent auoir veu & songé choses qui aduiennent ou aduiendront. Mais pour en parler auec verité, ce sont visiōs Diabolique[a] qui les trōpe & seduit. p. 194. Voila tout ce que i'ay peu apprendre de leur croyance bestialle. Tous ces peuples sont gens bien proportionnez de leurs corps,

is why there is no law amongst them, and that they do not know what it is to pray to and worship God, living as they do like brute beasts. I believe they would soon be brought to be good Christians, if one were to live in their country, as the majority of them desire. They have amongst them some natives whom they call *Pillotois*, who, they believe, speak to the devil face to face, and he tells them what they must do in war as well as in other matters, and if he were to order them to put any enterprise into execution, they would at once obey his command. So, also, they believe that all their dreams are true, and indeed there are many of them who say they have had visions and dreamed things which came to pass, or will come to pass. But to tell the truth about these things, they are visions from the devil who deceives them and leads them astray. That is all I have been able to learn about their brutish beliefs. All these people are well-proportioned in body, without deformity,

---

[a] Entendez : *venant du diable qui* . . .

sans difformité, & sont dispos. Les femmes sont aussi biẽ formees, potelees & de couleur bazannee, à cause de certaines peintures dont elles se frotẽt, qui les fait demeurer oliuastres. Ils sont habillez de peaux : vne partie de leur corps est couuerte & l'autre partie descouuerte : mais l'yuer ils remedient à tout : car ils sont habillez de bonnes fourrures, comme de peaux d'Eslan, L'oustres,[a] Castors, Ours, Loups marins, Cerfs & Biches qu'ils ont en quãtité. L'yuer quand les neges sont grãdes ils font vne maniere de raquettes qui sont grandes deux ou trois fois plus que celles de Frãce, qu'ils attachent à leurs pieds ; & vont ainsi dans les neges, sans enfoncer : car autrement ils ne pourroient chasser n'y aller en beaucoup de lieux. Ils ont aussi vne façon de mariage, qui est, Que quand vne fille est en l'aage de 14. ou 15. ans, & qu'elle a plusieurs seruiteurs elle a cõpagnie auec tous ceux que bon luy semble : puis au bout de 5. ou 6. ans elle

[a] Lisez *de Loustres.*

---

and are agile. The women are also well-formed, plump, and of a dusky hue, on account of certain colouring materials with which they rub themselves, which render them permanently olive-coloured. They are clothed in skins ; a part of their bodies is covered, and the other part is bare. But in winter they are completely covered, for they are clad in good furs, such as the skins of moose, otter, beaver, bear, seal, deer (male and female), which are very numerous. In the winter when the snow is deep, they make a kind of racket, two or three times as large as those in France, and attach them to their feet, and with these they walk over the snow without sinking. Otherwise they could not hunt nor travel in many places.

They have also a sort of marriage, which is after this fashion. When a girl is fourteen or fifteen years of age and has several suitors, she keeps company with as many as she

prend lequel il luy plaist pour son mary, & viuent ensemble iusques à la fin de leur vie : sinon qu'ap[r]és auoir demeure quelque tēps ensemble, & elles n'ont point enfans, l'homme p. 195. se peut desmarier & prēdre vne autre fēme, disāt que la siēne ne vaut rien : Par ainsi les filles sont plus libres que les femmes.

Depuis qu'elles sont marié[e]s, elles sont chastes, & leurs maris sont la pluspart ialoux, lesquels donnent des presens aux peres ou parens des filles qu'ils ont espousez. Voila les ceremonies & façōs dont ils vsent en leurs mariages. Pour ce qui est de leurs enterremēs : Quād vn homme, ou vne femme meurt, ils font vne fosse, où ils mettent tout le bien qu'ils ont, comme chaudieres[,] fourrures, haches, arcs, fleches, robbes & autres choses : puis ils mettent le corps dans la fosse & le couurent de terre, & mettent quantité de grosses pieces de bois dessus, & vne autre debout qu'ils

---

wishes. Then after five or six years she chooses the one she likes best for her husband, and they live together to the end of their lives, unless, after they have lived together for some time, the woman has no children, when the husband may divorce her and take another wife, alleging that his own is no good. In this way the girls have greater freedom than the women. After they are married they are chaste and their husbands are generally jealous, and they give presents to the fathers or relatives of the girls they have married. Such are the ceremonies and customs followed in their marriages.

As regards their burials, when a man or a woman dies, they make a grave, into which they put everything they own, such as kettles, furs, hatchets, bows, arrows, skins and other things. Then they put the body into the grave, and cover it with earth, and put many big pieces of wood on top, and set one piece on end and paint it red in the upper part.

peindent de rouge par enhaut. Ils croyent l'immortalité des ames, & disent qu'ils vont se reiouir en d'autres pays, auec leurs parens & amis qui sont morts. Si ce sont Capitaines ou autres ayans quelque creance, ils vont aprés leur mort, trois fois l'ãnee faire vn festin, chantans & dançans sur leur fosse.

Tout le temps qu'ils furent auec nous, qui estoit le lieu de plus de seureté pour eux, ils ne laissoient d'aprehender tellement leurs ennemis, qu'ils prenoient souuent des alarmes la nuit en songeant, & enuoyoient leurs femmes & enfans à nostre fort, où ie leur faisois ouurir les portes, & les hõmes p. 196. demeurer autour dudict fort, sans permettre qu'ils entrassent dedans, car ils estoient autant en seureté de leurs personnes comme s'ils y eussent esté, & faisois sortir cinq ou six de nos compagnons pour leur donner courage, & aller descouurir parmy les bois s'ils verroient rien pour les contenter. Ils sont fort craintifs & aprehendent infinement leurs ennemis,

They believe in the immortality of souls, and say that the dead enjoy happiness in other lands with their relatives and friends who have died. In the case of chiefs, or others having influence, they hold a banquet after their death three times a year and sing and dance upon their grave.

The whole time they were with us, which was the safest place for them, they were in such constant dread of their enemies, that they often took fright at night in their dreams, and would send their wives and children to our fort, the gates of which I used to have opened for them, but let the men remain about the fort, not permitting them to enter; for they were as safe there as to their persons as if they had been inside. And I used to send out five or six of our men to give them courage, and to go and search the woods whether they could see anything, which used to satisfy them. They are very timid and fear their enemies greatly, and hardly

& ne dorment presque point en repos en quelque lieu qu'ils soiēt, biē que ie les asseurasse tous les iours de ce qu'il m'estoit possible, en leur remōstrant de faire comme nous, sçauoir veiller vne partie, tādis que les autres dormiront, & chacū auoir ses armes prestes comme celuy qui fait le guet, & ne tenir les sōges pour verité, sur quoy ils se reposent : d'autant que la pluspart ne sont que mēteries, auec autres propos sur ce subiect : mais peu leur seruoiēt ces remonstrances, & disoiēt que nous sçauions mieux nous garder de toutes choses qu'eux, & qu'auec le temps si nous habitions leur pays, ils le pourroient apprendre.

ever sleep quietly wherever they are, although I reassured them every day as much as I could, by admonishing them to do as we did, that is to say that some of them should watch, whilst the others slept, and that each should have his arms ready like a sentinel on duty, and that they should not take dreams as truth upon which to rely, since most of them are only fables, with other considerations on the same subject. But these admonitions were of small avail, and they used to say that we knew better than they did how to protect ourselves in every way, and that in time if we were to come and live in their country they would be able to learn these.

Semences & vignes plantees à Quebecq. Commencement de l'hiuer & des glaces. p. 197. *Extresme necessité de certains sauuages.*

CHAP. V.

LE premier Octobre, ie fis semer du bled, & au 15. du seigle.

Le 3. du mois il fit quelques gelees blanches, & les feuilles des arbres commencent à tomber au 15.

Le 24. du mois, ie fis planter des vignes du pays, qui vindrent fort belles : Mais aprés que ie fus party de l'habitation pour venir en France, on les gasta toutes, sans en auoir eu soing, qui m'affligea beaucoup à mon retour.

Le 18. de Nouembre tomba quantité de neges, mais elles ne durerent que deux iours sur la terre, & fit en ce temps vn grand coup de vent. Il mourut en ce mois vn matelot

---

Grain sowed and vines planted at Quebec. Beginning of winter and frost. Extreme destitution of certain savages.

CHAPTER V

ON the first of October I had some wheat sown and on the fifteenth some rye. On the third of the month there was a white frost and on the fifteenth the leaves of the trees began to fall. On the twenty-fourth of the month I had some native vines planted and they prospered extremely well, but after I left the settlement to come back to France, they were all ruined, for want of care, which distressed me very much.

On the eighteenth of November there was a heavy fall of snow. It lay on the ground only two days, but during that time there was a great gale. During that month there

& nostre serrurier,[1] de la dissenterie, comme firent plusieurs sauuages à force de manger des anguilles mal cuites, selon mon aduis.

Le 5. Feurier il negea fort, & fit vn grand vent qui dura deux iours.

Le 20. du mois il apparut à nous quelques sauuages qui estoient de dela la riuiere, qui crioyent que nous les allassions secourir, mais il estoit hors de nostre puissance, à cause de la p. 198. riuiere qui charioit vn grand nombre de glaces, car la faim pressoit si fort ces pauures miserables, que ne sçachans que faire, ils se resolurent de mourir, hommes, femmes, & enfans, où de passer la riuiere, pour l'esperance qu'ils auoient que ie les assisterois en leur extresme necessité. Ayant donc prins ceste resolutiō, les hommes & les femmes prindrent leurs enfans, & se mirent en leurs canaux, pensant gaigner nostre coste par vne ouuerture de glaces que le vent auoit

died of dysentery a sailor and our locksmith,[1] as well as several natives, on account, in my opinion, of having eaten badly-cooked eels.

On the fifth of February it snowed hard and there was a high wind which lasted for two days.

On the twentieth of the month some Indians made their appearance on the other side of the river, and shouted to us to go to their aid, but this was out of our power, on account of the large amount of ice which was floating down the river. So hungry were these poor wretches, that being at their wits' end, they, men, women and children, resolved to die or to cross the river, in the hope that I would succour them in their dire need. Accordingly having taken this resolution, the men and women seized their children and got into their canoes, thinking they would reach our shore by an opening in the ice which the wind had made; but no sooner were

---

[1] Antoine Natel. See pp. 27-8 *supra*.

faitte : mais ils ne furent sitost au milieu de la riuiere, que leurs canaux furent prins & brisez entre les glaces en mille pieces. Ils firent si bien qu'ils se ietterent auec leurs enfans que les femmes portoient sur leur dos, dessus vn grand glaçon. Comme ils estoient là dessus, on les entendoit crier, tant que c'estoit grand pitié, n'esperans pas moins que de mourir : Mais l'heur [a] en voulut tant à ces pauures miserables, qu'vne grande glace vint choquer par le costé de celle où ils estoient, si rudement qu'elle les ietta à terre. Eux voyant ce coup si fauorable furent à terre auec autant de ioye que iamais ils en receurent, quelque grande famine qu'ils eussēt eu. Ils s'en vindrēt à nostre habitatiō si maigres & deffaits, qu'ils sembloyent des anathomies,[b] la pluspart ne pouuās se soubstenir. Ie m'estonnay de les voir, & de la façon qu'ils p. 199. auoient passé, veu qu'ils estoient si foibles & debilles. Ie

---

[a] Vieux mot = la fortune, la chance (*cf.* bonheur, malheur). Souvent aussi = chance heureuse.

[b] Vieil emploi *d'anatomie* (proprement, *anatomie sèche*) avec le sens de *squelette*.

---

they in the middle of the river, than their canoes were caught between the ice floes and broken into a thousand pieces. They manœuvred so well that they jumped with their children, whom the women were carrying on their backs, upon a large block of ice. While they were upon it, we could hear them screaming so much that it was pitiful; for they expected nothing less than death. But fortune favoured these poor wretches so much that a large ice floe struck the side of the one upon which they stood with such force that it threw them upon the land. They, seeing such a favourable turn of events, went ashore with as great joy as they ever experienced in spite of the famine they had endured. They came to our settlement so thin and emaciated that they looked like skeletons, most of them being unable to stand. I was astonished at their appearance, and at the way they had crossed the river, seeing them so weak and

leur fis donner du pain & des feues. Ils n'eurent pas la patience qu'elles fussent cuites pour les manger. Ie leur pretay aussi quelques escorces d'arbres, que d'autres sauuages m'auoient dōné pour couurir leurs cabanes. Cōme ils se cabannoient, ils aduiserēt vne charōgne qu'il y auoit prés de deux mois que i'auois fait ietter pour attirer des regnards, dōt nous en preniōs de noirs & roux, comme ceux de France, mais beaucoup plus chargez de poil. Ceste charongne estoit vne truye & vn chien qui auoiēt enduré toutes les rigueurs du temps chaut & froit. Quand le temps s'adoulcissoit, elle puoit si fort que l'on ne pouuoit durer auprés : neantmoins ils ne laisserent de la prendre & emporter en leur cabanne, où aussitost ils la deuorerent à demy cuite, & iamais viande ne leur sembla de meilleur goust. I'enuoyay deux ou trois hommes les aduertir qu'ils n'en mēgeassent point s'ils ne vouloient mourir : comme ils approcherent de leur cabanne, ils sentirent vne telle puanteur de ceste charongne à demy

---

faint. I ordered bread and beans to be given to them. They could not wait for these to be cooked before eating them. To cover their wigwams I lent them also some bark, which other Indians had given me. As they were making their wigwams they noticed some carrion which about two months previously I had thrown out to attract foxes, of which we had caught both black and red ones, like those in France, but with heavier fur. This carrion was a sow and a dog which had lain there through the hot and cold weather. When the weather was mild it stank so strongly that one could not stay near it. Nevertheless they took it and carried it off to their wigwam, where they quickly devoured it half-cooked, and never did meat seem to them to have a better taste. I sent two or three men to warn them not to eat any of it, if they did not wish to die. As these men came near to the Indians' wigwam, they smelt such a stench from this half-cooked carrion, of which each

eschauffee, dont ils auoient chacun vne piece en la main, qu'ils pencerent rendre gorge, qui fit qu'ils n'y arresterent gueres. Ces pauures miserables acheuerent leur festin. Ie ne laissay pourtant de les accommoder selon ma puissance, p. 200. mais c'estoit peu pour la quantité qu'ils estoient : & dans vn mois ils eussent bien mangé tous nos viures, s'ils les eussent eu en leur pouuoir, tant ils sont gloutons : Car quand ils en ont, ils ne mettent rien en reserue, & en font chere entiere iour & nuit, puis aprés ils meurent de faim. Ils firent encore vne autre chose aussi miserable que la premiere. I'auois fait mettre vne chienne au haut d'vn arbre, qui seruoit d'appas aux martres & oiseaux de proye, où ie prenois plaisir, d'autant qu'ordinairement ceste charongne en estoit assaillie : Ces sauuages furent à l'arbre & ne pouuãs monter dessus à cause de leur foiblesse,[a] ils l'abbatirent, & aussitost enleuerent le chien, où il n'y auoit que la peau & les os, & la teste puante & infaicte, qui fut incontinent deuoré.

---

[a] Le texte original porte *floiblesse.*

of them had a piece in his hand, that they almost vomited, so that they did not stay there long. These poor wretches finished their banquet. I did the best I could to furnish them with supplies, but it was little in comparison with their large numbers. In a month they would have eaten up all our provisions, such hearty eaters are they. For when they have food, they lay nothing by, but eat their fill day and night and then starve. And they did another thing as disagreeable as the first. I had had a bitch hung in a tree-top to serve as bait for martens and birds of prey ; and the thing interested me, inasmuch as the carcass was often attacked by them. These savages went to the tree, and not being able to climb up it on account of their weakness, they felled it, and at once carried off the dog, which was now only skin and bones, with the head stinking and rotten, and immediately devoured it.

Voila le plaisir qu'ils ont le plus souuent en yuer : Car en esté ils ont assez de quoy se maintenir & faire des prouisiōs, pour n'estre assaillis de ces extresmes necessitez, les riuieres abbondantes en poisson & chasse d'oiseaux & autres bestes sauuages. La terre est fort propre & bonne au labourage, s'ils vouloient prendre la peine d'y semer des bleds d'Inde, comme font tous leurs voisins Algommequins, Ochastaiguins [1] p. 201. & Yroquois, qui ne sont attaquez d'vn si cruel assaut de famine pour y sçauoir remedier par le soin & preuoyance qu'ils ont, qui fait qu'ils viuent heureusement au pris de ces Mōtaignets, Canadiēs,[2] & Souriquois qui sont le long des costes de la mer. Voila la pluspart de leur vie miserable. Les neiges & les glaces y sont trois mois sur la terre, qui est depuis le mois de Ianuier iusques vers le huictiesme d'Auril, qu'elles sont presques toutes fondues : Et au plus à la fin

This is their most usual pleasure in winter : for in summer they have enough to keep themselves, and also to lay up provisions, so as not to be attacked by such extreme famine, the rivers abounding in fish, and there being birds and other wild beasts to hunt. The soil is very good and suitable for cultivation, if they were willing to take the trouble to sow Indian corn, as do all their neighbours, the Algonquins, Ochastaiguins,[1] and Iroquois, who are free from such cruel attacks of famine because they know how to ward them off by the care and foresight they show, the result of which is that they live prosperously in comparison with these Montagnais, Canadians,[2] and Souriquois, who inhabit the sea coast. That is the kind of miserable existence they lead for the most part. Snow and ice remain on the ground for three months, that is from the month of January until about the eighth of April, by which time it is nearly all

---

[1] The Hurons, from the name of one of their chiefs. See p. 68 *infra*.

[2] At that time the tribes living below the Saguenay. *Cf.* de Laët, *L'Histoire du Nouveau Monde*, Liv. II, Chap. VIII, p. 44. Leyde, 1640.

dud. mois il ne s'ē voit que raremēt au lieu de nostre habitation. C'est chose estrange, que tant de neges & glaces qu'il y a espoisses de deux à trois brasses sur la riuiere soiēt en moins de 12. iours toutes fondues. Depuis Tadoussac iusques à Gaspé, cap Breton, isle de terre neufue & grand baye,[1] les glaces & neges y sont encores en la pluspart des endroits iusques à la fin de May : auquel temps toute l'entree de la grāde riuiere est seelee de glaces : mais à Quebecq il n'y en a point : qui montre vne estrange difference pour 120. lieues de chemin en longitude : car l'entree de la riuiere est par les 49. 50. & 51. degré[s] de latitude, & nostre habitation par les 46. & deux tiers.[2]

---

melted. And moreover towards the end of this month only rarely is any seen about our settlement. It is a remarkable thing that two or three fathoms of snow and ice on the river should all be melted in less than twelve days. From Tadoussac to Gaspé, cape Breton, Newfoundland, and the Grand Bay,[1] one still finds ice and snow in most places up to the end of May, at which time the whole mouth of the great river is blocked with ice, whilst at Quebec there is none. This shows a remarkable difference for a hundred and twenty leagues of distance in longitude; for the mouth of the river lies in 49° 50° and 51° degrees of latitude and our settlement in 46° 40'.[2]

[1] The north-east corner of the gulf of St. Lawrence, inside the strait of Belle-Isle. See Biggar, *op. cit.* 76, note 9, and Plate X, p. 257.

[2] Quebec lies in 46° 49' 8".

p. 202. *Maladies de la terre à Quebecq. Le suiect de l'yuernement. Description dudit lieu. Arriuee du sieur des Marais gendre de Pont-graué, audit Quebecq.*

CHAP. VI.

LES maladies de la terre commencerent à prēdre fort tart, qui fut en Feurier iusqu'à la my Auril. Il en fut frappé 18. & en mourut dix; & cinq autres de la disenterie. Ie fis faire ouuerture de quelques vns, pour voir s'ils estoient offencez comme ceux que i'auois veus és autres habitations: on trouua le mesme. Quelque temps aprés nostre Chirurgien mourut.[1] Tout cela nous donna beaucoup de desplaisir, pour la peine que nous auions à penser les malades. Cy dessus i'ay descript la forme de ces maladies.

Or ie tiens qu'elles ne prouiennent que de manger trop de salures & legumes, qui eschaufent le sang, & gastent les

The scurvy at Quebec. Winter the cause. Description of the aforesaid place. Arrival of the Sieur des Marais, son-in-law of Pont-Gravé, at Quebec.

CHAPTER VI

THE scurvy began very late, that is in February, and lasted till the middle of April. Eighteen were struck down with it and of these ten died: and five others died of dysentery. I had some of them opened to see if they were affected like those I had seen in the other settlements. The same conditions were found. Some time after our surgeon died.[1] All this gave us much trouble, on account of the difficulty we had in nursing the sick. I have already described the form of this sickness.

Now it is my view that it comes altogether from eating too much salt food and vegetables which heat the blood

---

[1] His name was Bonnerme. See *supra*, p. 31.

parties interieures. L'yuer aussi en est en partie cause, qui reserre la chaleur naturelle qui cause plus grande corruption de sang : Et aussi la terre quand elle est ouuerte il en sort de certaines vapeurs qui y sont encloses lesquelles infectent l'air : ce que l'on à veu par experience en ceux qui ont esté aux autres habitations aprés la premiere annee que le soleil eut donné sur ce qui estoit deserté,[a] tāt de nostre logemēt p. 203.
qu'autres lieux, où l'air y estoit beaucoup meilleur & les maladies non si aspres cōme deuant. Pour ce qui est du pays, il est beau & plaisant, & apporte toutes sortes de grains & grennes à maturité, y ayant de toutes les especes d'arbres que nous auons en nos forests par deça, & quantité de fruits, bien qu'ils soient sauuages pour n'estre cultiuez : comme Noyers, Serisiers, Pruniers, Vignes, Framboises, Fraizes, Groiselles

and corrupt the inward parts. The winter too is partly the cause ; for it checks the natural heat and causes greater corruption of the blood. And from the earth, when it is opened, there come forth certain vapours enclosed therein and these infect the air. This has been seen by experience in those people who have been in other settlements after the first year that the sun had shone on what had been cleared. This was true of our own settlement as well as of other places, and the air was much better there and the sickness less severe than before. As for the country itself, it is beautiful and agreeable, and it brings all sorts of grain and seed to maturity. There are in it all the varieties of trees we have in our forests on this side of the ocean and many fruits, although they are wild for lack of cultivation : such as butternut trees, cherry-trees, plum-trees, vines, rasp-

---

[a] *Deserter* n'aurait-il pas ici le sens de *déboiser* et *défricher* ? Il a certainement cette signification dans la phrase qu'on trouvera plus bas, p. 179, *ie fis faire deux iardins, l'vn dans les prairies, & l'autre au bois, que ie fis deserter*. *Cf.* encore ci-dessus, p. 17, *quelques isles . . . qui sont fort desertes*, etc., et ci-dessus, vol. i, p. 368, . . . *que l'on pourroit deserter aisement, & mettre en labourage.*

verdes[a] & rouges, & plusieurs autres petits fruits qui y sont assez bons. Aussi y a il plusieurs sortes de bōnes herbes & racines. La pesche de poisson y est en abondāce dās les riuieres, où il y a quātité de prairies & gibier, qui est en nombre infiny. Depuis le mois d'Auril iusques au 15. de Decembre l'air y est si sain & bō, qu'on ne sent en soy aucune mauuaise disposition : Mais Ianuier Feurier & Mars sont dangereux pour les maladies qui prennent plustost en ce temps qu'en esté, pour les raisons cy dessus dittes : Car pour le traitement, tous ceux qui estoient auec moy estoient bien vestus, & couchez dans de bons licts, & bien chauffez & nourris, s'entend des viandes salees que nous auions, qui à mon opiniō les offensoient beaucoup, cōme i'ay dict cy dessus : & à ce que i'ay veu, la maladie s'atacque aussi bien à vn qui se tient p. 204. delicatement, & qui aura bien soin de soy, comme à celuy qui sera le plus miserable. Nous croiyons au commencement

---

[a] Il s'agit peut-être des groseilles à maquereau.

---

berries, strawberries, gooseberries and red currants, and several other small fruits, which are quite good. There are also several sorts of useful herbs and roots. Fish are plentiful in the rivers, along which are meadows and game in vast quantity. From the month of April until the fifteenth of December the air is so healthy and good, that one feels in oneself no tendency to sickness : but January, February and March are dangerous for the maladies which prevail rather in that season than in summer for the reasons given above. As to the treatment, all those who were with me were well clad, slept in good beds, and were kept warm and well fed, that is on the salted meats which we had, which in my opinion, did them much harm, as I have already stated. And as far as I have seen, this sickness attacks quite as much the man who lives in a nice way, and takes great care of himself, as it does the man who is very wretched. At first

qu'il n'y eust que les gens de trauail qui fussent prins de ces maladies : mais nous auons veu le contraire. Ceux qui nauigēt aux Indes Orientalles & plusieurs autres regions, comme vers l'Allemaigne & l'Angleterre, en sont aussi biē frappez qu'en la nouuelle France. Depuis quelque temps en ça[a] les Flamans en estans attacquez en leurs voyages des Indes, ont trouué vn remede fort singulier contre ceste maladie, qui nous pourroit bien seruir : mais nous n'en auons point la cognoissance pour ne l'auoir recherché. Toutesfois ie tiens pour asseuré qu'ayant de bon pain & viandes fraiches, qu'on n'y seroit point subiect.

Le 8. d'Auril les neges estoient toutes fondues, & neantmoins l'air estoit encores assez froit iusques en Auril,[1] que les arbres commencent à ietter leurs fueilles.

Quelques vns de ceux qui estoient malades du mal de la terre, furēt gueris venant le printēps, qui en est le temps de

[a] *en ça* = jusqu'à présent.

---

we thought that it was only the workmen who were struck down by this sickness : but we have seen that this is not true. Those who sail to the East Indies and various other regions, such as Germany and England, are stricken by it, just as much as those in New France. Some time ago, the Dutch, being attacked by it in their expeditions to the Indies, found a very remarkable remedy for this sickness, which might be of use to us, but not having looked for it, we have no knowledge of it. However I hold it to be true that with good bread and fresh meat, one would not be subject to it.

On the eighth of April the snow was all melted and yet the air was still rather cold until April,[1] when the trees began to break into leaf.

Some of those who were ill with the scurvy got better as spring came on, which is the time for recovery. I had a native of the region who spent the winter with me and was

[1] *Sic pro* May. See the 1632 edition.

guerison. I'auois vn sauuage du pays qui yuerna auec moy, qui fut atteint de ce mal, pour auoir changé sa nourriture en salee, lequel en mourut : Ce qui montre euidemment que p. 205. les saleures ne valent rien, & y sont du tout contraires.

Le 5. Iuin arriua vne chalouppe à nostre habitation, où estoit le sieur des Marais, gendre du Pont-graué, qui nous aportoit nouuelles que son beau pere estoit arriué à Tadoussac le 28. de May. Ceste nouuelle m'apporta beaucoup de cōtentement pour le soulagemēt que nous en esperions auoir. Il ne restoit plus que huit de 28. que nous estions, encores la moitié de ce qui restoit estoit mal disposee.

Le 7. de Iuin ie party de Quebecq, pour aller à Tadoussac communiquer quelques affaires, & priay le sieur des Marais de demeurer en ma place iusques à mon retour : ce qu'il fit.

Aussitost que i'y fus arriué le Pont-graué & moy discourusmes ensemble sur le subiect de quelques descouuertures que ie deuois faire dās les terres, où les sauuages m'auoiēt

---

attacked by this malady because he had changed his diet to salt meat, and he died of it, which clearly shows that salted food is not good, and indeed quite the contrary as regards this disease.

On the fifth of June there arrived at our settlement a shallop, in which was the Sieur des Marais, Pont-Gravé's son-in-law, who brought us news of the arrival of his father-in-law at Tadoussac on the twenty-eighth of May. This gave me much satisfaction ; for we hoped to have relief from him. Of our company now only eight of the twenty-eight remained and half of these were ailing.

On the seventh of June I left Quebec for Tadoussac to attend to some business and invited the Sieur des Marais to stay in my place until my return, and he did so.

As soon as I had arrived there, Pont-Gravé and I had some talk together on the subject of certain explorations which I was to make into the interior, whither the Indians

promis de nous guider. Nous resolusmes que i'y irois dans vne chalouppe auec vingt hommes, & que Pont-graué demeureroit à Tadoussac pour donner ordre aux affaires de nostre habitation, ainsi qu'il auoit esté resolu, il fut fait & y yuerna : d'autant que ie deuois m'en retourner [en] France selon le commandement du sieur de Mons, qui me l'auoit escrit, pour le rendre certain des choses que ie pouuois auoir faites, & des descouuertures dudit pays. Aprés auoir prins ceste resolution ie party aussitost de Tadoussac, & m'en retournay à Quebecq, où ie fis accommoder vne chalouppe de tout ce qui estoit necessaire pour faire les descouuertures du pays des Yroquois, où ie deuois aller auec les Montagnets nos alliez. p. 206.

---

had promised to conduct us. We decided that I should go there in a shallop with twenty men and that Pont-Gravé should stay at Tadoussac to direct the business of our settlement. And as had been decided, so it was carried out; and he passed the winter there. For, according to the orders of the Sieur de Monts in a letter he had written to me, I was to return to France, to inform him of what I had done and of the explorations made in that country. When this decision had been reached, I left Tadoussac at once and went back to Quebec, where I had a shallop fitted out with everything necessary to carry out explorations in the country of the Iroquois, to which I was to go with our allies, the Montagnais.

Partement de Quebecq iusques à l'isle saincte Esloy, & de la rencontre que i'y fis des sauuages Algomequins & Ochataiguins.[1]

CHAP. VII.

ET pour cest effect ie partis le 18. dudit mois,[2] où la riuiere commence à s'eslargir, quelque fois d'vne lieue & lieue & demie en tels endroits. Le pays va de plus en plus en embellisant. Ce sont costaux en partie le long de la riuiere & terres vnies sans rochers que fort peu. Pour la riuiere elle est dāgereuse en beaucoup d'endroits, à cause des bancs & rochers qui sont dedās, & n'y fait pas bon nauiger, si ce n'est la sonde à la main. La riuiere est fort abōdāte en plusieurs sortes de poisson, tāt de ceux qu'auons pardeça, cōme d'autres que n'auons pas. Le pays est tout couuert de grandes & hautes forests des mesmes sortes qu'a-

---

Departure from Quebec as far as the Island of St. Eloi. Meeting there with the Algonquins and Ochataiguins.[1]

CHAPTER VII

AND for this purpose I set out on the eighteenth of the month.[2] Here the river begins to widen in some places to a league or to a league and a half. The country becomes more and more beautiful as you advance. Along the river there are some hills and in other parts level land without rocks, but not much. As for the river it is dangerous in many places, on account of the shoals and rocks which lie in it, and it is not safe sailing except with the sounding-lead in hand. The river is very rich in many varieties of fish, both of those we have in France, and of others which we do not have. The country everywhere is covered with great, high forests of the same kinds of trees as those

[1] Hurons. See pp. 57 and 68.

[2] June.

uons vers nostre habitation. Il y a aussi plusieurs vignes & noyers qui sont sur le bort de la riuiere, & quantité de petits ruisseaux & riuieres, qui ne sont nauigables qu'auec des canaux. Nous passames proche de la pointe S^{te}. Croix,[1] où beaucoup tiennent (comme i'ay dit ailleurs[2]) estre la demeure où yuerna Iacques Quartier. Ceste pointe est de sable, qui aduance quelque peu dans la riuiere, à l'ouuert du Norouest, qui bat dessus. Il y a quelques prayries, mais elles sont innondees des eaues à toutes les fois que vient la plaine mer, qui pert de prés de deux brasses & demie. Ce passage est fort dãgereux à passer pour quãtité de rochers qui sont au trauers de la riuiere, bien qu'il y aye bon achenal, lequel est fort tortu, où la riuiere court comme vn ras,[a] & faut bien prendre le temps à propos pour le passer. Ce lieu a tenu beaucoup de gens en erreur, qui croyoient ne le pouuoir p. 207.

[a] *Ras* ou *raz* = "Courant violent dans un canal étroit qui fait communiquer deux mers."—Hatzfeld et Darmesteter, *Dictionnaire Général, s.v.*

near our settlement. There are also several sorts of vines and nut-bearing trees on the banks of the river, and many brooks and small rivers, which are navigable only in canoes. We passed near point Ste. Croix[1] which, as I have stated elsewhere,[2] many hold to be the place where Jacques Cartier wintered. It is a sandy point which projects some little distance into the river, and it is open to the north-west wind which beats upon it. There are some meadows, which are flooded whenever there are high tides, which rise and fall nearly two fathoms and a half. This is a very dangerous place to go through on account of the many rocks lying across the river, although there is a good, but very crooked, channel, through which the river runs very swiftly; and you must seize the right moment to get through. This place has deceived a good many who thought they could pass through

---

[1] Pointe-Platon.

[2] Chap. IV, *supra*, pp. 36–44.

passer que de plaine mer, pour n'y auoir aucun achenal: maintenāt nous auons trouué le contraire : car pour descendre du haut en bas, on le peut de basse-mer : mais de monter, il seroit mal-aisé, si ce n'estoit auec vn grand vent, à cause du grād courant d'eau ; & faut par necessité attēdre vn tiers de flot pour le passer, où il y a dedans le courant 6. 8. 10. 12. 15. brasses d'eau en l'achenal.[1]

Continuant nostre chemin, nous fusmes à vne riuiere qui est fort aggreable, distante du lieu de saincte Croix, de p. 208. neuf lieues, & de Quebecq, 24. & l'auons nōmée la riuiere saincte Marie.[2] Toute ceste riuiere[a] depuis saincte Croix est fort plaisante & aggreable.[3]

Continuāt nostre routte, ie fis rēcōtre de quelques deux ou trois cens sauuages, qui estoient cabannez proche d'vne

[a] A remarquer que Champlain dans ce volume se sert assez rarement du mot *fleuve*, même pour indiquer, comme ici, le Saint-Laurent.

---

only at high tide, because there was no channel: now we have found the opposite to be the case; for one can go downward when the tide is low, but as to going up, it would be difficult, except with a high wind, on account of the strong current. And so to pass up one is obliged to wait for a third of high tide, when there are in the channel six, eight, ten, twelve and fifteen fathoms of water.[1]

Continuing our course we came to a very beautiful river nine leagues from the place called Ste. Croix, and twenty-four from Quebec, and we named it St. Mary's river.[2] The whole river[3] from Ste. Croix upward is delightfully beautiful.

Still continuing our journey I met with some two or three hundred Indians who were encamped near a small petite isle, appelee S. Esloy, distant de S. Marie d'vne lieue & demie,[1] & là les fusmes recognoistre, & trouuasmes que c'estoit des nations de sauuages appelez Ochateguins[2] & Algoumequins qui venoient à Quebecq, pour nous assister aux descouuertures du pays des Yroquois, contre lesquels ils ont guerre mortelle, n'espargnant aucune chose qui soit à eux.

---

[1] On the difficulty of passing this Richelieu rapid, see Biggar, *op. cit.* 143.

[2] River Ste. Anne de La Pérade. It is about nine leagues from the present church of Ste. Croix, and about twenty leagues from Quebec. (Lav.)

[3] St. Lawrence.

Aprés les auoir recogneus, ie fus à terre pour les voir, & m'enquis qui estoit leur chef : Ils me dirent qu'il y en auoit deux, l'vn appelé Yroquet & l'autre Ochasteguin qu'ils me montrerent : & fus en leur cabanne, où ils me firent bonne reception, selon leur coustume.

Ie commençay à leur faire entēdre le subiet de mon voyage, dont ils furēt fort resiouis : & aprés plusieurs discours ie me retiray : & quelque temps aprés ils vindrent à ma chalouppe, où ils me firent present de quelque pelleterie, en me monstrant

---

island called St. Eloi, a league and a half from St. Mary.[1] We approached to investigate and found that they were tribes of Indians called Ochateguins[2] and Algonquins, who were on their way to Quebec to help us to explore the country of the Iroquois, with whom they are in mortal conflict, and they spare nothing belonging to these enemies.

Having recognized them I went ashore to see them and enquired who was their chief. They told me there were two, one called Iroquet, and the other Ochasteguin, whom they pointed out to me. I went into their wigwams where they received me well, according to their custom.

I began to give them some idea of the object of my expedition, at which they were much pleased, and after some talk, I withdrew. A little time after they came to my

[1] See Vol. I, 134, note 2.

[2] Hurons, after the name of this chief. See Plate I, p. 1 and p. 186.

plusieurs signes de resiouissance : & de là s'en retournerent à terre.

p. 209. Le lendemain les deux chefs s'en vindrent me trouuer, où ils furent vne espace de temps sans dire mot, en songeant & petunant tousiours. Aprés auoir bien pensé, ils commencerent à haranguer hautement à tous leurs compagnons, qui estoiēt sur le bort du riuage auec leurs armes en la main, escoutans fort ententiuement ce que leurs chefs leur disoient, sçauoir.

Qu'il y auoit prés de dix lunes, ainsi qu'ils comptēt, que le fils d'Yroquet m'auoit veu, & que ie luy auois fait bōne reception, & declaré que le Pont & moy desirions les assister contre leurs ennemis, auec lesquels ils auoient, dés lōgtemps, la guerre, pour beaucoup de cruautés qu'ils auoient exercees contre leur natiō, soubs pretexte d'amitié : Et qu'ayāt tousiours depuis desiré la vengeance, ils auoient solicité tous les sauuages que ie voyois sur le bort de la riuiere, de venir

---

shallop and made me a present of some furs, showing many signs of pleasure. Then they returned on shore.

On the following day the two chiefs came to see me and for some time remained silent, meditating and smoking all the while. After much reflection they began in a loud voice to harangue their companions who stood on the shore with their weapons in their hands, listening very attentively to what their chiefs said to them, which ran thus :—

That some ten moons ago, which is their way of counting, Iroquet's son had come to see me, when I had given him a kind reception, and had told him that Pont-Gravé and I wished to help them against their enemies. With these they had long been at war, on account of many cruelties practised against their tribe under colour of friendship. They said that, having ever since desired vengeance, they had asked all the Indians I saw on the river's bank to come

à nous, pour faire alliãce auec nous, & qu'ils n'auoient iamais veu de Chrestiens, ce qui les auoit aussi meus de nous venir voir : & que d'eux & de leurs compagnõs i'en ferois tout ainsi que ie voudrois ; & qu'ils n'auoient point d'enfans auec eux, mais gens qui sçauoient faire la guerre, & plains de courage, sçachans le pays & les riuieres qui sont au pays des Yroquois ; & que maintenant ils me prioyent de retourner en nostre p. 210. habitation, pour voir nos maisons, & que trois iours aprés nous retournerions à la guerre tous ensemble ; & que pour signe de grande amitié & resiouissance ie feisse tirer des mousquets & arquebuses, & qu'ils seroiẽt fort satisfaits : ce que ie fis. Ils ietterent de grands cris auec estonnement, & principalement ceux qui iamais n'en auoient ouy [a] n'y veus.

Aprés les auoir ouis,[a] ie leur fis responce, Que pour leur plaire, ie desirois bien m'en retourner à nostre habitation

---

[a] Cette hésitation quant à l'accord des participes (passés et présents) est assez fréquente chez les écrivains du XVII^e^ siècle, et se rencontre souvent dans Champlain.

---

to meet us for the purpose of making an alliance with us. Since these had never seen Christians, this fact also moved them to come and see us ; that I might do with them and their companions whatever I liked ; that they had no children with them, but only men skilled in war and full of courage, who knew the country and the rivers in the land of the Iroquois. And that they now besought me to return to our settlement, for them to see our houses, and that three days later we should all set off on the war-path together. They also asked me as a token of great friendship and rejoicing to have muskets and arquebuses fired off, whereat they would be much pleased. I did so and they uttered loud shouts of astonishment, especially those who had never heard or seen the like.

After listening to their speech, I made answer, that to please them I was glad to go back to our settlement for their pour leur donner plus de contentement, & qu'ils pouuoient iuger que ie n'auois autre intention que d'aller faire la guerre, ne portant auec nous que des armes, & non des marchādises pour traicter, cōme on leur auoit donné à entendre, & que mon desir n'estoit que d'accomplir ce que ie leur auois promis : & si i'eusse sceu qu'on leur eut raporté quelque chose de mal, que ie tenois ceux là pour ennemis plus que les leur[s] mesme.[1] Ils me dirent qu'ils n'en croioyent rien, & que iamais ils n'en auoient ouy parler ; neantmoins c'estoit le contraire : car il y auoit eu quelques sauuages qui le dirēt aux nostres : Ie me cōtentay, attendant l'occasion de leur pouuoir montrer par effect autre chose qu'ils n'eussent peu esperer de moy.

---

greater satisfaction, and that they could see that I had no other intention than to make war ; for we had with us only arms and not merchandise for barter, as they had been led to understand, and that my only desire was to perform what I had promised them. I told them that, had I known what evil reports would be made to them, I should have held those making such reports for greater enemies than their own enemies.[1] They told me they did not believe such stories, and that indeed they had never listened to them. Yet the contrary was the case ; for certain Indians had told it to our Indians. I said no more, awaiting an opportunity of showing them by results more than they could expect from me.

[1] The Iroquois.

Retour à Quebecq, & depuis continuation auec les sauuages iusques au saut de la riuiere des Yroquois. p. 211.

CHAP. VIII.

LE lendemain nous partismes tous ensemble, pour aller à nostre habitation, où ils se resiouirent quelques 5. ou 6. iours, qui se passerent en dances & festins, pour le desir qu'ils auoient que nous fussions à la guerre.

Le Pont vint aussitost de Tadoussac auec deux petites barques plaines d'hommes, suiuant vne lettre où ie le priois de venir le plus promptement qu'il luy seroit possible.

Les sauuages le voyant arriuer se resiouirent encores plus que deuant, d'autant que ie leur dis qu'il me dōnoit de ses gens pour les assister, & que peut estre nous yrions ensemble.

Return to Quebec, and afterwards continuation of our journey with the Indians as far as the Rapids in the river of the Iroquois.

CHAPTER VIII

ON the following day we all set out together for our settlement, where they enjoyed themselves for about five or six days, which time was spent in dancing and feasting, on account of their desire that we should go on the war-path.

Pont-Gravé soon came from Tadoussac with two small pinnaces filled with men, in response to a letter in which I begged him to come as promptly as he could.

The Indians seeing him arrive rejoiced even more than before; for I told them that he was giving me some of his men to assist them; and that we might perhaps all go together.

Le 28. du mois[1] nous esquipasmes des barques pour assister ces sauuages : le Pont se mit dans l'vne & moy dans l'autre, & partismes tous ensemble. Le premier Iuin[2] arriuasmes à saincte Croix, distãt de Quebecq de 15. lieues, où estãt, nous aduisames ensemble, le Pont & moy, que pour certaines consideratiõs ie m'en yrois auec les sauuages, & luy à nostre habitation & à Tadoussac. La resolution estant prise, i'em- p. 212. barqué dans ma chalouppe tout ce qui estoit necessaire auec neuf hommes, des Marais, & la Routte nostre pilotte, & moy.

Ie party de saincte Croix, le 3. de Iuin[2] auec tous les sauuages, & passames par les trois riuieres,[3] qui est vn fort beau pays, remply de quantité de beaux arbres. De ce lieu à saincte Croix y a 15. lieues. A l'ẽtree d'icelle riuiere[3] y a six isles, trois desquelles sont fort petites, & les autres de quelque 15. à 1600. pas de long, qui sont fort plaisantes à

On the twenty-eighth of the month[1] we fitted out the shallops for the purpose of assisting these natives. Pont-Gravé got into one, and I into another, and we all set off together. On the first of June[2] we arrived at Ste. Croix, distant from Quebec fifteen leagues. There we decided, Pont-Gravé and I, that for certain reasons, I should go along with the Indians and that he should return to our settlement and to Tadoussac. This decision having been reached, I put aboard my shallop all that was needed, with nine men in addition to Des Marais, La Routte, our pilot, and myself.

On the third of June,[2] in company with all the Indians, I left Ste. Croix and we passed the Three Rivers,[3] which is a very beautiful country, covered with large numbers of fine trees. From this place to Ste. Croix there are fifteen leagues. At the mouth of that river[3] there are six islands, three of which are very small, and the others about 1500 to 1600 yards long, and in appearance they are very pretty. Near lake

---

[1] June 28.

[2] *Sic pro* July.

[3] St. Maurice. See Vol. I, 136, note 1, for the islands.

voir. Et proches du lac sainct Pierre, faisant quelque deux lieues dās la riuiere y a vn petit saut d'eau, qui n'est pas beaucoup dificile à passer. Ce lieu est par la hauteur de 46. degrez quelques minuttes moins de latitude. Les sauuages du pays nous dōnerēt à entēdre, qu'à quelques iournees il y a vn lac par où passe la riuiere,[1] qui a dix iournees, & puis on passe quelques sauts, & aprés encore trois ou quatre autres lacs de 5. où 6. iournees : & estās paruenus au bout, ils font 4. ou 5. lieues par terre, & entrēt de rechef dās vn autre lac, où le Sacqué[a] prēd la meilleure part de sa source. Les sauuages viēnēt dudit lac à Tadoussac. Les trois riuieres[1] vont 40. iournees des sauuages : & disent qu'au bout d'icelle riuiere il y a des peuples qui sont grāds chasseurs, n'ayās de demeure arrestee, & qu'ils voyēt la mer du Nort en moins de six iournees. Ce peu de terre que i'ay veu est sablonneuse, p. 213. assez esleuee en costaux, chargee de quantité de pins & sapins, sur le bort de la riuiere, mais entrant dans la terre quelque

[a] Sans doute pour *Sacqné*.

St. Peter, about two leagues up the river there is a small rapid which is not very difficult to pass. This place is latitude 46°, less a few minutes. The savages of the region gave us to understand that some days' journey [up this river], there is a lake of ten days' journey through which flows the river.[1] And then they pass some rapids, and then three or four other lakes of five or six days' journey. And having arrived at the end of these, they go by land four or five leagues and again enter another lake whence the Saguenay receives most of its waters. The Indians come from this lake to Tadoussac. The Three Rivers[1] extend inland forty days' journey from the Northern Sea. The small extent of country I have seen is sandy, rather hilly, and thickly covered with pine and spruce on the river banks :

[1] The St. Maurice.

quart de lieue, les bois y sont tresbeaux & clairs, & le pays vny.

Continuant nostre routte iusques à l'entree du lac sainct Pierre,[1] qui est vn pays fort plaisant & vny, & trauersant le lac à 2. 3. & 4. brasses d'eau, lequel peut contenir de long quelque 8. lieues, & de large 4.[a] Du costé du Nort nous vismes vne riuiere qui est fort aggreable, qui va dās les terres quelques 20. lieues, & l'ay nōmée saincte Suzāne[2]: & du costé du Su, il y en a deux, l'vne appelee la riuiere du Pont,[3] & l'autre de Gennes,[4] qui sont tresbelles & en beau & bon pays. L'eau est presque dormāte dans le lac, qui est fort poissonneux. Du costé du Nort, il parroist des terres à quelque douze ou quinze lieues du lac, qui sont vn peu mōtueuses. L'ayāt trauersé, nous passames par vn grand nombre

[a] Il faut évidemment mettre une virgule après le point et continuer la phrase.

---

but inland, a quarter of a league or so, the forest is very beautiful and open, and the land level.

We continued our journey through a very beautiful and level region, as far as the entrance to lake St. Peter,[1] which is some eight leagues long and four wide, and sailing through it, we found two, three and four fathoms of water. On the north side we saw a very beautiful river which extends inland some twenty leagues and I named it Ste. Suzanne.[2] On the south side are two rivers, one called Du Pont [3] and the other Gennes.[4] These are very beautiful and in a fine, rich region. The water of the lake is almost still and it is full of fish. On the north side, some twelve or fifteen leagues from the lake, there seems to be a somewhat hilly region. Having passed through the lake we made our way among

---

[1] Lake St. Peter is twenty miles long and from eight to nine wide.

[2] Rivière du Loup.

[3] The Nicolet river.

[4] Probably the Yamaska.

d'isles, qui sont de plusieurs grandeurs,[1] où il y a quantité de noyers & vignes, & de belles prayries auec force gibier & animaux sauuages, qui vōt de la grād terre ausdites isles. La pescherie du poisson y est plus abondante qu'en aucun autre lieu de la riuiere qu'eussions veu. De ces isles fusmes à l'entree de la riuiere des Yroquois,[2] où nous seiournasmes deux iours & nous rafraichismes de bonnes venaisons, oiseaux, p. 214. & poissons, que nous dōnoiēt les sauuages, & où il s'esmeut entre eux quelque different sur le subiect de la guerre, qui fut occasion qu'il n'y en eut qu'vne partie qui se resolurent de venir auec moy, & les autres s'en retournerēt en leur pays auec leurs femmes & marchandises qu'ils auoient traictées.

Partant de ceste entree de riuiere[2] (qui a quelque 4. à 500. pas de large, & qui est fort belle, courant au Su)[a] nous arriuasmes à vn lieu qui est par la hauteur de 45. degrez de

[a] Ne faudrait-il pas fermer la parenthèse après *belle* ?

---

a large number of islands of various sizes[1] where there are many butternut trees and vines and beautiful meadows with much game—birds and beasts—which go from the mainland to these islands. More fish are caught there than in any other part of the river we had visited. From these islands we went to the mouth of the river of the Iroquois,[2] where we stayed two days and refreshed ourselves with choice game, birds, and fish which the Indians gave us. Here there broke out amongst them some difference of opinion regarding the war, the result of which was that only a part of them decided to come with me, whilst the rest went back to their own country with their wives and the goods they had bartered.

Setting out from the mouth of that river,[2] which is some four or five hundred yards wide and very beautiful, and proceeding southward we reached a place in latitude 45°,

[1] Raisin, Monk, Boat, Stone, Grace, Bear and Eagle islands at the head of lake St. Peter.

[2] The Richelieu.

latitude à 22. ou 23. lieues des trois riuieres. Toute ceste riuiere depuis son entree iusques au premier saut,[1] où il y a 15. lieues, est fort platte & enuironnee de bois, comme sont tous les autres lieux cy dessus nommez, & des mesmes especes. Il y a 9. ou 10. belles isles iusques au premier saut des Yroquois, lesquelles tiennēt quelque lieue, où lieue & demie, remplies de quantité de chesnes & noyers. La riuiere tient en des endroits prés de demie lieue de large, qui est fort pois[s]onneuse. Nous ne trouuasmes point moins de 4. pieds d'eau. L'entree du saut est vne maniere de lac,[2] où l'eau descend, qui contient quelque trois lieues de circuit, & y a quelques prairies où il n'y habite aucūs sauuages, pour le subiect des guerres. Il y p. 215. a fort peu d'eau au saut qui court d'vne grande vistesse, & quantité de rochers & cailloux, qui font que les sauuages ne les peuuent surmonter par eau : mais au retour ils les

twenty-two or twenty-three leagues from the Three Rivers. The whole of this river from its mouth to the first rapid,[1] a distance of fifteen leagues, is very level and bordered with woods, as are all the other places mentioned above, and with the same varieties of wood. There are nine or ten beautiful islands as far as the first rapid of the river of the Iroquois, and these are about a league or a league and a half long and covered with oaks and butternuts. The river is in places nearly half a league wide and full of fish. We did not find anywhere less than four feet of water. The approach to the rapid is a sort of lake [2] into which the water flows down, and it is about three leagues in circumference. Near by are meadows where no Indians live, by reason of the wars. At the rapids there is very little water, but it flows with great swiftness, and there are many rocks and boulders, so that the Indians cannot go up by water ; but on the way back

---

[1] The St. Louis rapids lie in about latitude 45° 30′.

[2] The Chambly basin.

descendēt fort bien. Tout cedict pays est fort vny, remply de forests, vignes & noyers. Aucuns Chrestiens n'estoiēt encores paruenus iusques en cedit lieu, que nous, qui eusmes assez de peine à monter la riuiere à la rame.

Aussitost que nous fusmes arriuez au saut,[1] des Marais, la Routte & moy, & cinq hommes fusmes à terre, voir si nous pourrions passer ce lieu, & fismes quelque lieue & demie sans en voir aucune apparence, sinon vne eau courante d'vne grandissime roideur, où d'vn costé & d'autre y auoit quantité de pierres, qui sont fort dangereuses & auec peu d'eau. Le saut peut contenir quelque 600. pas de large. Et voyant qu'il estoit impossible coupper les bois & faire vn chemin auec si peu d'hōmes que i'auois, ie me resolus auec le conseil d'vn chacū, de faire autre chose que ce que nous nous estiōs promis, d'autāt que les sauuages m'auoient asseuré que les chemins estoient aisez : mais nous trouuasmes le cōtraire, cōme i'ay

---

they run them very nicely. All this region is very level and full of forests, vines and butternut trees. No Christians but ourselves had ever penetrated to this place; and we had difficulty enough in getting up the river by rowing.

As soon as we reached the rapids,[1] Des Marais, La Routte and myself, with five men, went ashore to see whether we could pass this spot, and walked about a league and a half without seeing how this could be done. There was only the river running with great swiftness, and on either side many very dangerous stones, and little water. The rapid is perhaps six hundred yards wide. Seeing that it was impossible to cut down the trees and make a road with the few men I had, I resolved, by common consent, to do something different from what we had originally intended when we trusted to the assurances of the Indians that the way was easy, for, as I have stated, we found the contrary to be

[1] The St. Louis rapids at Chambly.

dit cy dessus, qui fut l'occasion que nous en retournasmes en nostre chalouppe, où i'auois laissé quelques hommes pour p. 216. la garder & donner à entendre aux sauuages quand ils seroient arriuez, que nous estions allez descouurir le long dudit saut.

Aprés auoir veu ce que desirions de ce lieu, en nous en retournant nous fismes rencontre de quelques sauuages, qui venoient pour descouurir comme nous auions fait, qui nous dirent que tous leurs compagnons estoient arriuez à nostre chalouppe où nous les trouuasmes fort contans & satisfaits de ce que nous allions de la façon sans guide, sinon que par le raport de ce que plusieurs fois ils nous auoient fait.

Estant de retour, & voyant le peu d'apparence qu'il y auoit de passer le saut auec nostre chalouppe, cela m'affligea, & me donna beaucoup de desplaisir, de m'en retourner sans [a]voir veu vn grandicime lac, rēply de belles isles, & quantité de beau pays, qui borne le lac, où habitent leurs ennemis, comme ils me l'auoient figuré. Aprés auoir bien pensé en

---

true, and this was the reason of our return to our shallop, where I had left some men to guard it, and to inform the Indians, when they arrived, that we had gone to explore the banks alongside the rapid.

Having seen what we wished of this place we met on our way back with some Indians who were coming to examine it as we had done, and they told us that all their companions had arrived at our shallop. There we found them quite pleased and satisfied because we had gone in this way without a guide, trusting only to the reports which they had several times made to us.

Having returned and realizing the small prospect there was of getting our shallop past the rapid, I was distressed, and I was particularly sorry to return without seeing a very large lake, filled with beautiful islands, and a large, beautiful region near the lake, where they had represented to me their enemies lived. Having thought it over well, I decided

moy mesme, ie me resolus d'y aller pour accomplir ma promesse, & le desir que i'auois : & m'embarquay auec les sauuages dans leurs canots, & prins auec moy deux hommes de bonne volonté. Aprés auoir proposé mon dessein à des Marais, & autres de la chalouppe, ie priay ledit des Marais de s'en retourner en nostre habitation auec le reste de nos gens soubs p. 217. l'esperãce qu'en brief, auec la grace de Dieu, ie les reuerrois.

Aussitost ie fus parler aux Capitaines des sauuages & leur donnay à entendre comme ils nous auoient dit le contraire de ce que i'auois veu au saut, sçauoir, qu'il estoit hors nostre puissance d'y pouuoir passer auec la chalouppe : toutesfois que cela ne m'ẽpecheroit de les assister cõme ie leur auois promis. Ceste nouuelle les attrista fort & voulurent prendre vne autre resolution : mais ie leur dis & les y sollicitay, qu'ils eussent à continuer leur(s) premier dessin, & que moy troisieme, ie m'en irois à la guerre auec eux dans leurs canots pour leur monstrer que quant à moy ie ne voulois manquer de parole

---

to proceed thither in order to carry out my promise and also to fulfil my desire. And I embarked with the Indians in their canoes and took with me two men who were eager to go. Having laid my plan before Des Marais and the other men in the shallop, I requested Des Marais to return to our settlement with the rest of our men, in the hope that shortly, by God's grace, I should see them again.

Thereupon, I went and conferred with the Indian chiefs and made them understand how they had told us the contrary of what I had seen at the rapids, that is to say, that it was impossible to pass them with the shallop : yet that this would not prevent me from assisting them as I had promised. This information troubled them greatly, and they wished to change their plan, but I told them and urged upon them to persist in their first design, and that with two others I would go on the war-path with them in their canoes ; for I wished to show them that for myself I would not fail to

en leur endroit, bien que fusse seul, & que pour lors ie ne voulois forcer personne de mes compagnons de s'embarquer, sinon ceux qui en auroiēt la volonté, dont i'en auois trouué deux, que ie menerois auec moy.

Ils furent fort contens de ce que ie leur dis, & d'entendre la resolutiō que i'auois, me promettant tousiours de me faire voir choses belles.

keep my word to them, even if I went alone. And I told them that this time I should not force any of my companions to embark, and should take with me only two whom I had found eager to go.

They were quite satisfied with what I told them, and were glad to learn the resolution I had taken, persisting in their promise to show me fine things.

Partement du saut de la riuiere des Yroquois. Description d'vn grand lac. De la rencontre des ennemis que nous fismes aud. lac, & de la façon & conduite qu'ils vsent en allant attacquer les Yroquois. p. 218.

CHAP. IX.

IE party donc dudit saut de la riuiere des Yroquois, le 2. Iuillet.[1] Tous les sauuages commencerent à apporter leurs canots, armes & bagages par terre quelque demie lieue, pour passer l'impetuosité & la force du saut, ce qui fut promptement fait.

Aussitost ils les mirent tous en l'eau, & deux hommes en chacun, auec leur bagage, & firent aller vn des hōmes de chasque canot, par terre quelque trois lieues, que peut cōtenir ledit saut, mais non si impetueux comme à l'entree, sinon en quelques endroits de rochers qui barrent la riuiere, qui n'est

Departure from the Rapids of the river of the Iroquois. Description of a great lake. Our meeting with the enemy at the aforesaid lake and of the manner in which our Indians attack the Iroquois.

CHAPTER IX

I SET out then from the rapid of the river of the Iroquois on the second of July.[1] All the Indians began to carry their canoes, arms and baggage about half a league by land, to avoid the swiftness and force of the rapid. This they soon accomplished.

Then they put all the canoes into the water and two men with their baggage into each; but they made one of the men of each canoe go by land some three leagues which is about the length of the rapids, but the water is here less impetuous than at the entrance, except in certain places

---

[1] Probably July 12. See p. 73 *supra*.

pas plus large [que] de 3. à 400. pas. Aprés que nous eusmes passé le saut, qui ne fut sans peine, tous les sauuages qui estoient allez par terre, par vn chemin assez beau & pays vny, bien qu'il y aye quantité de bois, se rembarquerent dans leurs canots. Les hommes que i'auois furent aussi par terre, & moy par eau, dedans vn canot. Ils firent reueue de tous leurs gens, & se trouua vingt quatre canots, où il y auoit p. 219. soixante hommes. Aprés auoir fait leur reueuë, nous continuasmes le chemin iusques à vne isle[1] qui tient trois lieues de long, remplye des plus beaux pins que i'eusse iamais veu. Ils firent la chasse & y prindrent quelques bestes sauuages. Passant plus outre enuiron trois lieues de là, nous y logeasmes pour prendre le repos la nuit ensuiuant.

Incontinent vn chacun d'eux commença, l'vn à coupper du bois, les autres à prendre des escorces d'arbre pour couurir leurs cabānes, pour se mettre à couuert : les autres à abbatre

---

where rocks block the river, which is only some three or four hundred yards wide. After we had passed the rapids, which was not without difficulty, all the Indians who had gone overland, by a rather pleasant path through level country, although there were many trees, again got into their canoes. The men whom I had with me also went by land, but I went by water in a canoe. The Indians held a review of all their people and there were sixty men in twenty-four canoes. After holding the review we kept on our way as far as an island,[1] three leagues long, which was covered with the most beautiful pines I had ever seen. There the Indians hunted and took some game. Continuing some three leagues farther, we encamped to take rest during the following night.

Immediately each began, some to cut down trees, others to strip bark from the trees to cover their wigwams in which to take shelter, others to fell big trees for a barricade on

[1] Ste. Theresa island.

de gros arbres pour se barricader sur le bort de la riuiere au tour de leurs cabannes, ce qu'ils sçauent si promptement faire, qu'en moins de deux heures, cinq cens de leurs ennemis auroient bien de la peine à les forcer, sans qu'ils en fissent beaucoup mourir. Ils ne barricadent point le costé de la riuiere où sont leurs canots arrengez, pour s'embarquer si l'occasion le requeroit. Aprés qu'ils furent logez, ils enuoyerent trois canots auec neuf bons hommes, comme est leur coustume, à tous leurs logemens, pour descouurir deux ou trois lieues s'ils n'apperceuront rien, qui aprés se retirent. Toute la nuit ils se reposent sur la descouuerture des auantcoureurs, qui est vne tresmauuaise coustume en eux : car quelque fois ils sont surpris de leurs ennemis en dormant, qui P. 220.
les assomment, sans qu'ils ayēt le loisir de se mettre sur pieds pour leur defendre.[a] Recognoissant cela ie leur remonstrois la faute qu'ils faisoient, & qu'ils deuoient veiller, comme ils nous auoiēt veu faire toutes les nuits, & auoir des hommes

[a] Il faut sans doute lire *pour leur defense*, ou bien *pour se defendre*.

---

the bank of the river round their wigwams. They know how to do this so quickly that after less than two hours' work, five hundred of their enemies would have had difficulty in driving them out, without losing many men. They do not barricade the river bank where their boats are drawn up, in order to embark in case of need. After their wigwams had been set up, according to their custom each time they camp, they sent three canoes with nine good men, to reconnoitre two or three leagues ahead, whether they could perceive anything; and afterwards these retired. All night long they rely upon the explorations of these scouts, and it is a very bad custom; for sometimes they are surprised in their sleep by their enemies, who club them before they have time to rise and defend themselves. Realizing this, I pointed out to them the mistake they were making and said that they ought to keep watch as they had seen us do

aux agguets, pour escouter & voir s'ils n'apperceuroient rien ; & ne point viure de la façon comme bestes. Ils me dirent qu'ils ne pouuoient veiller, & qu'ils trauailloient assez de iour à la chasse : d'autant que quād ils vont en guerre ils diuisent leurs troupes en trois, sçauoir, vne partie pour la chasse separee en plusieurs endroits : vne autre pour faire le gros, qui sont tousiours sur leurs armes ; & l'autre partie en auant-coureurs, pour descouurir le long des riuieres, s'ils ne verront point quelque marque ou signal par ou ayent passé leurs ennemis, ou leurs amis : ce qu'ils cognoissent par de certaines marques que les chefs se donnent d'vne nation à l'autre, qui ne sont tousiours semblables, s'aduertissās de tēps en temps quād ils en changēt ; & par ce moyen ils recognoissent si sont amis ou ennemis qui ont passé. Les chasseurs ne chassent iamais de l'aduant du gros, ny des auant-coureurs, pour ne donner d'allarmes ny de desordre, mais sur la retraicte &

---

every night, and have men posted to listen and see whether they might perceive anything, and not live as they were doing like silly creatures. They told me that they could not stay awake, and that they worked enough during the day when hunting. Besides when they go to war they divide their men into three troops, that is, one troop for hunting, scattered in various directions, another troop which forms the bulk of their men is always under arms, and the other troop of scouts to reconnoitre along the rivers and see whether there is any mark or sign to show where their enemies or their friends have gone. This they know by certain marks by which the chiefs of one nation designate those of another, notifying one another from time to time of any variations of these. In this way they recognise whether enemies or friends have passed that way. The hunters never hunt in advance of the main body, nor of the scouts, in order not to give alarm or to cause confusion, but only when these have

du costé qu'ils n'aprehendent leurs ennemis : & continuent p. 221. ainsi iusques à ce qu'ils soient à deux ou trois iournees de leurs ennemis, qu'ils vont de nuit à la desrobée, tous en corps, horsmis les coureurs, & le iour se retirent dans le fort des bois, où ils reposent, sans s'esgarer ny mener bruit, ny faire aucun feu, afin de n'estre apperceuz, si par fortune leurs ennemis passoiēt ; ny pour ce qui est de leur mãger durant ce temps. Ils ne font du feu que pour petuner, qui est si peu que rien. Ils mangent de la farine de bled d'Inde cuite, qu'ils d'estrempēt[a] auec de l'eau, comme bouillie. Ils conseruent ces farines pour leur necessité, & quand ils sont proches de leurs ennemis, ou quand ils font retraite aprés leurs charges, qu'ils ne s'amusent à chasser, se retirant promptement.

A tous leurs logemens ils ont leur Pilotois ou Ostemoy (qui sont manieres de gens, qui font les deuins, en qui ces peuples ont creance,)[1] lequel fait vne cabanne, entouree de

[a] Lire *destrempent.*

---

retired and in a direction from which they do not expect the enemy. They go on in this way until they are within two or three days' march of their enemy, when they proceed stealthily by night, all in a body, except the scouts. In the day time they retire into the thick of the woods, where they rest without any straggling, or making a noise, or making a fire even for the purpose of cooking. And this they do so as not to be noticed, if by chance their enemy should pass that way. The only light they make is for the purpose of smoking which is almost nothing. They eat baked Indian meal, steeped in water, which becomes like porridge. They keep these meal cakes for their needs, when they are near the enemy or when they are retiring after an attack ; for then they do not waste time in hunting but retire quickly.

Each time they encamp they have their *Pilotois* or *Ostemoy* who are people who play the part of wizards, in whom these tribes have confidence.[1] One of these wizards will set up a

[1] See Vol. I, 117.

petis bois, & la couure de sa robbe : Aprés qu'elle est faitte, il se met dedans en sorte qu'on ne le voit en aucune façon, puis prend vn des piliers de sa cabanne & la fait bransler, marmotant certaines paroles entre ses dēs, par lesquelles il dit qu'il inuoque le Diable, & qu'il s'apparoist à luy en p. 222. forme de pierre, & luy dit s'ils trouueront leurs ennemis, & s'ils en tueront beaucoup. Ce Pilotois est prosterné en terre, sans remuer, ne faisant que parler au diable, & puis aussitost se leue sur les pieds, en parlant & se tourmentant d'vne telle façon, qu'il est tout en eau, bien qu'il soit nud. Tout le peuple est autour de la cabanne assis sur leur cul comme des singes. Ils me disoient souuent que le branlement que ie voyois de la cabanne, estoit le Diable qui la faisoit mouuoir, & non celuy qui estoit dedans, bien que ie veisse le contraire : car c'estoit, comme i'ay dit cy dessus, le Pilotois qui prenoit vn des bastons de sa cabanne, & la faisoit ainsi mouuoir. Ils me dirent aussi que ie verrois

tent, surround it with small trees, and cover it with his beaver-skin. When it is made, he gets inside so that he is completely hidden ; then he seizes one of the poles of his tent and shakes it whilst he mumbles between his teeth certain words, with which he declares he is invoking the devil, who appears to him in the form of a stone and tells him whether his friends will come upon their enemies and kill many of them. This *Pilotois* will lie flat on the ground, without moving, merely speaking to the devil, and suddenly he will rise to his feet, speaking and writhing so that he is all in a perspiration, although stark naked. The whole tribe will be about the tent sitting on their buttocks like monkeys. They often told me that the shaking of the tent which I saw, was caused by the devil and not by the man inside, although I saw the contrary ; for, as I have said above, it was the *Pilotois* who would seize one of the poles of the tent, and make it move in this way. They told me also that I should

sortir du feu par le haut : ce que ie ne vey point. Ces drosles cōtrefont aussi leur voix grosse & claire, parlant en langage inconneu aux autres sauuages. Et quand ils la representent cassee, ils croyent que c'est le Diable qui parle, & qui dit ce qui doit arriuer en leur guerre, & ce qu'il faut qu'ils facent.

Neantmoins tous ces garniments qui font les deuins, de cent paroles n'en disent pas deux veritables, & vont abusans ces pauures gens, comme il y en a assez parmy le monde, pour tirer quelque denree du peuple, ainsi que font ces galants. Ie leur remonstrois souuent que tout ce qu'ils faisoient n'estoit que folie, & qu'ils ne deuoient y adiouster p. 223. foy.

Or aprés qu'ils ont sçeu de leurs deuins ce qu'il leur doit succeder, les chefs prennent des bastons de la longueur d'vn pied autant en nombre qu'ils sont, & signallent par d'autres vn peu plus grands, leurs chefs : Puis vont dans le

---

see fire coming out of the top, but I never saw any. These scamps also counterfeit a loud, distinct voice, and speak a language unknown to the other Indians. And when they speak in an old man's voice, the rest think that the devil is speaking, and is telling them what is going to happen in their war, and what they must do.

Yet out of a hundred words all these scoundrels, who pretend to be wizards, do not speak two that are true, and go on deceiving these poor people to get things from them, as do many others in this world who resemble these gentry. I often pointed out to them that what they did was pure folly, and that they ought not to believe in such things.

Having learned from their wizards what is to happen to them, the chiefs take sticks a foot long, one for each man, and indicate by others somewhat longer, their leaders. Then they go into the wood, and level off a place five or six feet

bois & esplanudēt [a] vne place de 5. ou 6. pieds en quarre,[b] où le chef, comme sergent maior, met par ordre tous ces bastons comme bon luy semble : puis appelle tous ses compagnons, qui viennent tous armez, & leur monstre le rang & ordre qu'ils deuront tenir lors qu'ils se battront auec leurs ennemis : ce que tous ces sauuages regardent attentiuement, remarquāt la figure que leur chef a faite auec ces bastons : & aprés se retirent de là, & commencent de se mettre en ordre, ainsi qu'ils ont veu lesdicts bastons : puis se meslent les vns parmy les autres, & retournent de rechef en leur ordre, continuant deux ou trois fois, & à tous leurs logemens sans qu'il soit besoin de sergent pour leur faire tenir leurs rangs, qu'ils sçauent fort bien garder, sans se mettre en confusion. Voila la reigle qu'ils tiennent à leur guerre.

Nous partismes le lendemain, continuāt nostre chemin

[a] Le texte de 1632 porte *esplanadent*. *Cf.* l'espagnol *esplanar*.
[b] Lire *quarré* = carré.

---

square, where the headman, as sergeant-major, arranges all these sticks as to him seems best. Then he calls all his companions, who approach fully armed, and he shows them the rank and order which they are to observe when they fight with the enemy. This all these Indians regard attentively, and notice the figure made with these sticks by their chief. And afterwards they retire from that place and begin to arrange themselves in the order in which they have seen these sticks. Then they mix themselves up and again put themselves in proper order, repeating this two or three times, and go back to their camp, without any need of a sergeant to make them keep their ranks, which they are quite able to maintain without getting into confusion. Such is the method they observe on the war-path.

We departed on the following day, pursuing our way up dans la riuiere iusques à l'entree du lac.[1] En icelle y a nombre de belles isles, qui sont basses rēplies de tres-beaux bois & prairies, où il y a quātité de gibier & chasse d'animaux, P. 224. comme Cerfs, Daims, Faons, Cheureuls, Ours, & autres sortes d'animaux qui viennent de la grand terre ausdictes isles. Nous y en prismes quantité. Il y a aussi grand nombre de Castors, tant en la riuiere qu'en plusieurs autres petites qui viennent tomber dans icelle. Ces lieux ne sont habitez d'aucuns sauuages, bien qu'ils soient plaisans, pour le subiect de leurs guerres, & se retirent des riuieres le plus qu'ils peuuent au profont des terres, afin de n'estre si tost surprins.

Le lendemain entrasmes dans le lac, qui est de grande estādue comme de 80. ou 100. lieues,[2] où i'y vis quatre belles isles,[3] contenant 10. 12. & 15. lieues de long, qui autres fois

---

the river as far as the entrance to the lake.[1] In it are many beautiful low islands covered with very fine woods and meadows with much wild fowl and animals to hunt, such as stags, fallow deer, fawns, roebucks, bears, and other kinds of animals which come from the mainland to these islands. We caught there a great many of them. There are also many beavers, both in that river and in several small streams which fall into it. This region although pleasant is not inhabited by Indians, on account of their wars; for they withdraw from the rivers as far as they can into the interior, in order not to be easily surprised.

On the following day we entered the lake which is some 80 or 100 leagues in length,[2] in which I saw four beautiful islands [3] about ten, twelve and fifteen leagues in length,

[1] Lake Champlain.

[2] Lake Champlain is some 125 miles in length.

[3] Most probably Contrecœur (Long island and Grand island), La Motte and Valcour islands. The author makes them longer than they really are. (Laverdière, *op. cit.* III, 189.)

ont esté habitees par les sauuages, comme aussi la riuiere des Yroquois : mais elles ont esté abandonnees depuis qu'ils ont eu guerre les vns contre les autres : aussi y a il plusieurs riuieres qui viennēt tomber dedās le lac, enuironnees de nombre de beaux arbres, de mesmes especes que nous auons en France, auec force(s) vignes plus belles qu'en aucun lieu que i'eusse veu : force chastagners, & n'en auois encores point veu que dessus le bort de ce lac, où il y a grande abondance de poisson de plusieurs especes : Entre autres p. 225. y en a vn, appelé des sauuages du pays *Chaousarou*,[1] qui est de plusieurs lōgueurs : mais les plus grands cōtiennent, à ce que m'ont dict ces peuples, 8. à 10. pieds. I'en ay veu qui en contenoyent 5. qui estoient de la grosseur de la cuisse, & auoient la teste grosse comme les deux points,[a] auec vn bec de deux pieds & demy de long, & à double rang de dents fort agues & dangereuses. Il a toute la forme du corps

[a] A lire *poings*.

---

which, like the Iroquois river, were formerly inhabited by Indians : but have been abandoned, since they have been at war with one another. There are also several rivers flowing into the lake, on whose banks are many fine trees of the same varieties we have in France, with many of the finest vines I had seen anywhere. There are many chestnut trees which I had only seen on the shore of this lake, in which there is also a great abundance of many species of fish. Amongst others there is one called by the natives *Chaousarou*,[1] which is of various lengths ; but the largest of them, as these tribes have told me, are from eight to ten feet long. I have seen some five feet long, which were as big as my thigh, and had a head as large as my two fists, with a snout two feet and a half long, and a double row of very sharp, dangerous teeth. Its body has a good deal the shape of the

[1] Probably the garfish.

tirant au brochet, mais il est armé d'escailles si fortes qu'vn coup de poignard ne les sçauroit percer, & de couleur de gris argenté. Il a aussi l'extremité du bec comme vn cochon. Ce poisson fait la guerre à tous les autres qui sont dans ces lacs, & riuieres : & a vne industrie merueilleuse, à ce que m'ont asseuré ces peuples, qui est, quand il veut prendre quelques oyseaux, il va dedās des ioncs ou roseaux, qui sont sur les riues du lac en plusieurs endroits, & met le bec hors l'eau sans se bouger : de façon que lors que les oiseaux viennent se reposer sur le bec, pensans que ce soit vn tronc de bois, il est si subtil, que serrant le bec qu'il tient entr'ouuert, ils les tire par les pieds soubs l'eau. Les sauuages m'en donnerent vne teste, dont ils font grand estat, disans que lors qu'ils ont mal à la teste, ils se seignent auec les dents de ce poisson à l'endroit de la douleur qui se passe soudain.

Continuant nostre route dans ce lac du costé de p. 226.

pike; but it is protected by scales of a silvery gray colour and so strong that a dagger could not pierce them. The end of its snout is like a pig's. This fish makes war on all the other fish which are in these lakes and rivers. And, according to what these tribes have told me, it shows marvellous ingenuity in that, when it wishes to catch birds, it goes in amongst the rushes or reeds which lie along the shores of the lake in several places, and puts its snout out of the water without moving. The result is that when the birds come and light on its snout, mistaking it for a stump of wood, the fish is so cunning that, shutting its half-open mouth, it pulls them by their feet under the water. The natives gave me the head of one of them, a thing they prize highly, saying that when they have a headache, they bleed themselves with the teeth of this fish at the spot where the pain is and it eases them at once.

Continuing our way along this lake in a westerly direction l'Occident, considerant le pays, ie veis du costé de l'Orient de fort hautes montagnes, où sur le sommet y auoit de la neige. Ie m'enquis aux sauuages si ces lieux estoient habitez, ils me dirent que ouy, & que c'estoient Yroquois, & qu'en ces lieux y auoit de belles vallees, & campagnes fertiles en bleds, comme i'en ay mangé audit pays, auec infinité d'autres fruits : & que le lac alloit proche des montagnes, qui pouuoient estre esloignees de nous, à mō iugemēt, de vingt cinq[a] lieuës. I'en veis au midy d'autres qui n'estoient moins hautes que les premieres, horsmis qu'il n'y auoit point de neige. Les sauuages me dirent que c'estoit où nous deuions aller trouuer leurs ennemis, & qu'elles estoient fort peuplees & qu'il falloit passer par vn saut d'eau[1] que ie vis depuis : & de là entrer dans vn autre lac[2] qui contient quelque 9. ou 10. lieuës de long, & qu'estāt paruenus au bout d'iceluy, il falloit faire quelque deux lieuës de chemin

[a] L'édition de 1632 porte *quinze*.

---

and viewing the country, I saw towards the east very high mountains on the tops of which there was snow. I enquired of the natives whether these parts were inhabited. They said they were, and by the Iroquois, and that in those parts there were beautiful valleys and fields rich in corn such as I have eaten in that country, along with other products in abundance. And they said that the lake went close to the mountains, which, as I judged, might be some twenty-five leagues away from us. Towards the south I saw others which were not less lofty than the first-mentioned, but there was no snow on these. The Indians told me that it was there that we were to meet their enemies, that the mountains were thickly populated, and that we had to pass a rapid[1] which I saw afterwards. Thence they said we had to enter another lake[2] which is some nine or ten leagues in length, and that on reaching the end of it we had to go by land some two

---

[1] Ticonderoga.

[2] Lake George.

par terre, & passer vne riuiere,[1] qui va tomber en la coste de Norembegue,[2] tenant à celle de la Floride, & qu'ils n'estoient que deux iours à y aller auec leurs canots, comme ie l'ay sçeu depuis par quelques prisonniers que nous prismes, qui me discoururent fort particulieremēt de tout ce qu'ils en auoyent cognoissance, par le moien de quelques truchemens p. 227. Algoumequins, qui sçauoiēt la langue des Yroquois.

Or comme nous cōmençasmes à approcher à quelques deux ou trois iournees de la demeure de leurs ennemis, nous n'alliōs plus que la nuit, & le iour nous nous reposions, neantmoins ne laissoient de faire tousiours leurs superstitions accoustumees pour sçauoir ce qui leur pourroit succeder de leurs entreprises ; & souuent me venoient demander si i'auois songé, & auois veu leurs ennemis : Ie leur disois que non : Neantmoins ne laissois de leur donner du courage, & bonne esperance. La nuit venue nous nous mismes en chemin iusques au lendemain, que nous nous retirasmes

leagues and cross a river[1] which descends to the coast of Norumbega,[2] adjoining that of Florida. They could go there in their canoes in two days, as I learned afterwards from some prisoners we took, who conversed with me very particularly regarding all they knew, with the help of some Algonquin interpreters who knew the Iroquois language.

Now as we began to get within two or three days' journey of the home of their enemy, we proceeded only by night, and during the day we rested. Nevertheless, they kept up their usual superstitious ceremonies in order to know what was to happen to them in their undertakings, and often would come and ask me whether I had had dreams and had seen their enemies. I would tell them that I had not, but nevertheless continued to inspire them with courage and good hope. When night came on, we set off on our way until the next morning. Then we retired into the thick woods where we spent the rest

---

[1] The Hudson river.

[2] See Vol. I, 284, note 3.

dans le fort du bois, pour y passer le reste du iour. Sur les dix ou onze heures, aprés m'estre quelque peu proumené au tour de nostre logement, ie fus me reposer ; & en dormant, ie sōg[e]ay que ie voyois les Yroquois nos ennemis, dedans le lac, proche d'vne montaigne, qui se noyoient à nostre veue ; & les voulans secourir, nos sauuages alliez me disoient qu'il les falloit tous laisser mourir & qu'ils ne valoiēt rien. Estant esueillé, ils ne faillirent comme à l'acoustumee de me demander si i'auois songé quelque chose ; ie leur dis en effect ce que i'auois veu en songe : Cela leur apporta vne p. 228. telle creance qu'ils ne douterent plus de ce qui leur deuoit aduenir pour leur bien.

Le soir estant venu, nous nous embarquasmes en nos canots pour continuer nostre chemin, & comme nous allions fort doucement, & sans mener bruit, le 29. du mois,[1] nous fismes recontre des Yroquois sur les dix heures du soir au bout d'vn cap[2] qui aduance dans le lac du costé de l'occident,

---

of the day. Towards ten or eleven o'clock, after walking around our camp, I went to take a rest, and while asleep I dreamed that I saw in the lake near a mountain our enemies, the Iroquois, drowning before our eyes. I wanted to succour them, but our Indian allies said to me that we should let them all perish ; for they were bad men. When I awoke they did not fail to ask me as usual whether I had dreamed anything. I told them what I had seen in my dream. This gave them such confidence that they no longer had any doubt as to the good fortune awaiting them.

Evening having come, we embarked in our canoes in order to proceed on our way, and as we were paddling along very quietly, and without making any noise, about ten o'clock at night on the twenty-ninth of the month,[1] at the extremity of a cape[2] which projects into the lake on the west side, we

[1] July.

[2] Crown Point.

lesquels venoient à la guerre. Eux & nous commençasmes à ietter de grands cris, chacun se parãt de ses armes. Nous nous retirasmes vers l'eau, & les Yroquois mirent pied à terre, & arrangerent tous leurs canots les vns contre les autres, & commencerent à abbatre du bois auec des meschantes haches qu'ils gaignent quelquesfois à la guerre, & d'autres de pierre, & se barricaderent fort bien.

Aussi les nostres tindrent toute la nuit leurs canots arrangez les vns contre les autres attachez à des perches pour ne s'esgarer, & combattre tous ensemble s'il en estoit de besoin ; & estiõs à la portee d'vne flesche vers l'eau du costé de leurs barricades. Et cõme ils furent armez, & mis en ordre, ils enuoyerẽt deux canots separez de la trouppe, pour sçauoir de leurs ennemis s'ils vouloient combatre, lesquels respõdirent qu'ils ne desiroient autre chose : mais que pour l'heure, il n'y auoit pas beaucoup d'apparẽce, p. 229. & qu'il falloit attendre le iour pour se cognoistre : & qu'aussitost que le soleil se leueroit, ils nous liureroient le

---

met the Iroquois on the war-path. Both they and we began to utter loud shouts and each got his arms ready. We drew out into the lake and the Iroquois landed and arranged all their canoes near one another. Then they began to fell trees with the poor axes which they sometimes win in war, or with stone axes ; and they barricaded themselves well.

Our Indians all night long also kept their canoes close to one another and tied to poles in order not to get separated, but to fight all together in case of need. We were on the water within bowshot of their barricades. And when they were armed, and everything in order, they sent two canoes which they had separated from the rest, to learn from their enemies whether they wished to fight, and these replied that they had no other desire, but that for the moment nothing could be seen and that it was necessary to wait for daylight in order to distinguish one another. They said that as soon

cōbat : ce qui fut accordé par les nostres : & en attendant toute la nuit se passa en danses & chansons, tant d'vn costé, que d'autre, auec vne infinité d'iniures, & autres propos, comme, du peu de courage qu'ils auoient, auec le peu d'effet & resistance contre leurs armes, & que le iour venāt, ils le sētiroyēt à leur ruine. Les nostres aussi ne manquoient de repartie, leur disant qu'ils verroiēt des effets d'armes que iamais ils n'auoient veu, & tout plain d'autres discours, comme on a accoustumé à vn siege de ville. Aprés auoir bien chanté, dansé & parlementé les vns aux autres, le iour venu, mes compagnons & moy estions tousiours couuerts, de peur que les ennemis ne nous veissent, preparans nos armes le mieux qu'il nous estoit possible, estans toutesfois separez, chacun en vn des canots des sauuages montagnars. Aprés que nous fusmes armez d'armes legeres, nous prismes chacū vne arquebuse & descendismes à terre. Ie vey sortir les ennemis de leur barricade, qui estoient prés de 200.

---

as the sun should rise, they would attack us, and to this our Indians agreed. Meanwhile the whole night was spent in dances and songs on both sides, with many insults and other remarks, such as the lack of courage of our side, how little we could resist or do against them, and that when daylight came our people would learn all this to their ruin. Our side too was not lacking in retort, telling the enemy that they would see such deeds of arms as they had never seen, and a great deal of other talk, such as is usual at the siege of a city. Having sung, danced, and flung words at one another for some time, when daylight came, my companions and I were still hidden, lest the enemy should see us, getting our fire-arms ready as best we could, being however still separated, each in a canoe of the Montagnais Indians. After we were armed with light weapons, we took, each of us, an arquebus and went ashore. I saw the enemy come out of their barricade to the number

hommes forts & robustes à les voir, qui venoient au petit pas audeuant de nous, auec vne grauité & asseurance qui me contenta fort à la teste desquels y auoit trois chefs. Les p. 230. nostres aussi alloient en mesme ordre & me dirent que ceux qui auoient trois grands pennaches estoient les chefs, & qu'il n'y en auoit que ces trois, & qu'on les recognoissoit à ces plumes, qui estoient beaucoup plus grandes que celles de leurs compagnons, & que ie feisse ce que ie pourrois pour les tuer. Ie leur promis de faire ce qui seroit de ma puissance, & que i'estois bien fasché qu'ils ne me pouuoient bien entendre pour leur donner l'ordre & façon d'attaquer leurs ennemis, & que indubitablement nous les desferions tous; mais qu'il n'y auoit remede, que i'estois tres-aise de leur monstrer le courage & bonne volonté qui estoit en moy quand serions au combat.

Aussitost que fusmes à terre, ils commencerent à courir quelque deux cens pas vers leurs ennemis qui estoient de

---

of two hundred, in appearance strong, robust men. They came slowly to meet us with a gravity and calm which I admired; and at their head were three chiefs. Our Indians likewise advanced in similar order, and told me that those who had the three big plumes were the chiefs, and that there were only these three, whom you could recognize by these plumes, which were larger than those of their companions; and I was to do what I could to kill them. I promised them to do all in my power, and told them that I was very sorry they could not understand me, so that I might direct their method of attacking the enemy, all of whom undoubtedly we should thus defeat; but that there was no help for it, and that I was very glad to show them, as soon as the engagement began, the courage and readiness which were in me.

As soon as we landed, our Indians began to run some two hundred yards towards their enemies, who stood firm and had pied ferme, & n'auoient encores aperçeu mes compagnons, qui s'en allerent dans le bois auec quelques sauuages. Les nostres commencerent à m'appeller à grands cris : & pour me donner passage ils s'ouurirent en deux, & me mis à la P. 231. teste, marchant quelque 20. pas deuāt, iusqu'à ce que ie fusse à quelque 30. pas des ennemis, où aussitost ils m'aperceurent, & firent alte en me contemplant, & moy eux. Cōme ie les veis esbranler pour tirer sur nous, ie couchay mon arquebuse en iouë, & visay droit à vn des trois chefs, & de ce coup il en tomba deux par terre, & vn de leurs compagnons qui fut blessé, qui quelque temps apres en mourut. I'auois mis quatre balles dedans mon arquebuse. Comme les nostres virent ce coup si fauorable pour eux, ils commencerent à ietter de si grāds cris qu'on n'eust pas ouy tonner ; & cependant les flesches ne manquoyent de costé & d'autre. Les Yroquois furent fort estonnez, que si promptemēt deux hommes auoyent esté tuez, bien qu'ils

not yet noticed my white companions who went off into the woods with some Indians. Our Indians began to call to me with loud cries ; and to make way for me they divided into two groups, and put me ahead some twenty yards, and I marched on until I was within some thirty yards of the enemy, who as soon as they caught sight of me halted and gazed at me and I at them. When I saw them make a move to draw their bows upon us, I took aim with my arquebus and shot straight at one of the three chiefs, and with this shot two fell to the ground and one of their companions was wounded who died thereof a little later. I had put four bullets into my arquebus. As soon as our people saw this shot so favourable for them, they began to shout so loudly that one could not have heard it thunder, and meanwhile the arrows flew thick on both sides. The Iroquois were much astonished that two men should have been killed so quickly, although they were pro-

fussent armez d'armes tissues de fil de cotton, & de bois à l'espreuue de leurs flesches. Cela leur donna vne grande apprehension. Comme ie rechargeois, l'vn de mes compagnons tira vn coup de dedans le bois, qui les estonna derechef de telle façon, voyant leurs chefs morts, qu'ils perdirent courage, & se mirent en fuite, & abandonnerent le champ, & leur fort, s'enfuyans dedans le profond des bois, où les poursuiuans, i'en fis demeurer encores d'autres. Nos sauuages en tuerent aussi plusieurs, & en prindrent 10. ou 12. prisonniers : Le reste se sauua auec les blessez. Il y en eut des nostres 15. ou 16. de blessez de coups de flesches, qui furēt promptement gueris.

Apres que nous eusmes eu la victoire, ils s'amuserent p. 232. à prendre force bled d'Inde, & les farines des ennemis, & de leurs armes, qu'ils auoient laissees pour mieux courir. Apres auoir fait bonne chere, dansé & chanté, trois heures apres nous en retournasmes auec les prisonniers. Ce lieu, où

---

vided with shields made of cotton thread woven together and wood, which were proof against their arrows. This frightened them greatly. As I was reloading my arquebus, one of my companions fired a shot from within the woods, which astonished them again so much that, seeing their chiefs dead, they lost courage and took to flight, abandoning the field and their fort, and fleeing into the depth of the forest, whither I pursued them and laid low still more of them. Our Indians also killed several and took ten or twelve prisoners. The remainder fled with the wounded. Of our Indians fifteen or sixteen were wounded with arrows, but these were quickly healed.

After we had gained the victory, our Indians wasted time in taking a large quantity of Indian corn and meal belonging to the enemy, as well as their shields, which they had left behind, the better to run. Having feasted, danced, and sung, we three hours later set off for home with the prisoners. The se fit ceste charge est par les 43. degrez & quelques minutes de latitude, & fut nommé le lac de Champlain.

[PLANCHE (HORS TEXTE[a]) : DEFFAITE DES YROQUOIS AU LAC DE CHAMPLAIN].

Retour de la bataille & ce qui se passa par le chemin.

CHAP. X.

APRES auoir fait quelque 8. lieuës, sur le soir ils prindrent vn des prisonniers, à qui ils firēt vne harāgue des cruautez que luy & les siēs auoyent exercees en leur endroit, sans auoir eu aucun esgard, & qu'au semblable il deuoit se resoudre d'en receuoir autant, & luy commanderent de chanter s'il auoit du courage, ce qu'il fit, mais auec vn chant fort triste à ouyr.

p. 233. Cependant les nostres allumerent vn feu, & comme il fut bien embrasé ils prindrent chacun vn tizon, & faisoient

---

[a] La légende est donnée dans le texte.

---

place where this attack took place is in 43° and some minutes of latitude, and was named Lake Champlain.

[PLATE V]

Return from the battle and what took place on the way.

CHAPTER X

HAVING gone about eight leagues, the Indians, towards evening, took one of the prisoners to whom they made a harangue on the cruelties which he and his friends without any restraint had practised upon them, and that similarly he should resign himself to receive as much, and they ordered him to sing, if he had the heart. He did so, but it was a very sad song to hear.

Meanwhile our Indians kindled a fire, and when it was well lighted, each took a brand and burned this poor wretch brusler ce pauure miserable peu à peu pour luy faire souffrir plus de tourmens. Ils le laissoient quelques fois, luy iettãt de l'eau sur le dos : puis luy arracherẽt les ongles, & luy mirent du feu sur les extremitez des doigts & de son membre. Apres ils luy escorcherent le haut de la teste, & luy firent degoutter dessus certaine gomme toute chaude : puis luy percerẽt les bras prés des poignets, & auec des bastons tiroyent[a] les nerfs & les arrachoyent à force : & cõme ils voioyent qu'ils ne les pouuoyent auoir, ils les couppoyent. Ce pauure miserable iettoit des cris estranges, & me faisoit pitié de le voir traitter de la façon, toutesfois auec vne telle constance, qu'on eust dit quelquesfois qu'il ne sentoit presque point de mal. Ils me sollicitoyent fort de prendre du feu pour faire de mesme eux. Ie leur remonstrois que nous n'vsions point de ces cruautez, & que nous les faisions mourir tout d'vn coup, & que s'ils vouloyent que ie luy donnasse

---

[a] L'auteur se met ici à se servir de l'imparfait, qu'il repète plusieurs fois.

---

a little at a time in order to make him suffer the greater torment. Sometimes they would leave off, throwing water on his back. Then they tore out his nails and applied fire to the ends of his fingers and to his *membrum virile.* Afterwards they scalped him and caused a certain kind of gum to drip very hot upon the crown of his head. Then they pierced his arms near the wrists and with sticks pulled and tore out his sinews by main force, and when they saw they could not get them out, they cut them off. This poor wretch uttered strange cries, and I felt pity at seeing him treated in this way. Still he bore it so firmly that sometimes one would have said he felt scarcely any pain. They begged me repeatedly to take fire and do like them. I pointed out to them that we did not commit such cruelties, but that we killed people outright, and that if they wished me to shoot him with the

vn coup d'arquebuze, i'en serois content. Ils dirēt que non, & qu'il ne sentiroit point de mal. Ie m'en allay d'auec eux comme fasché de voir tant de cruautez qu'ils exercoiēt p. 234. sur ce corps. Comme ils virent que ie n'en estois contant, ils m'appelerent & me dirent que ie luy donnasse vn coup d'arquebuse : ce que ie fis, sans qu'il en vist rien ; & luy fis passer tous les tourmens qu'il deuoit souffrir, d'vn coup, plustost que de le voir tyranniser. Aprés qu'il fut mort ils ne se contenterent pas, ils luy ouurirent le ventre, & ietterent ses entrailles dedans le lac : aprés ils luy coupperent la teste, les bras & les iambes, qu'ils separerent d'vn costé & d'autre, & reseruerent la peau de la teste, qu'ils auoient escorchee, comme ils auoient fait de tous les autres qu'ils auoient tuez à la charge. Ils firent encores vne meschanceté, qui fut, de prendre le cœur qu'ils coupperent en plusieurs pieces & le donnerent à manger à vn sien frere, & autres de ses compagnons qui estoient prisonniers, lesquels le prindrent

arquebus, I should be glad to do so. They said no ; for he would not feel any pain. I went away from them as if angry at seeing them practise so much cruelty on his body. When they saw that I was not pleased, they called me back and told me to give him a shot with the arquebus. I did so, without his perceiving anything, and with one shot caused him to escape all the tortures he would have suffered rather than see him brutally treated. When he was dead, they were not satisfied ; they opened his body and threw his bowels into the lake. Afterwards they cut off his head, arms and legs, which they scattered about ; but they kept the scalp, which they had flayed, as they did with those of all the others whom they had killed in their attack. They did another awful thing, which was to cut his heart into several pieces and to give it to a brother of the dead man to eat and to others of his companions who were prisoners. These took it and put it into

& le mirent en leur bouche, mais ils ne le voulurent aualler : quelques sauuages Algoumequins, qui les auoient en garde le firent recracher à aucuns, & le ietterent dans l'eau. Voila comme ces peuples se gouuernẽt à l'endroit de ceux qu'ils prennent en guerre : & mieux vaudroit pour eux mourir en combatant, ou se faire tuer à la chaude,[a] comme il y en a beaucoup qui font, plustost que de tomber entre les mains de leurs ennemis. Aprés ceste execution faite, nous nous mismes en chemin pour nous en retourner auec le reste des prisonniers, qui alloient tousiours chantans, sans autre p. 235. esperance que celuy qui auoit esté ainsi mal traicté. Estans aux sauts de la riuiere des Yroquois[1] les Algoumequins s'en retournerẽt en leur pays, & aussi les Ochatequins[2] auec vne partie des prisonniers, fort contens de ce qui s'estoit passé en la guerre, & de ce que librement i'estois allé auec eux. Nous nous departismes dõc cõme cela, auec de grãdes protestations d'amitié, les vns & les autres, & me dirent[b] si ie

[a] Dans la chaleur du combat.

[b] Entendez : *me demandèrent.*

---

their mouths, but would not swallow it. Some of the Algonquin Indians who were guarding the prisoners made them spit it out and threw it into the water. That is how these people act with regard to those whom they capture in war. And it would be better for them to die fighting, and be killed at once, as many do, rather than to fall into the hands of their enemies. When this execution was over, we set out upon our return with the rest of the prisoners, who went along continually singing, without other expectation than to be tortured like him of whom we have spoken. When we arrived at the rapids of the river of the Iroquois,[1] the Algonquins returned into their own country and the Ochateguins[2] also with some of the prisoners, all much pleased at what had taken place in the war, and because I had gone with them willingly. So we all separated with great protestations of mutual friendship,

[1] See p. 78 *supra.*

[2] Hurons, see p. 68 *supra.*

ne desirois pas aller en leur pays pour les assister tousiours comme freres : ie leur promis.

Ie m'en reuins auec les Montagnets. Aprés m'estre informé des prisōniers de leurs pays, & de ce qu'il pouuoit y en auoir, nous ployames bagage pour nous en reuenir, ce qui fut auec telle diligence, que chacun iour nous faisions 25. & 30. lieues dans leursdicts canots, qui est l'ordinaire. Comme nous fusmes à l'entree de la riuiere des Yroquois,[1] il y eut quelques sauuages qui songerent que leurs ennemis les poursuiuoient : ce songe les fit aussitost leuer le siege, encores que celle nuit fut fort mauuaise à cause des vents & de la pluye qu'il faisoit ; & furent passer la nuit dedans de grands roseaux, qui sont dans le lac sainct Pierre, iusqu'au lendemain, pour la crainte qu'ils auoient de leurs ennemis. p. 236. Deux iours aprés arriuasmes à nostre habitation,[2] où ie leur fis donner du pain & quelques poix, & des patinostres, qu'ils

---

and they asked me if I would not go to their country, and aid them continually like a brother. I promised them I would.

I came back with the Montagnais. After I had questioned the prisoners regarding their country and its characteristics, we packed our baggage for our return. This we accomplished with such speed that every day we made twenty-five or thirty leagues in their canoes, which was their usual rate. When we reached the mouth of the river of the Iroquois[1] there were some of the Indians who dreamed that their enemies were pursuing them. This dream made them at once shift their camp, although the weather that night was bad on account of wind and rain ; and they went and spent the whole night in the high bulrushes which are in lake St. Peter, for fear of their enemies. Two days later we arrived at our settlement,[2] where I ordered bread and peas to be given to them ; and also some

[1] The Richelieu. [2] Quebec.

me demanderent pour parer la teste de leurs ennemis, qui les portent[a] pour faire des resiouissances à leur arriuee. Le lendemain ie feu auec eux dans leurs canots à Tadoussac, pour voir leurs ceremonies. Aprochans de la terre, ils prindrēt chacun vn baston, où au bout ils pēdirent les testes de leurs ennemis tués auec quelques patinostres, chantants les vns & les autres : & comme ils en furent prests,[b] les femmes se despouillerent toutes nues, & se ietterent en l'eau, allant au deuant des canots pour prendre les testes de leurs ennemis qui estoient au bout de longs bastons deuant leurs batteaux, pour aprés les pēdre à leur col comme si c'eust esté quelque chaine precieuse, & ainsi chanter & danser. Quelques iours aprés ils me firent present d'vne de ces testes, cōme chose biē precieuse, & d'vne paire d'armes de leurs ennemis, pour les conseruer, affin de les montrer au Roy : ce que ie leur promis pour leur faire plaisir.

---

[a] Probablement faute d'impression pour *qu'ils portent.* [b] A lire *prés.*

---

beads for which they asked me, to decorate the scalps of their enemies, which they carry in their festivities on returning home. On the following day I went with them in their canoes to Tadoussac to see their ceremonies. Approaching the shore each took a stick, on the end of which they hung the scalps of their slain enemies with some beads, singing meanwhile all together. And when all were ready, the women stripped themselves quite naked, and jumped into the water, swimming to the canoes to receive the scalps of their enemies which were at the end of long sticks in the bow of their canoes, in order later to hang them round their necks, as if they had been precious chains. And then they sang and danced. Some days afterwards they made me a present of one of these scalps as if it had been some very valuable thing, and of a pair of shields belonging to their enemies, for me to keep to show to the king. And to please them I promised to do so.

Quelques iours aprés ie fus à Quebecq, où il vint quelques sauuages Algoumequins, qui me firent entẽdre le desplaisir qu'ils auoiẽt de ne s'estre trouuez à la deffaite de leurs p. 237. ennemis, & me firent present de quelques fourrures, en consideration de ce que i'y auois esté & assisté leurs amis.

Quelques iours aprés qu'ils furent partis pour s'en aller en leur pays, distant de nostre habitatiō de 120. lieues, ie fus à Tadoussac voir si le Pont seroit de retour de Gaspé, où il auoit esté. Il n'y arriua que le lendemain, & me dit qu'il auoit deliberé de retourner en France. Nous resolusmes de laisser vn hōneste homme appelé le Capitaine Pierre Chauin, de Dieppe, pour commander à Quebecq, où il demeura iusques à ce que le sieur de Mons en eust ordonné.

Some days later I went to Quebec, whither came some Algonquins who expressed to me their regret at having missed the defeat of their enemies; and they presented me with some furs in consideration of the fact that I had been there and had helped their friends.

Some days after their departure for their own country, which was 120 leagues distant from our settlement, I went to Tadoussac to see whether Pont-Gravé had returned from Gaspé where he had gone. He arrived only on the following day, and told me he had decided to return to France. We determined to leave as commander at Quebec, a gentleman called Captain Pierre Chavin, of Dieppe, who was to remain there until the Sieur de Monts should give orders on this subject.

Retour en France, & ce qui s'y passa iusques au rembarquement.

CHAP. XI.

CESTE resolution prinse nous fusmes à Quebecq pour l'establir, & luy laisser toutes les choses requises & necessaires à vne habitation, auec quinze hommes. Toutes choses estant en estat nous en partismes le premier iour de Septembre pour aller à Tadoussac, faire appareiller nostre vaisseau, à fin de nous en reuenir en France.

Nous partismes donc de ce lieu le 5. du mois, & le 8. nous fusmes mouiller l'ancre à l'isle Percee.[1] p. 238.

Le ieudy dixiesme partismes de ce lieu, & le mardy ensuiuant 18.[2] du mois arriuasmes sur le grand banc.

Le 2. d'Octobre, nous eusmes la sonde. Le 8. mouillasmes

Return to France and what occurred up to the time of re-embarkation.

CHAPTER XI

THIS decision having been taken, we went to Quebec to install him and to furnish him with everything required and necessary for a settlement, along with fifteen men. When everything was in order we left there on the first day of September to go to Tadoussac to get our vessel ready, so that we might return to France.

We departed accordingly from that place on the fifth of the month and on the eighth we cast anchor at isle Percée.[1]

On Thursday the tenth we set sail from this place and on the Tuesday following, the eighteenth of the month,[2] we arrived on the Grand Bank.

On the second of October we were on soundings. On

[1] Off Chaleur bay. See p. 9 note 4 and Vol. I, 167, note 3.

[2] Tuesday was the fifteenth in 1609.

l'ancre au Conquet en basse Bretagne.[1] Le Samedy 10. du mois partismes de ce lieu, & arriuasmes à Honfleur le 13.[2]

Estans desembarqués, ie n'y fis pas long seiour que ie ne prinse la poste pour aller trouuer le sieur de Mons, qui estoit pour lors à Fontaine-belau où estoit sa Maiesté,[3] & luy representay fort particulieremēt tout ce qui c'estoit passé, tant en mon yuernement, que des nouuelles descouuertures, & l'esperance de ce qu'il y auoit à faire à l'aduenir touchant les promesses des sauuages appelez Ochateguins,[4] qui sont bons Yroquois. Les autres Yroquois leurs ennemis sont plus au midy. Les premiers entendent, & ne diferent pas beaucoup de langage aux peuples descouuerts de nouueau, & qui nous auoient esté incogneus cy deuant.

Aussitost ie fus trouuer sa Maiesté,[3] à qui ie fis le discours de mon voyage, à quoy il print plaisir & contentement.

---

the eighth we cast anchor at Le Conquet in Lower Brittany.[1] On Saturday the tenth of the month we sailed from that place and arrived at Honfleur on the thirteenth.[2]

Having disembarked, I did not stay there long before I took post to go to see the Sieur de Monts, who was then at Fontainebleau, where His Majesty[3] was living. And I informed him [Monts] in detail of all that had taken place both in my winter quarters and also in my new explorations. And I spoke of our prospects for the future in view of the promises of the natives called Ochateguins,[4] who are good Iroquois. The other Iroquois, who are their enemies, are farther south. The former understand and do not differ much in language from the tribes recently discovered, and who hitherto had been unknown to us.

I at once waited upon His Majesty,[3] to whom I told the story of my expedition wherein he took pleasure and satisfaction.

[1] On the Atlantic seaboard a few miles west of Brest.

[2] At the mouth of the Seine. See Vol. I, 91.

[3] Henri IV. Fontainebleau lies some fifty miles east of Paris.

[4] The Hurons.

I'auois vne ceinture faite de poils de porc-espic, qui estoit fort bien tissue, selon le pays, laquelle sa Maiesté eut pour aggreable, auec deux petits oiseaux gros cōme des p. 239.
merles, qui estoient incarnats,[1] & aussi la teste d'vn certain poisson qui fut prins dans le grand lac des Yroquois, qui auoit vn becq fort long auec deux ou trois rangees de dents fort aigues.[2] La figure de ce poisson est dans le grand lac de ma carte Geographique.[3]

Ayant fait auec sa Maiesté, le sieur de Mons se delibera d'aller à Rouen[4] trouuer ses associez les sieurs Collier & le Gēdre marchāds de Rouē, pour aduiser à ce qu'ils auoient à faire l'annee ensuiuant. Ils resolurent de continuer l'habitation, & paracheuer de descouurir dedans le grand fleuue S. Laurens, suiuant les promesses des Ochateguins,[5] à la charge qu'ō les assisteroit en leurs guerres cōme nous leur auiōs promis.

I had a belt of porcupine quills, very well woven, according to the fashion of the country, which His Majesty deigned to accept, along with two small birds of the size of blackbirds and of a scarlet colour.[1] I had also the head of a certain fish which was caught in the great Iroquois lake, having a very long snout with two or three rows of very sharp teeth.[2] The picture of this fish is in the great lake on my map.[3]

After the interview with His Majesty, the Sieur de Monts decided to go to Rouen[4] to see his partners, the Sieurs Collier and Le Gendre, merchants of Rouen, in order to consider what they were to do in the following year. They decided to continue the settlement, and in accordance with the promises of the Ochateguins [5] to complete the exploration of the region of the great river St. Lawrence, on condition we carried out the promise to assist them in their wars.

[1] The scarlet tanager. *Cf.* P. A. Taverner, *Birds of Eastern Canada*, 2nd edit., Ottawa, 1922, p. 192 and plate xxxv.

[2] The garfish. See p. 91.

[3] See Plate LXXXI, in the portfolio.

[4] The capital of Normandy.

[5] The Hurons.

Le Pont fut destiné pour aller à Tadoussac tant pour la traicte que pour faire quelque autre chose qui pourroit apporter de la commodité pour subuenir aux frais de la despence.

Et le sieur Lucas le Gendre de Rouen, l'vn des associez, ordonné pour auoir soin de faire tant l'achapt des marchandises que viures, & de la frette des vaisseaux, esquipages & autres choses necessaires pour le voyage.

Aprés ces choses resolues le sieur de Mons s'en retourna à Paris, & moy auec luy, où ie fus iusques à la fin de Feurier:[1]
p. 240. durant lequel temps le sieur de Mons chercha moyen d'auoir nouuelle commission pour les traictes des nouuelles descouuertures, que nous auions faites, où auparauant personne n'auoit traicté: Ce qu'il ne peut obtenir, bien que les demandes & propositiōs fussent iustes & raisōnables.

Et se voyant hors d'esperance d'obtenir icelle commission, il ne laissa de poursuiure son dessin, pour le desir

---

Pont-Gravé was chosen to go to Tadoussac as well for barter as for anything else which might provide the means of meeting the outlay.

And the Sieur Lucas Le Gendre of Rouen, one of the partners, was appointed to take charge of the purchase of goods and provisions, and of the hiring of ships, men, and other things necessary for the expedition.

When these things were settled, the Sieur de Monts went back to Paris, and I with him, where I remained until the end of February.[1] And during this time the Sieur de Monts endeavoured to obtain a new commission for the fur-trade in the parts newly-discovered by us, in which previously no one had traded. This he could not obtain although his requests and proposals were just and reasonable.

And although he saw that it was hopeless to obtain this commission, he did not cease to pursue his project, from his

[1] See *infra*, pp. 315–24.

qu'il auoit que toutes choses reussissent au biẽ & honneur de la France.

Pendant ce temps, le sieur de Mons, ne m'auoit dit encores sa volonté pour mon particulier, iusques à ce que ie luy eus dit qu'on m'auoit raporté qu'il ne desiroit que i'yuernasse en Canadas,[a] ce qui n'estoit pas, car il remit la[a] tout à ma volonté.

Ie m'esquipay des choses propres & necessaires pour hyuerner à nostre habitation de Quebecq, & pour cest effet party de Paris le dernier iour de Feurier ensuiuant, & fus à Honfleur,[1] où se deuoit faire l'embarquement. Ie passay par Rouen,[2] où ie seiournay deux iours : & de là fus à Honfleur, où ie trouuay le Pont, & le Gendre, qui me dirẽt auoir fait embarquer les choses necessaires pour l'habitation. Ie fus fort aise de nous voir prests à faire voile : toutesfois incertain si les viures estoient bons & suffisans pour la demeure & yuernement.

[a] *Sic.*

---

desire that everything should turn out for the good and honour of France.

During this time the Sieur de Monts had not yet informed me of his wishes respecting myself, until I told him that it had been reported to me that he did not wish me to winter in Canada. This was not true ; for he left the whole matter to my good pleasure.

I equipped myself with the things suitable and necessary for wintering at our settlement at Quebec, and for that purpose set out from Paris on the last day of February following, and went to Honfleur,[1] where the embarkation was to take place. I went by way of Rouen,[2] where I spent two days, and from there to Honfleur, where I found Pont-Gravé and Le Gendre, who told me they had put on board the things necessary for the settlement. I was very glad to find we were ready to set sail, although uncertain whether the provisions were of good quality and sufficient to sustain us throughout the winter.

[1] See *supra*, p. 109, note 2. [2] See p. 110, note 4.

p. 241.

SECOND VOYAGE

DV SIEVR DE CHAMPLAIN

fait en la Nouuelle France en
l'annee 1610.

SECOND VOYAGE

OF THE SIEUR DE CHAMPLAIN

to New France, made in
the year 1610.

Partement de France pour retourner en la Nouuelle France, & ce qui ce passa iusques à nostre arriuee en l'habitation.

CHAP. I.

LE temps venant fauorable ie m'enbarquay à Honfleur[1] auec quelque nombre d'artisans le 7. du mois [de] Mars, & fusmes contrariez de mauuais temps en la Manche, & cōtrainċts de relascher en Angleterre, à vn lieu appelé Porlan, où fusmes quelques iours à la radde : & leuasmes l'ancre pour aller à l'isle d'Huy, qui est proche de la coste d'Angleterre, d'autant que nous trouuions la radde de Porlan fort mauuaise.[2] Estās proches d'icelle isle, la brume s'esleua si fort que nous fusmes cōtrainċts de relascher à la Hougue.[3]

Departure from France to return to New France, and what happened until we arrived at our settlement.

CHAPTER I

THE weather becoming favourable, I embarked at Honfleur[1] with a certain number of artisans on the seventh of March. We were delayed by bad weather in the Channel and were forced to put into harbour in England at a place called Portland, where we stayed for several days. But since we found the roadstead at Portland very bad,[2] we weighed anchor for the Isle of Wight, which is near the coast of England. When we were off that island the fog became so thick that we were forced to put in at the Hogue.[3]

[1] See p. 109 *supra*, note 2.

[2] There is no harbour at Portland, but Weymouth.

[3] A harbour near Barfleur, east of Cherbourg, in the baie de la Seine.

Depuis le partement de Honfleur, ie fus persecuté d'vne fort grande maladie, qui m'ostoit l'esperance de faire le voyage, & m'estois embarqué dans vn batteau pour me faire reporter en France au Haure,[1] & là me faire traiter, estāt p. 242. fort mal au vaisseau : Et faisois estat recouurant ma santé, que ie me rembarquerois dans vn autre, qui n'estoit party de Honfleur, où deuoit s'embarquer des Marests gendre de Pont-graué : mais ie me fis porter à Honfleur, tousiours fort mal, où le 15. de Mars le vaisseau d'où i'estois sorty relascha, pour y prendre du l'aist,[a] qui luy manquoit, pour estre bien en assiete. Il fut en ce lieu iusques au 8. d'Auril. Durāt ce temps ie me remis en assez bon estat : toutesfois encore que foible & debile, ie ne laissay pas de me rembarquer.

Nous partismes derechef le 18.[2] d'Auril, & arriuasmes sur le grand banc le 19. du mois,[3] & eusmes cognoissāce des

[a] A lire *laist* = lest.

Ever since leaving Honfleur, I had been attacked by a very serious illness, which gave me no hope of making the voyage, and I had embarked in a boat to take me back to Havre in France,[1] to receive treatment there, being very ill in the ship. And I purposed when I should recover my health to take passage in another ship, which had not yet left Honfleur, on which Des Marais, Pont-Gravé's son-in-law, was to embark. But I had them take me, still quite ill, to Honfleur, where on the fifteenth of March the ship which I had left put in to take on board ballast which she needed to keep her trim. She remained here until the eighth of April. During this time I recovered my health fairly well, and although somewhat weak and debilitated, I nevertheless re-embarked.

We departed again on April 18,[2] and arrived on the Grand Bank on the nineteenth of the month,[3] sighting the islands

[1] Opposite to Honfleur.

[2] *Sic pro* 8.

[3] April.

isles S. Pierre le 22. Estãs le trauers de Menthane[1] nous rencontrasmes vn vaisseau de S. Maslo, où il y auoit vn ieune homme, qui beuuant à la santé de Pont-graué, ne se peut si bien tenir, que par l'esbranlement du vaisseau il ne tombast en la mer, & se noya sans y pouuoir donner remede, à cause que le vent estoit trop impetueux.

Le 26. du mois[2] arriuasmes à Tadoussac, où il y auoit des vaisseaux qui y estoient arriuez dés le 18. ce qui ne c'estoit veu il y auoit plus de 60. ans, à ce que disoient les vieux mariniers qui voguent ordinairement audit pays.[3] p. 243. C'estoit le peu d'yuer qu'il y auoit fait, & le peu de glaces, qui n'empescherent point l'entree desdicts vaisseaux. Nous sçeusmes par vn ieune Gentilhomme appelé le sieur du Parc qui auoit yuerné à nostre habitatiō, que tous ses compagnōs se portoient bien, & qu'il n'y en auoit eu que quelques vns

of St. Pierre on the twenty-second. When we were off Menthane[1] we met a vessel from St. Malo, on which was a young man, who, while drinking Pont-Gravé's health, lost his footing by reason of the motion of the ship and fell overboard. On account of the strong wind we were unable to rescue him and he was drowned.

On the twenty-sixth of the month[2] we arrived at Tadoussac, where there were ships which had arrived as early as the eighteenth. Such a thing had not been seen for sixty years, according to the reports of old seamen who sail regularly to these parts.[3] It was the mild winter and the small quantity of ice which had permitted these ships to enter. We learned from a young nobleman named the Sieur du Parc, who had spent the winter at our settlement, that all his companions were well and that only a very few

---

[1] Now the Matane in Gaspé. See Vol. I, 95.

[2] April.

[3] This would indicate that since 1550 voyages to the St. Lawrence had been of annual occurrence. See Biggar, *Early Trading Companies of New France*, pp. 23 *et seq.*

de malades, encore fort peu, & nous asseura qu'il n'y auoit fait presque point d'yuer, & auoiēt eu ordinairement de la viande fraische tout l'yuer, & que le plus grand de leur trauail estoit de se donner du bon temps.

Cest yuer monstre comme se doiuent comporter à l'aduenir ceux qui auront telles entreprises, estant bien malaisé de faire vne nouuelle habitation sans trauail, & courir la premiere annee mauuaise fortune, comme il s'est trouué en toutes nos premieres habitations. Et à la verité en ostant les salures, & ayant de la viande fraische, la santé y est aussi bōne qu'en France.

Les sauuages nous attendoient de iour en autre pour aller à la guerre auec eux. Comme ils sceurent que le Pont & moy estions arriuez ensemble, il se resiouirent fort, & vindrent parler à nous.

Ie fus à terre, pour leur asseurer que nous irions auec eux, suiuāt les promesses qu'ils m'auoiēt faites, Qu'aprés

---

of them had been slightly ill; and he informed us that there had been scarcely any winter and that they had generally had fresh meat all winter long. Their greatest trouble had been to amuse themselves.

This winter shows how in future those who undertake such enterprises ought to act, since it is difficult to make a new settlement without labour, and without incurring ill fortune the first year, as has been the case in all our first settlements. And in truth by doing without salt provisions, and having fresh meat, one's health is as good there as in France.

The Indians were daily expecting us, to go with them on the war-path. When they learned that Pont-Gravé and I had arrived together, they rejoiced greatly and came to confer with us.

I went ashore to assure them that we should go with them, in accordance with the promises they had made to le retour de leur guerre, ils me meneroient descouurir les p. 244. trois riuieres,[1] iusques en vn lieu où il y a vne si grande mer[2] qu'ils n'en voyēt point le bout, & nous en reuenir par le Saguenay audit Tadoussac : & leur demanday s'ils auoient encore ceste mesme volonté : Ils me dirent qu'ouy : mais que ce ne pouuoit estre que l'annee suiuante : ce qui m'aporta du plaisir[a] : Toutesfois i'auois promis aux Algoumequins & Ochateguins[3] de les assister aussi en leurs guerres, lesquels m'auoiēt promis de me faire voir leur pays, & le grand lac,[4] & quelques mines de cuiure & autres choses qu'ils m'auoient donné à entendre : si bien que i'auois deux cordes à mon arc : de façon que si l'vne failloit, l'autre pouuoit reussir.

Le 28. dudit mois[5] ie party de Tadoussac, pour aller à Quebecq, où ie trouuay le Capitaine Pierre[6] qui y commandoit, & tous ses compagnōs en bon estat ; & auec eux

[a] Il faudrait sans doute lire *desplaisir*.

---

me, that after we returned from their war, they would take me to explore the Three Rivers[1] as far as a place where there is such a large sea,[2] that they have not seen the end of it, and that we should then come back by way of the Saguenay to Tadoussac. I asked them whether they were still willing to do this. They said they were, but that it could only be done next year. This answer pleased me, but I had also promised the Algonquins and Ochateguins[3] to assist them in their wars, and they had promised to show me their country and the great lake,[4] and some copper mines and other things which they had mentioned to me. Hence I had two strings to my bow, and if one failed the other might stay taut.

On the twenty-eighth of the month[5] I set out from Tadoussac for Quebec, where I found Captain Pierre,[6] the commander, and all his comrades, hale and hearty. And

[1] The St. Maurice. [2] Hudson Bay. [3] The Hurons. See p. 68.
[4] Lake Huron. [5] April. [6] Pierre Chavin. See p. 107.

vn Capitaine sauuage appelé Batiscan, & aucuns de ses compagnōs, qui nous y attendoiēt, lesquels furent fort resiouys de ma venue, & se mirēt à chāter & danser tout le soir. Ie leur fis festin ce qu'ils eurent fort aggreable, & firent bonne chere, dont ils ne furēt point ingrats, & me conuierēt moy huictiesme qui n'est pas petite faueur parmy eux, où nous portasmes chacun nostre escuelle, comme est la coustume, & de[a] la remporter chacun plaine de viande, que nous donnions à qui bon nous sembloit.

Quelques iours aprés que ie fus party de Tadoussac, p. 245.
les Montagnets arriuerent à Quebecq au nombre de 60. bons hommes, pour s'acheminer à la guerre. Ils y seiournerent quelques iours, s'y donnant du bon temps, & n'estoit pas sans souuēt m'inportuner, sçauoir si ie ne m'anquerois point à ce que ie leur auois promis. Ie les asseuray, & promis de rechef, leur demādant s'ils m'auoient trouué menteur

[a] Le *de* est amené par *la coustume.*

---

with them was a native chief named Batiscan and some of his companions who were waiting for us. These rejoiced greatly at my arrival and sang and danced all the evening. I made a feast for them which pleased them much. They ate heartily and were not ungrateful for it. They invited me and seven others to a feast, which is no small favour amongst them. Each of us, as is the custom, carried his dish with him, and brought it back full of meat, and gave it to whomsoever we pleased.

Some days after I had left Tadoussac, the Montagnais, to the number of sixty valiant men, on their way to the war, arrived at Quebec. They stayed there some days, enjoying themselves, and not seldom they importuned me with questions as to whether I should fail in what I had promised them. I reassured them and made them fresh promises, asking them whether they had found me false in the past.

par le passé. Ils se resiouirent fort lors que ie leur reiteray mes promesses.

Et me disoient voila beaucoup de Basques & Mistigoches (ainsi appelent ils les Normans & Maslouins) qui disent qu'ils viendront à la guerre auec nous, que t'en semble ? disent ils verité ? Ie leur respondis que non, & que ie sçauois bien ce qu'ils auoient au cœur ; & que ce qu'ils en disoient n'estoit que pour auoir & attirer leurs commoditez. Ils me disoient tu as dit vray, ce sont femmes, & ne veulent faire la guerre qu'à nos Castors : auec plusieurs autres discours facetieux, & de l'estat & ordre d'aller à la guerre.

Ils se resolurent de partir, & m'aller attendre aux trois riuieres 30. lieues plus haut que Quebecq,[1] où ie leur auois promis de les aller trouuer, & quatre barques chargees de p. 246. marchandises, pour traicter de pelleterie, entre autres auec les Ochateguins,[2] qui me deuoient venir attendre à l'entree

They rejoiced greatly when I repeated my promises to them.

And they used to say to me : ‘There are many Basques and Mistigoches (for so they call the Normans and the people of St. Malo) who say that they will accompany us on the war-path. What do you think of it ? Do they speak the truth ?’ I replied that they did not, and that I knew well what they had in mind, and that what they said was merely in order to obtain possession of the Indians' goods. These said to me : ‘You have spoken truly, they are women, who wish to make war only upon our beavers.’ There were other facetious remarks, and discussion of the equipment and method of going on the war-path.

They decided to set out and to wait for me at Three Rivers, thirty leagues above Quebec,[1] where I had promised to join them with four pinnaces loaded with merchandise, for bartering furs with among others the Ochateguins,[2] de la riuiere des Yroquois,[1] comme ils m'auoient promis l'annee precedente, & y amener iusques à 400. hommes, pour aller à la guerre.

---

[1] The distance from Quebec to Three Rivers is ninety miles.

[2] Hurons. See p. 68.

Partement de Quebecq pour aller assi[s]ter nos sauuages aliez à la guerre contre les Yroquois leurs ennemis, & tout ce qui se passa iusques à nostre retour en l'habitation.

CHAP. II.

IE party de Quebecq Le[a] 14. Iuin pour aller trouuer les Montagnets, Algoumequins & Ochateguins[2] qui se deuoient trouuer à l'entrée de la riuiere des Yroquois.[1] Comme ie fus à 8. lieues de Quebecq, ie rencontray vn canot, où il y auoit deux sauuages, l'vn Algoumequin, & l'autre Montagnet, qui me venoiẽt prier de m'aduãcer le plus viste qu'il me seroit possible, & que les Algoumequins & Ochate-

[a] L'original porte *Quebecq. Le*

---

who were to come and wait for me at the mouth of the river of the Iroquois.[1] This they had promised me the previous year, and also to bring along as many as 400 men to go on the war-path.

Departure from Quebec to go and help our Indian allies in the war against the Iroquois their enemies, and all that happened until our return to the settlement.

CHAPTER II

I DEPARTED from Quebec on June 14, to go and meet the Montagnais, Algonquins, and Ochateguins[2] who were to be at the mouth of the river of the Iroquois.[1] When I was eight leagues from Quebec, I met a canoe in which were two Indians, one an Algonquin and the other a Montagnais, who were coming to ask me to push on as fast as possible. They said that in two days Algonquins

[1] The Richelieu.

[2] Hurons.

guins seroient dans deux iours au rendes-vous au nombre de 200. & 200. autres qui deuoient venir vn peu aprés, auec Yroquet vn de leurs chefs[1]; & me demanderent si i'estois content de la venue de ces sauuages : ie leur dy que ie n'en pouuois estre fasché, puis qu'ils auoiēt tenu leur promesse. Ils se mirent dedans ma barque, où ie leur fis fort bonne
p. 247. chere. Peu de temps aprés auoir deuisé auec eux de plusieurs choses touchant leurs guerres, le sauuage Algoumequin, qui estoit vn de leurs chefs, tira d'vn sac vne piece de cuiure de la longueur d'vn pied, qu'il me donna, lequel estoit fort beau & bien franc, me donnant à entendre qu'il y en auoit en quantité là où il l'auoit pris, qui estoit sur le bort d'vne riuiere proche d'vn grād lac, & qu'ils le prenoiēt par morceaux, & le faisant fondre le mettoient en lames, & auec des pierres le rendoient vny. Ie fus fort ayse de ce present, encores qu'il fut de peu du[a] valleur.

[a] A lire *de*.

---

and Ochateguins to the number of 200 would be at the rendez-vous, and that 200 more would come a little later with Iroquet, one of their chiefs.[1] They asked me if I was pleased with the arrival of these Indians, and I said that I could not be displeased with it, since they had kept their promise. They got into my pinnace, where I entertained them well. After conversing with them a short time about a number of things touching their wars, the Algonquin Indian, who was one of their chiefs, drew out of a sack a piece of copper a foot long, which he presented to me. It was very fine and pure. He gave me to understand that the metal was abundant where he had obtained it, which was on the bank of a river near a large lake. He said that it was taken out in pieces, and when melted was made into sheets and smoothed out with stones. I was much pleased with this gift although it was of small value.

[1] See p. 68 *supra*.

Arriuant aux trois riuieres, ie trouuay tous les Montagnets qui m'attendoient, & quatre barques, cõme i'ay dit cy dessus, qui y estoient allees pour traicter auec eux.

Les sauuages furent resiouis de me voir. Ie fus à terre parler à eux. Ils me prierent, qu'allant à la guerre ie ne m'embarquasse point, ny mes cõpagnõs aussi, en d'autres canots que les leurs ; & qu'ils estoient nos antiens amis : ce que ie leur promis, leur disant que ie voulois partir tout à l'heure, d'autãt que le vent estoit bon, & que ma barque n'estoit point si aisee que leurs canots, & que pour cela ie voulois prendre l'aduant. Ils me prierent instamment d'attendre au lendemain matin, que nous irions tous ensemble, & qu'ils ne feroient pas plus de chemin que moy : Enfin pour les contenter, ie leur(s) promis, dont ils furent fort ioyeux. p. 248.

Le iour ensuiuãt nous partismes tous ensẽble vogans iusques au lendemain matin 19. iour dudit mois,[1] qu'ar-

---

On our arrival at Three Rivers, I found all the Montagnais waiting for me, and four pinnaces which had gone there to barter, as I have already stated.

The Indians were very glad to see me. I went ashore to confer with them. They requested me when going on the war-path not to get into, nor to allow my companions to get into, any other canoes than theirs ; for they were our old friends. This I promised and told them I was willing to start at once, since the wind was favourable and my pinnace was not so fast as their canoes, on which account I wanted to go on ahead. They besought me to wait until the next morning, when we should all go together, saying that they would not go faster than I. Finally, to please them, I consented, at which they were much gratified.

On the following day we set out all together, and sailed till the following morning, the nineteenth of the said month,[1] riuasmes à vne isle deuant ladite riuiere des Yroquois,[1] en attendant les Algoumequins qui deuoient y venir ce mesme iour. Comme les Montagnets couppoient des arbres pour faire place pour danser & se mettre en ordre à l'arriuee desdits Algoumequins, voicy vn canot Algoumequin qu'on aperceut venir en diligence aduertir que les Algoumequins auoient fait rencontre des Yroquois, qui estoient au nombre de cent, & qu'ils estoient fort bien barricadez, & qu'il seroit malaisé de les emporter, s'ils ne venoient promptement, & les Matigoches[2] auec eux (ainsi nous appelent ils.)

---

[1] June.

Aussitost l'alarme commença par my eux, & chacun se mit en son canot auec ses armes. Ils furent promptement en estat, mais auec confusion : car ils se precipitoient si fort que au lieu d'aduancer ils se retardoiēt. Ils vindrēt à nostre barque, & aux autres, me priāt d'aller auec eux dās leurs canots, & mes compagnons aussi, & me presserent si fort que

when we arrived at an island at the mouth of the river of the Iroquois,[1] and waited for the Algonquins who were to arrive that same day. While the Montagnais were cutting down trees to make a space for dancing and for preparing themselves for the arrival of the Algonquins, an Algonquin canoe was seen coming swiftly to warn us that the Algonquins had encountered the Iroquois to the number of a hundred, who had barricaded themselves well, and that it would be difficult to get the better of them if their friends did not come quickly and along with them the Matigoches,[2] as they call us.

At once the alarm was given and each got into his canoe with his arms. They were quickly ready, but with some confusion; for they made such haste that instead of getting ahead they kept things back. They came to our pinnace and to the others, begging me and my companions to accompany them in their canoes, and they urged me so

---

[1] The Richelieu.

[2] See p. 121.

ie m'y embarquay moy cinquiesme. Ie priay la Routte qui estoit nostre pilotte, de demeurer en la barque, & m'enuoyer encores quelque 4. ou 5. de mes compagnons, si les autres P. 249. barques enuoyoient quelques chalouppes auec hommes pour nous donner secours : Car aucunes des barques n'y voulut aller auec les sauuages, horsmis le Capitaine Thibaut qui vint auec moy, qui auoit là vne barque. Les sauuages crioyent à ceux qui restoient qu'ils auoient cœur de femmes, & ne sçauoient faire autre chose que la guerre à leurs pelleteries.

Cependant aprés auoir fait quelque demie lieue, en trauersant la riuiere tous les sauuages mirent pied à terre, & abandonnant leurs canots prindrēt leurs rondaches, arcs, flesches, massues & espees, qu'ils amanchent au bout de grands bastons, & commēcerent à prendre leur course dās les bois, de telle façon que nous les eusmes bien tost perdus de veue, & nous laisserent cinq que nous estions sans guides. Cela nous apporta du desplaisir : neantmoins voyāt tousiours leurs

strongly that with four others I embarked with them. I asked our pilot, La Routte, to stay in the pinnace, and to send me four or five more of my companions, should the other pinnaces send shallops and men to our assistance ; for none of the pinnaces would go with the Indians except that of Captain Thibaut who came with me. The Indians shouted to those who stayed behind that they were woman-hearted, and knew no other kind of fighting but the war on peltry.

Meanwhile all the Indians, after going about half a league and crossing the river, landed, and leaving their canoes, took their shields, bows, arrows, clubs, and swords, which were fixed to the ends of long sticks, and began to make their way through the woods so fast that we soon lost sight of them, and they left the five of us without guides. This displeased us ; nevertheless as we could see their tracks we

brisees nous les suiuions ; mais souuent nous nous abusions. Comme nous eusmes fait enuiron demie lieue par l'espois des bois, dans des pallus & marescages, tousiours l'eau iusques aux genoux, armez chacū d'vn corcelot de piquier qui nous importunoit beaucoup, & aussi la quantité des mousquites, qui estoient si espoisses qu'elles ne nous permettoient point p. 250. presque de reprendre nostre halaine, tant elles nous persecutoient, & si cruellement que c'estoit chose estrange, nous ne sçauions plus où nous estions sans deux sauuages que nous apperceusmes trauersans le bois, lesquels nous appelasmes, & leur dy qu'il estoit necessaire qu'ils fussent auec nous pour nous guider & cōduire où estoient les Yroquois, & qu'autremēt nous n'y pourriōs aller, & que nous nous esgareriōs dans les bois. Ils demeurerēt pour nous cōduire. Ayant fait vn peu de chemin, nous apperceusmes vn sauuage qui venoit en diligēce nous chercher pour nous faire aduancer le plus promptement qu'il seroit possible, lequel me fit entēdre que

followed them, although we often went astray. When we had gone about half a league through the thick woods, among swamp and marsh, with water up to our knees, each loaded down with a pikeman's corselet, which bothered us greatly, as did the hosts of mosquitoes, a strange sight, which were so thick that they hardly allowed us to draw our breath, so greatly and severely did they persecute us, we should not have known where we were, had it not been for two Indians of whom we caught sight, moving through the bush, to whom we called. I said to them that they must stay with us to guide and conduct us to where the Iroquois were, and that if they did not, we should not reach there, but should get lost in the woods. They stayed to be our guides.

Having gone a short distance, we perceived an Indian coming in haste to look for us, to urge us on as quickly as possible. He gave me to understand that the Algonquins

les Algoumequins & Mōtagnets auoient voulu forcer la barricade des Yroquois & qu'ils auoient esté repoussés, & qu'il y auoit eu de meilleurs hommes Montagnets tuez, & plusieurs autres blessez, & qu'ils s'estoiēt retirez en nous attendant, & que leur esperance estoit du tout en nous. Nous n'eusmes pas fait demy quart de lieue auec ce sauuage qui estoit Capitaine Algoumequin, que nous entendiōs les hurlemēs & cris des vns & des autres, qui s'entre disoiēt des iniures, escarmouchans tousiours legerement en nous attendant. Aussitost que les sauuages nous apperçeurent ils commencerent à s'escrier de telle façon, qu'on n'eust pas entendu tonner. P. 251. Ie dōnay charge à mes compagnōs de me suiure tousiours, & ne m'escarter point. Ie m'approchay de la barricade des ennemis pour la recognoistre. Elle estoit faite de puissants arbres, arrangez les vns sur les autres en rond, qui est la forme ordinaire de leurs forteresses. Tous les Montagnets & Algoumequins s'approcherēt aussi de lad. barricade. Lors nous commēçasmes à tirer force coups d'arquebuse à trauers

---

and Montagnais had tried to force the Iroquois barricade and had been repulsed, and that some of the best men among the Montagnais had been killed, and several more wounded, and that they had retreated to wait for us, and that their one hope was in us. Hardly had we gone an eighth of a league with this Indian, who was an Algonquin Chief, before we heard the howls and shouts of both parties, flinging insults at one another, and continually skirmishing whilst waiting for us. As soon as the Indians saw us they began to shout so loud that one could not have heard thunder.

I directed my companions to keep behind me and not to leave me. I approached the enemy's barricade to reconnoitre it. It was made of strong trees, placed one upon the other, in a circle, which is the ordinary form of their forts. All the Montagnais and Algonquins also approached the barricade. Then we began firing many arquebus-shots

les fueillards, d'autant que nous ne les pouuions voir comme eux nous. Ie fus blessé en tirant le premier coup sur le bord de leur barricade, d'vn coup de flesche qui me fendit le bout de l'oreille & entra dans le col. Ie prins la flesche qui me tenoit encores au col & l'arachay : elle estoit ferree par le bout d'vne pierre bien aigue. Vn autre de mes compagnons en mesme temps fut aussi blessé au bras d'vne autre flesche que ie luy arrachay. Neantmoins ma blesseure ne m'ēpescha de faire le deuoir ; & nos sauuages aussi de leur part, & pareillement les ennemis, tellement qu'on voyoit voler les flesches d'vne part & d'autre, menu comme gresle : Les Yroquois s'estonnoient du bruit de nos arquebuses, & principalemēt de ce que les balles persoient mieux que leurs flesches ; & eurent tellement l'espouuāte de l'effet qu'elles faisoient, p. 252. voyāt plusieurs de leurs cōpaignons tombez morts, & blessez, que de crainte qu'ils auoient, croyans ces coups estre sans

---

through the branches ; for we could not see them as they could see us. As I was firing my first shot close to their barricade, I was wounded with an arrow which split the tip of my ear and pierced my neck. I seized the arrow which was still in my neck and pulled it out. The point was tipped with a very sharp bit of stone. At the same time one of my companions was also wounded in the arm by another arrow, which I pulled out for him.

My wound did not hinder me, however, from doing my duty, and our Indian allies also did theirs, and the enemy too fought well ; so much so that one could see the arrows flying on all sides as thick as hail. The Iroquois were astonished at the reports of our arquebuses, but most of all because the bullets pierced better than their arrows. And they were so frightened at the execution done by the bullets, having seen several of their companions fall dead and wounded, that out of fear, thinking these shots to be irre-

remede ils se iettoient par terre, quand ils entendoient le bruit : aussi ne tirions gueres à faute, & deux ou trois balles à chacun coup, & auiōs la pluspart du temps nos arquebuses appuyees sur le bord de leur barricade. Comme ie vy que nos munitions commençoiēt à manquer, ie dy à tous les sauuages, qu'il les falloit emporter de force & rompre leurs barricades, & pour ce faire prendre leurs rondaches & s'en couurir, & ainsi s'en aprocher de si prés que l'on peust lier de bōnes cordes aux pilliers qui les soustenoient, & à force de bras tirer tellement qu'on les renuersast, & par ce moyen y faire ouuerture suffisante pour entrer dedans leur fort : & que cependant nous à coups d'arquebuses repousserions les ennemis qui viendroient se presenter pour les en empescher : & aussi qu'ils eussent à se mettre quelque quantité aprés de grands arbres qui estoient proches de ladite barricade, afin de les renuerser dessus pour les accabler, que d'autres couuriroient de leurs rondaches pour empescher que les ennemis ne les endom-

---

sistible, they would throw themselves upon the ground when they heard the report. Besides, we hardly missed a shot, and fired two or three bullets each time, and for the most part had our arquebuses resting on the side of their barricade. When I saw that our ammunition was beginning to fail, I said to the Indians that they must carry the place by storm, by breaking down the barricades. To do this they must take their shields, and covering themselves therewith, must come near enough to be able to fasten strong ropes to the posts which supported the barricade and by main strength pull them down and so make an opening wide enough to let us into the fort, and that meanwhile by means of our arquebuses we should keep the enemy back, should he attempt to hinder them. I said also that a number of them should attack certain large trees which were near the barricade, in order to make them fall upon the enemy and crush him, and that others with their shields should keep the enemy

mageassent, ce qu'ils firent fort promptemẽt. Et comme on estoit en train de paracheuer, les barques qui estoient à p. 253. vne lieue & demie de nous nous entendoiẽt battre par l'equo de nos arquebusades qui resonnoit iusques à eux, qui fit qu'vn ieune homme de sainct Maslo plein de courage, appelé des Prairies, qui auoit sa barque comme les autres pour la traite de pelleterie, dit à tous ceux qui restoient, que c'estoit vne grande honte à eux de me voir battre de la façon auec des sauuages, sans qu'ils me vinssẽt secourir, & que pour luy il auoit trop l'honneur en recommãdation, & qu'il ne vouloit point qu'ō luy peut faire ce reproche : & sur cela se delibera de me venir trouuer dans vne chalouppe auec quelques siens compagnons, & des miens qu'il amena auec luy. Aussitost qu'il fut arriué il alla vers le fort des Yroquois, qui estoit sur le bort de la riuiere, où il mit pied à terre, & me vint chercher. Comme ie le vis, ie fis cesser nos sauuages qui rompoient la

---

from hurting these. All of which they carried out very promptly.

As we were on the point of completing this, the pinnaces, which were a league and a half away, heard the sound of our fighting, the echo of the firing being carried to them, with the result that a courageous young man of St. Malo named Des Prairies, who, like the others, had brought his pinnace for the purpose of bartering furs, said to those who had stayed behind, that it was disgraceful of them, to see me fighting in this way with savages without going to my help, and that for himself he held his honour too high for anyone to reproach him with such a thing. Thereupon he decided to come and join me in a shallop with some of his men, and some of mine whom he brought with him. As soon as he arrived, he went towards the Iroquois fort, which was on the bank of the river. Here he landed and came to look for me. When I saw him, I made our Indians cease breaking down

forteresse, afin que les noueueaux venus eussent leur part du plaisir. Ie priay le sieur des Prayries & ses compagnons de faire quelque salue d'arquebusades, auparauant que nos sauuages les emportassent de force, comme ils auoient deliberé : ce qu'ils firent, & tirerent plusieurs coups, où chacun d'eux se comporta bien en son deuoir. Et aprés auoir assez tiré, ie m'adresse à nos sauuages & les incitay de paracheuer : Aussitost s'aprochans de ladite barricade comme ils auoient fait auparauant, & nous à leurs aisles pour tirer sur ceux qui les p. 254. voudroient empescher de la rompre.[a] Ils firent si bien & vertueusement qu'à la faueur de nos arquebusades ils y firent ouuerture, neantmoins difficile à passer, car il y auoit encores la hauteur d'vn homme pour entrer dedans, & des branchages d'arbres abbatus, qui nuisoient fort : Toutesfois quād ie vey l'entree assez raisonnable, ie dy qu'on ne tirast plus : ce qui

[a] Il faut évidemment remplacer le point par une virgule.

---

the fort, so that the new-comers might have their share of this pleasure. I requested the Sieur des Prairies and his companions to fire some arquebus volleys before our Indians stormed the place, as they had decided to do. They did so, and fired several shots wherein each conducted himself very properly. And after sufficient firing had been done, I spoke to our Indians, inciting them to finish their work. At once they approached the barricade as they had done before, having us on their flanks to shoot at those who should try to prevent them from pulling it down. They behaved so well and so bravely, that, thanks to our volleys, they made an opening, which nevertheless was difficult to get through; for there still remained a part as high as a man, as well as branches of felled trees which impeded us greatly. Still, when I saw that there was a pretty fair opening, I gave orders

fut fait : Au mesme instāt quelque vingt ou trēte, tant des sauuages que de nous autres, entrasmes dedans l'espee en la main, sans trouuer beaucoup de resistance. Aussitost ce qui restoit sain commença à prendre la fuitte : mais ils n'alloient pas loing, car ils estoient defaits par ceux qui estoient à l'entour de ladite baricade : & ceux qui eschaperent se noyerent dans la riuiere. Nous prismes quelques quinze prisonniers, le reste tué à coups d'arquebuse, de flesches & d'espee. Quand ce fut fait, il vint vne autre chalouppe & quelques vns de nos compagnons dedans, qui fut trop tart : toutesfois assez à tēps pour la despouille du butin, qui n'estoit pas grād chose : il n[']y auoit que des robes de castor, des morts, plains de sang,[a] que les sauuages ne vouloiēt prēdre la peine de despouiller, & se moquoiēt de ceux qui le faisoient, p. 255. qui furent ceux de la derniere chalouppe. Car les autres ne se mirent en ce villain deuoir. Voila donc auec la grace de

---

[a] N'aura-t-on pas faussé le sens du MS. en mettant une virgule après *castor* et en faisant *plains* du *masculin* ?

---

for the firing to cease, which was obeyed. At the same moment, some twenty or thirty, both Indians and whites, went in, sword in hand, without meeting much resistance. Immediately all who were able began to flee, but they did not get far; for they were laid low by those about the barricade, and any who escaped were drowned in the river. We took some fifteen prisoners, the rest having been killed by arquebuses, arrows, and swords. When all was over there arrived another shallop with some of our companions, but it was too late, although in time to carry off the booty, which was small. There were merely some beaver-skins, and dead bodies covered with blood, which the Indians would not take the trouble to strip, and made sport of those who did so, who were the people in the last shallop. The others refused such a nasty occupation. In this way, by

Dieu la victoire obtenue, dont ils nous donnerent beaucoup de louange.

[PLANCHE (HORS TEXTE)[a]: FORT DES YROQUOIS.]

Ces sauuages escorcherent les testes de ceux qui estoient morts, ainsi qu'ils ont accoustumé de faire pour trophee de leur victoire, & les emportent. Ils s'en retournerent auec cinquante blessez des leurs, & trois hommes morts desdicts Montagnets & Algoumequins, en chantant, & leurs prisonniers auec eux.[b] Ayant les testes pendues à des bastons deuant leurs canots & vn corps mort couppé par quartiers, pour le manger par vengeance, à ce qu'ils disoient, & vindrent en ceste façon iusques où estoient nos barques audeuant de ladite riuiere des Yroquois.[1]

Et mes compagnons & moy nous embarquasmes dans vne chalouppe, où ie me fis penser[c] de ma blesseure par le chirurgien de Boyer de Rouen qui y estoit venu aussi pour la traicte. Tout ce iour se passa auec les sauuages en danses & chançons. p. 256.

[a] Le titre et la légende sont donnés dans le texte.

[b] A remplacer le point par une virgule.

[c] *Penser* = panser.

God's grace, was victory won, and the Indians gave us much praise on that account. [PLATE VI]

The Indians as is their custom scalped those who had been killed and carried these off as trophies of victory. With their prisoners, they went home singing, having fifty of their men wounded, and three of the Montagnais and Algonquins killed. They hung the scalps to sticks in front of their canoes with a dead body cut into quarters, to be eaten, as they said, out of vengeance, and thus furnished they came to the place where lay our pinnaces at the mouth of the river of the Iroquois.[1]

My companions and I embarked in a shallop, where I had my wound dressed by the surgeon de Boyer, of Rouen, who had also come for the barter. The whole of that day was spent by the Indians in dancing and singing.

[1] The Richelieu.

FORT OF THE IROQUOIS.

A.—The Fort of the Iroquois.

B.—Iroquois throwing themselves into the river to save themselves
and Algonquins throwing themselves after them in orde

D.—The Sieur de Champlain and Five of his

E.—All our Indian Allies.

F.—The Sieur des Prairies of St. Malo with his C

G.—Shallop of the said Sieur des Prairie

H.—High Trees cut down in order to demolish the I

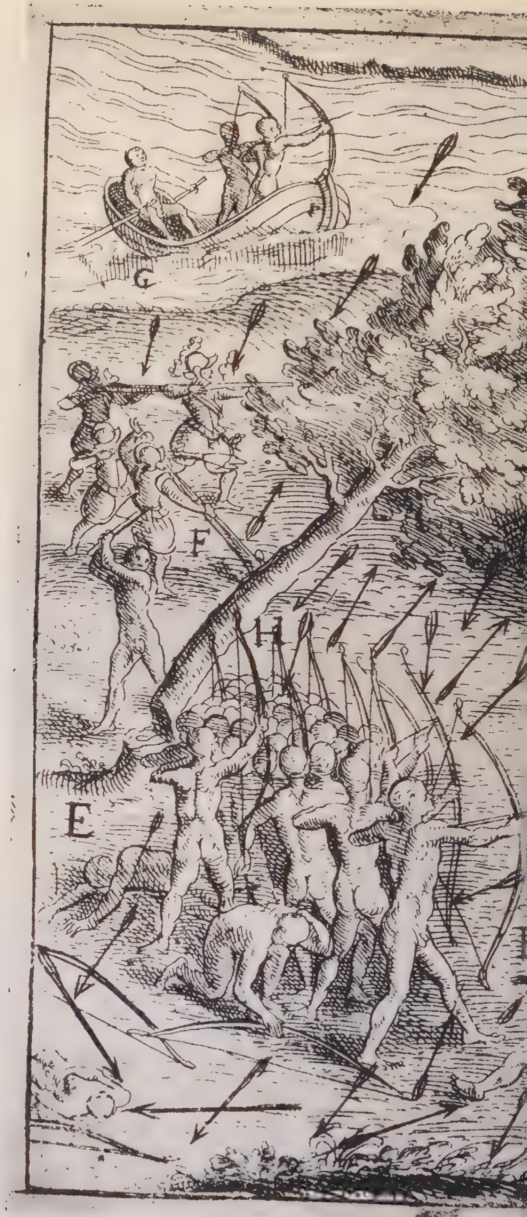
ES, PURSUED BY THE MONTAGNAIS,
DER TO KILL THEM.

S MEN.

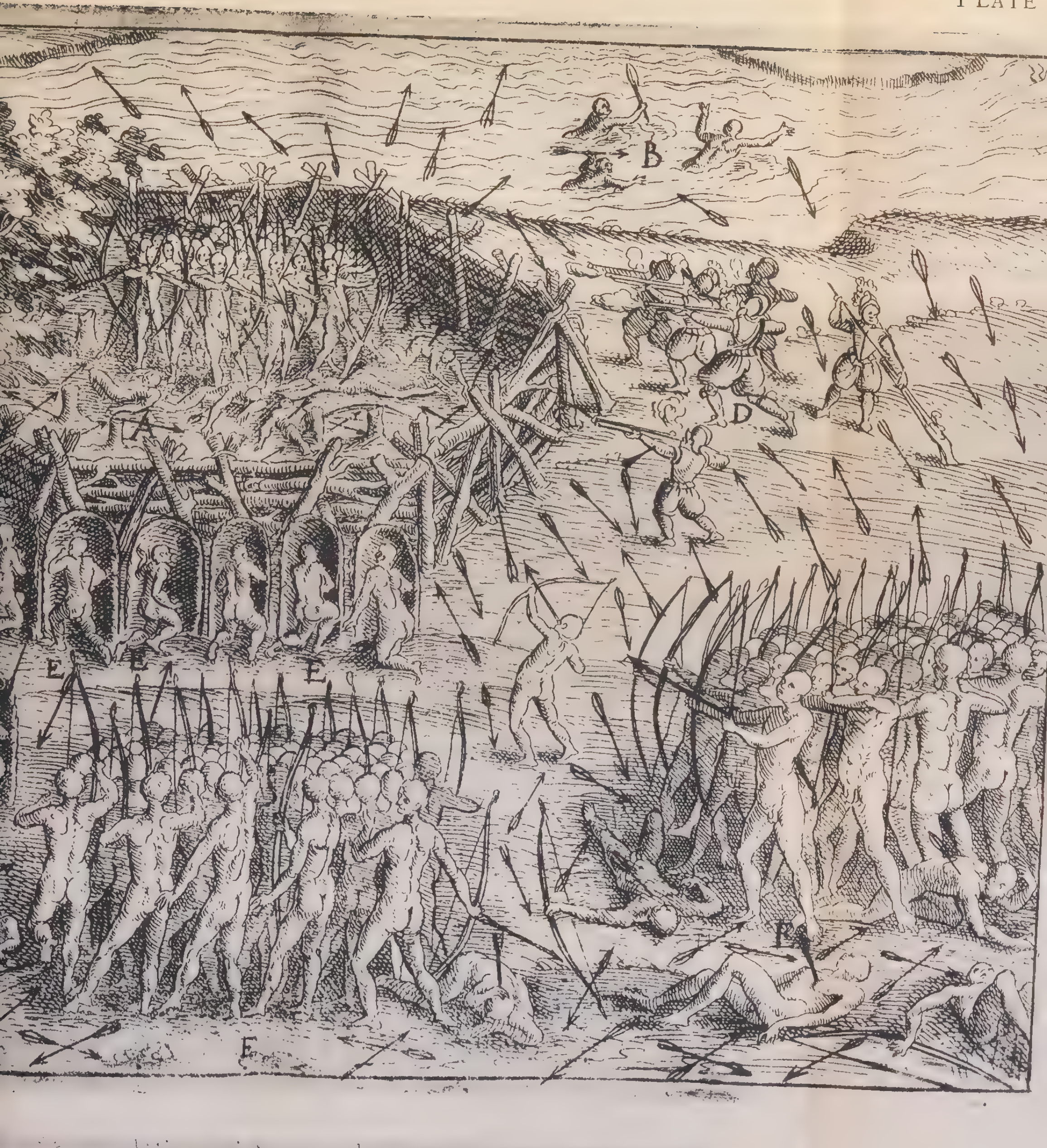
COMPANIONS.

ES.

IROQUOIS FORT.



A Le fort des Y
B Yroquois ſe
uiere pour ſ
ſuiuis par le
Algoumequ
aprés eux po



Fort des Yroquois.

C.
nla ri-
pour-
nets&
ettans
r.

D Le ſieur de Champlain & 5. des ſiens.
E Tous nos ſauuages amis.
F Le ſieur des Prairies de S. Maſlo auec ſes cõpagnons.

G Chalouppe dudit ſieur des Prairies.
H Grands arbres couppés pour ruiner le fort des Yroquois.

,

]

]

c

s

R

Le lendemain ledit sieur de Pont arriua auec vne autre chalouppe chargée de quelques marchandises & vne autre qu'il auoit laissee derriere où estoit le Capitaine Pierre qui ne pouuoit venir qu'auec peine, estant ladite barque vn peu lourde & malaisee à nager.

Cedit iour on traicta quelque pelleterie, mais les autres barques emporterent la meilleure part du butin. C'estoit leur auoir fait vn grand plaisir de leur estre allé chercher des nations estrangeres, pour aprés emporter le profit sans aucune risque ny hazard.

Ce iour ie demanday aux sauuages vn prisonnier Yroquois qu'ils auoient, lequel ils me donnerent. Ie ne fis pas peu pour luy, car ie le sauuay de plusieurs tourmens qu'il luy eust fallu souffrir auec ses compagnons prisonniers, ausquels Ils[a] arrachoient les ongles, puis leur couppoient les doits, & les brusloient en plusieurs endroits. Ils en firent mourir ledit

[a] L'original porte *ausquels. Ils*

On the following day the Sieur de Pont-Gravé arrived in another shallop laden with some goods. He had left behind another in which was Captain Pierre who could only advance with difficulty, since that pinnace was rather heavy and not easy to navigate.

That day there was some trading in furs, but the other pinnaces carried off the better part of the goods. It was doing them a great favour to search out for them strange tribes, in order that they might later on carry off the whole profit without running any risk or hazard.

On that day I asked our Indians for an Iroquois prisoner of theirs, and they gave him to me. It was no small service I did him; for I saved him from numerous tortures, which he would have been forced to undergo, along with his fellow prisoners, whose nails were torn out, fingers cut off, and bodies burnt in several places. Two or three were put to iour deux ou trois, & pour leur faire souffrir plus de tourmens ils en vsent ainsi.

Ils prindrent leurs prisonniers & les emmenerent sur le bort de l'eau & les attacherent tous droits à vn baston, puis chacun venoit auec vn flābeau d'escorce de bouleau, les P. 257. brullans tantost sur vne partie tantost sur l'autre : & les pauures miserables sētās ce feu faisoiēt des cris si haut que c'estoit chose estrange à ouyr, & des cruautez dont ces barbares vsent les vns enuers les autres. Aprés les auoir bien fait languir de la façon, & les bruslās auec ladite escorce, ils prenoient de l'eau & leur iettoient sur le corps pour les faire languir d'auantage : puis leur remettoient de rechef le feu de telle façon, que la peau tomboit de leurs corps, & continuoyent auec grands cris & exclamations, dansant iusques à ce que ces pauures miserables tombassent morts sur la place.

Aussi tost qu'il tomboit vn corps mort à terre, ils frap-

death that day, and to make them suffer greater tortures their captors proceeded as follows :

Seizing their prisoners they took them to the water's edge and tied them upright to a stake. Then each came along with a birch-bark torch, burning them now in one part, now in another ; and the poor wretches, feeling the fire, would utter such loud cries, that it was awful to hear, and indeed the cruelties which these barbarians practise upon one another are terrible. Having made them suffer in this way for some time, especially by burning them with this bark, they took water and threw it over their bodies to make them suffer still more. Then they would again apply the fire in such a way that the skin would fall from their bodies, and the captors would continue with loud shouts and whoops, dancing about, until these poor wretches fell dead on the spot.

As soon as one would fall to the ground, they would poient dessus à grands coups de baston, puis luy coupoient les bras & les iambes, & autres parties d'iceluy, & n'estoit tenu pour homme de bien entr'eux celuy qui ne couppoit vn morceau de sa chair & ne la donnoit aux chiens. Voila la courtoisie que reçoiuent les prisonniers. Mais neãtmoins ils endurent si constamment tous les tourmens qu'on leur fait, que ceux qui les voyent en demeurent estonnez.

Quant aux autres prisonniers qui resterent, tant aux Algoumequins que Montagnets, furent conseruez pour les p. 258. faire mourir par les mains de leurs femmes & filles, qui en cela ne se monstrent pas moins inhumaines que les hommes, encores elles les surpassent de beaucoup en cruauté : car par leur subtilité elles inuentẽt des supplices plus cruels, & y prennent plaisir, les faisant ainsi finir leur vie en douleurs extresmes.

Le lendemain arriua le Capitaine Yroquet & vn autre

---

pound the body violently with clubs ; then they would cut off arms, legs and other parts of the body, and amongst them no one was esteemed worthy who did not cut off a piece of flesh and give it to the dogs. Such is the courtesy which prisoners receive. Nevertheless, they endure all the tortures inflicted on them with such constancy that those who see them are struck with astonishment.

As to the other prisoners who were left, both with the Algonquins and the Montagnais, they were reserved to be put to death at the hands of the wives and daughters of these, who in this matter show themselves no less inhuman than the men ; in fact they greatly surpass the men in cruelty ; for by their cunning they invent more cruel torments, and take delight in them. Thus they cause the prisoners to end their lives in the deepest suffering.

On the following day arrived chief Iroquet and another

Ochatagin,[1] qui auoient quelques 80. hommes, qui estoient bien faschez de ne s'estre trouuez à la deffaite. En toutes ces nations il y auoit bien prés de 200. hōmes qui n'auoiēt iamais veu de Chrestiens qu'alors, dont ils firent de grandes admirations.

Nous fusmes quelques trois iours ensemble à vne isle[2] le trauers de la riuiere des Yroquois, & puis chacune des nations s'en retourna en son pays.

I'auois vn ieune garçon, qui auoit desia yuerné deux ans à Quebecq, lequel auoit desir d'aller auec les Algoumequins, pour apprendre la langue.[3] Pont-graué & moy aduisasmes que s'il en auoit enuie que ce seroit mieux fait de l'enuoyer là qu'ailleurs, pour sçauoir quel estoit leur pays, voir le grand lac,[4] remarquer les riuieres, quels peuples y habitent ; ensemble descouurir les mines & choses les plus rares de ces lieux &

Ochataguin[1] who had with them some eighty men, and they were very sorry that they had not been present at the victory. Among these tribes were nearly two hundred men who had never before seen Christians, for whom they expressed great admiration.

For some three days we were together on an island[2] at the mouth of the river of the Iroquois, and then each tribe went off to its own country.

I had with me a youth who had already spent two winters at Quebec who wished to go with the Algonquins to learn the language.[3] Pont-Gravé and I decided that if he were so disposed, it would be better to send him there than elsewhere, to learn what their country was like, see the great lake,[4] observe the rivers and what tribes lived in that region, while at the same time he might explore the mines and the rarest things amongst the tribes in those parts, so that on

[1] Huron, see pp. 68 and 123 *supra*.

[2] St. Ignace.

[3] Possibly Etienne Brulé. *Cf.* C. W. Butterfield, *History of Brulé's Discoveries and Explorations*, 15–18. Cleveland, 1898.

[4] Huron.

p. 259. peuples, afin qu'à son retour nous peussions estre informez de la verité. Nous luy demandasmes s'il l'auoit aggreable : car de l'y forcer ce n'estoit ma volonté : mais aussi tost la demande faite, il accepta le voyage tres-volontiers.

Ie fus trouuer le Capitaine Yroquet qui m'estoit fort affectionné, auquel ie demanday s'il vouloit emmener ce ieune garçon auec luy en son pays pour y yuerner, & le ramener au printemps : Il me promit le faire, & le tenir comme son fils, & qu'il en estoit tres-content. Il le va dire à tous les Algoumequins, qui n'en furent pas trop contens, pour la crainte que quelque accident ne luy arriua : & que pour cela nous leur fissions la guerre. Ce doubte refroidit Yroquet, & me vint dire que tous ses compagnons ne le trouuoient pas bon : Cependant toutes les barques s'en estoient allees, horsmis celle du Pont, qui ayant quelque affaire pressee, à ce qu'il me dit, s'en alla aussi : & moy ie demeuray auec la

---

his return we might be informed of the truth thereof. We asked him if this would be agreeable to him; for it was not my wish to force him, but so soon as the request was made, he accepted the journey with great willingness.

I went to see chief Iroquet, who was very friendly to me, and asked him if he would take this lad home with him to spend the winter in his country, and to bring him back in the spring. He promised me to do so, and to treat him like his own son, saying that he was much pleased thereat. When he reported this to the rest of the Algonquins they were not too well satisfied; for they feared lest some accident might happen to the boy, on which account we might make war upon them. Their reluctance cooled Iroquet's readiness, and he came and told me that all his companions disapproved. Meanwhile the pinnaces had left, except Pont-Gravé's, and he having, as he said, some very pressing business, also took his departure. I remained with mine, to see what would come

mienne, pour voir ce qui reussiroit[a] du voyage de ce garçon que i'auois enuie qu'il fit. Ie fus dõc à terre & demanday à parler aux Capitaines, lesquels vindrent à moy, & nous assismes auec beaucoup d'autres sauuages anciens de leurs trouppes ; puis ie leur demanday pourquoy le Capitaine Yroquet que ie p. 260. tenois pour mon amy, auoit refusé d'emmener mon garçon auec luy. Que ce n'estoit pas comme frere ou amy, de me desnier vne chose qu'il m'auoit promis, laquelle ne leur pouuoit apporter que du bien ; & que en emmenant ce garçon, c'estoit pour contracter plus d'amitié auec eux & leurs voisins, que n'auions encores fait ; & que leur difficulté me faisoit auoir mauuaise opinion d'eux ; & que s'ils ne vouloient emmener ce garçon, ce que le Capitaine Yroquet m'auoit promis, ie n'aurois iamais d'amitié auec eux, car ils n'estoient pas enfans pour reietter ceste promesse. Alors ils me dirent qu'ils en estoient bien contens, mais que changeant de nourriture,

[a] Ancien emploi de *réussir* dans son sens étymologique de *sortir, avoir un résultat* (*bon ou mauvais*).

---

of this lad's journey, which I was anxious he should undertake. So I went ashore and demanded a pow-wow with the chiefs, who came to me ; and we sat down with many other Indians, leaders of their bands. I asked them why chief Iroquet, whom I considered to be my friend, had refused to take the youth with him. I said that it was not like a brother or a friend to deny me a thing which he had promised me, and which could bring only good to them all. If I wished them to take this youth, it was for the purpose of increasing our friendship with them and their neighbours, beyond what it had been : but their hesitation gave me a bad opinion of them, and if they would not take this lad with them, as chief Iroquet had promised me, I should never have any friendship with them ; for they were not children, that they should break this promise. Then they told me that they were quite satisfied to take the youth, but they were afraid that, if he

ils craignoient que n'estant si bien noury comme il auoit accoustumé, il ne luy arriua quelque mal dont ie pourrois estre fasché, & que c'estoit la seule cause de leur refus.

Ie leur fis responce que pour la vie qu'ils faisoient & des viures dont ils vsoient, ledit garçon s'y sçauroit bien accommoder, & que si par maladie ou fortune de guerre il luy suruenoit quelque mal, cela ne m'empescheroit de leur vouloir du bien, & que nous estions tous subiects aux accidens, qu'il failloit prendre en patience : Mais que s'ils le traitoyent mal, p. 261. & qu'il luy arriua quelque fortune par leur faute, qu'à la verité i'en serois mal content ; ce que ie n'esperois de leur part, ains[a] tout bien.

Ils me dirent, puis donc que tu as ce desir, nous l'emmenerons & le tiendrons comme nous autres : Mais tu prendras aussi vn ieune homme en sa place, qui ira en France : Nous

[a] Vieux mot = mais.

---

changed his diet, and were fed less well than he had been accustomed to, some harm might befall him, at which I might be angry, and this, they said, was the sole cause of their refusal.

I answered them that as to the life they led and the food they ate, the lad could well adapt himself to these, and that if from sickness or the fortune of war, any harm should happen to him, this would not prevent me from being kindly disposed to them ; for we were all liable to accidents which we ought to bear patiently. But I said that if they should illtreat him, and any misfortune happened to him through their fault, I should indeed be displeased. However, I did not look for such from them, but for the contrary.

They said to me : 'Since, then, you have this desire, we will take him along, and will treat him like one of ourselves. But you must take a young man in his place, who will go to France. We shall be very glad to have him report to us all

serõs bien aises qu'il nous rapporte ce qu'il aura veu de beau. Ie l'acceptay volontiers, & le prins. Il estoit de la nation des Ochateguins, & fut aussi fort aise de venir auec moy.[1] Cela donna plus de subiect de mieux traicter mon garçon, lequel i'esquippay de ce qui luy estoit necessaire, & promismes les vns aux autres de nous reuoir à la fin de Iuin.

Nous nous separasmes auec force promesses d'amitié. Ils s'en allerent donc du costé du grand saut de la riuiere de Canadas,[2] & moy, ie m'en retournay à Quebecq. En allant ie rencontray le Pont-graué, dedans le lac sainct Pierre,[3] qui m'attendoit auec vne grande pattache [4] qu'il auoit rencontree audit lac, qui n'auoit peu faire diligence de venir iusques où estoient les sauuages, pour estre trop lourde de nage.

Nous nous en retournasmes tous ensemble à Quebecq : puis ledit Pont-graué s'en alla à Tadoussac, pour mettre ordre à quelques affaires que nous auions en ces quartiers là ;

the fine things he has seen.' I gladly accepted the proposal, and took the young man. He was of the tribe of the Ochateguins, and was also very glad to come with me.[1] This gave an additional reason for the better treatment of my lad, whom I furnished with everything necessary. Then we promised one another to meet again at the end of June.

We separated with many protestations of friendship. They went off in the direction of the great rapid of the river of Canada,[2] and I went back to Quebec. On my way I met with Pont-Gravé on lake St. Peter,[3] who was waiting for me with a large patache [4] with which he had fallen in on that lake. This boat, being a heavy sailer, had been unable to make speed to the place where were the Indians.

We all returned to Quebec together. Then Pont-Gravé went on to Tadoussac, to arrange certain matters of ours in

---

[1] These were the Hurons. See pp. 179 and 184, where his name is given as Savignon.

[2] The Lachine rapids.

[3] See Vol. I, 138.

[4] See Vol. I, 8 and *cf.* p. 135.

p. 262. & moy ie demeuray à Quebecq pour faire redifier quelques pallissades au tour de nostre habitation, attendant le retour dudit Pont-graué, pour aduiser ensemblement à ce qui seroit necessaire de faire.

Le 4. de Iuin[1] des Marests arriua à Quebecq, qui nous resiouit fort : car nous doubtions[a] qu'il luy fut arriué quelque accident sur la mer.

Quelques iours aprés vn prisonnier Yroquois que i'y faisois garder, par la trop grande liberté que ie luy donnois s'en fuit & se sauua, pour la crainte & apprehension qu'il auoit : nonobstant les asseurances que luy donnoit vne femme de sa nation que nous auions en nostre habitation.[2]

Peu de iours aprés, le Pont-graué m'escriuit qu'il estoit en deliberation d'yuerner en l'habitatiō, pour beaucoup de considerations qui le mouuoient à ce faire. Ie luy rescriuy,

[a] *Doute* et *douter* ne contiennent plus guère l'idée de peur, qui survit toujours dans *redouter*, *redoutable*.

---

those parts, and I remained at Quebec to attend to some repairs to the palissades about our settlement, awaiting Pont-Gravé's return, in order to consult together as to what was necessary to be done.

On June 4[1] Des Marais arrived at Quebec, which pleased us greatly; for we were afraid that some accident had happened to him at sea.

Some days later, an Iroquois prisoner whom I kept there under guard, but to whom I allowed too great liberty, fled and escaped, out of sheer fear and terror and in spite of the assurances given him by a woman of his tribe whom we had in our settlement.[2]

A few days afterwards Pont-Gravé wrote to me that he was thinking of wintering in the settlement, being moved thereto by many considerations. I replied to him that if he

[1] *Sic pro* July.

[2] See p. 135.

que s'il croyoit mieux faire que ce que i'auois fait par le passé qu'il feroit bien.

Il fit donc diligence de faire apporter les commoditez necessaires pour ladite habitation.

Aprés que i'eu fait paracheuer la pallissade autour de nostre habitation, & remis toutes choses en estat, le Capitaine Pierre[1] reuint dans vne barque qui estoit allé à Tadoussac voir de ses p. 263. amis : & moy i'y fus aussi pour voir ce qui reussiroit[a] de la seconde traite & quelques autres affaires particulieres, que i'y auois. Où estant ie trouuay ledit Pont-graué qui me communiqua fort particulierement son dessin, & ce qui l'occasionnoit d'yuerner. Ie luy dis sainement[b] ce qu'il m'en sembloit, qui estoit, que ie croyois qu'il n'y proffiteroit pas beaucoup, selon les apparences certaines qui se pouuoient voir.

Il delibera donc changer de resolution, & despescha vne barque, & manda au Capitaine Pierre[1] qu'il reuint de Quebecq

[a] Voir ci-dessus, p. 140, note [a].

[b] C'est-à-dire *sincèrement*.

---

thought he could do better than in the past I had done, he would do well.

He then hastened to have the supplies necessary for the settlement brought to us.

When I had completed the palisade about our settlement and had put everything in order again, Captain Pierre,[1] who had gone to Tadoussac to see some friends, returned in a pinnace. I went there also to see how the second barter would turn out, as well as for certain other private business I had at that place. Upon my arrival I saw Pont-Gravé, who informed me very particularly regarding his plan, and his reasons for wintering at the settlement. I told him plainly how the thing struck me, namely that I thought he would get little advantage from it, according to all certain and clear appearances.

He thereupon decided to change his mind, and sent a pinnace with orders to Captain Pierre[1] to come back from pour quelques affaires qu'il auoit auec luy : & aussi que quelques vaisseaux, qui estoient venus de Brouage apporterent nouuelles, que monsieur de sainct Luc estoit venu en poste de Paris, & auoit chassé ceux de la Religion,[a] hors de Brouage, & renforcé la garnison de soldats, & s'en estoit retourné en Court : & que le Roy auoit esté tué, & deux ou trois iours aprés luy, le duc de Suilly, & deux autres seigneurs dont on ne sçauoit le nom.[1]

---

[1] Captain Pierre Chavin. See pp. 107, 119 and 135 *supra*.

Toutes ces nouuelles apporterent vn grand desplaisir aux vrais François,[2] qui estoient lors en ces quartiers là : Pour moy, il m'estoit fort malaisé de le croire, pour les diuers discours p. 264. qu'on en faisoit, qui n'auoient pas beaucoup d'apparence de verité : & toutesfois bien affligé d'entēdre de si mauuaises nouuelles.

[a] Expression elliptique, très courante au XVI^e^ et XVII^e^ siècles, pour désigner le protestantisme, c'est-à-dire *la religion* (*prétendue*) *réformée, la religion prétendue.*

Quebec for some business he had with him ; and he also sent word that some ships from Brouage had brought news that M. de Saint Luc having come by post from Paris, had driven the Protestants out of Brouage, had reinforced the garrison with soldiers, and had then returned to Court. Report said that the king had been killed, and two or three days later, the Duke de Sully and two other noblemen whose names were not known.[1]

All these reports brought great sorrow to the true Frenchmen [2] who were then in those parts. As for myself, it was very difficult to believe them, on account of the different versions which were told, and which had small appearance of truth. And yet I was much pained to hear such bad news.

[1] Henri IV had indeed been assassinated on May 14, on his way to visit Sully (1560–1641), but no nobleman had been. The Marquis de Saint-Luc (1580–1644) was at that time Governor of Brouage, Champlain's birth-place.

[2] In contrast to the Basques, etc.

Or aprés auoir seiourné trois ou quatre iours à Tadoussac, & veu la perte que firent beaucoup de marchans qui auoient chargé grande quantité de marchandises & equipé bon nombre de vaisseaux, esperant faire leurs affaires en la traite de Pelleterie, qui fut si miserable pour la quantité de vaisseaux, que plusieurs se souuiendront long temps de la perte qu'ils firent en ceste annee.[a] [1]

Ledit sieur de Pont-graué & moy, nous nous embarquasmes chacun dans vne barque, & laissasmes ledit Capitaine Pierre[2] au vaisseau & emmenasmes le Parc à Quebecq, où nous paracheuasmes de mettre ordre à ce qui restoit de l'habitation. Aprés que toutes choses furent en bon estat, nous resolusmes que ledit du Parc qui auoit yuerné auec le Capitaine Pierre[2] y demeuroit[b] derechef, & que le Capitaine Pierre reuiendroit aussi en France, pour quelques affaires qu'il y auoit, & l'y appelloient.

[a] Il faut changer le point en virgule et continuer l'alinéa.

[b] A lire *demeureroit.*

Now having stayed three or four days at Tadoussac I saw the loss incurred by many merchants who had loaded much merchandise and equipped many ships, hoping to do well in the fur-trade. This was so poor, for the number of vessels employed, that many will long remember the loss they sustained that year.[1]

The Sieur Pont-Gravé and I each embarked in a pinnace and left Captain Pierre[2] with the ship. We took Du Parc with us to Quebec, where we finished our repairs to the settlement. When everything was in good order, we decided that Du Parc, who had wintered with Captain Pierre,[2] should stay there again, and that Captain Pierre should also return to France, on account of business affairs which called him there.

[1] *Cf.* Grant's *Lescarbot,* iii. 22.

[2] See p. 144, note 1.

Nous laissasmes donc ledit du Parc, pour y commander, auec seize hommes, ausquels nous fismes vne remōstrance, de viure tous sagement en la crainte de Dieu, & auec toute l'obeissance qu'ils deuoient porter audit du Parc, qu'on leur p. 265. laissoit pour chef & conducteur, comme si l'vn de nous y demeuroit ; ce qu'ils promirent tous de faire, & de viure en paix les vns auec les autres.

Quand aux iardins nous les laissasmes bien garnis d'herbes potageres de toutes sortes, auec de fort beau bled d'Inde, & du froument, seigle & orge, qu'on auoit semé, & des vignes que i'y auois fait planter durant mon yuernement (qu'ils ne firent aucun estat de conseruer : car à mon retour, ie les trouuay toutes rompues, ce qui m'aporta beaucoup de desplaisir, pour le peu de soin qu'ils auoient eu à la conseruation d'vn si bon & beau plan, dont ie m'estois promis qu'il en reussiroit[a] quelque chose de bon.)

[a] Voir ci-dessus, p. 140, note [a].

Accordingly we left Du Parc in command with sixteen men, whom we admonished to live together discreetly in the fear of God, and to give to Du Parc, who was to be their chief and leader, all due obedience, the same as if one of us had remained behind. They all promised to do this and to live in peace with one another.

As for the gardens, we left these well provided with kitchen vegetables of all sorts, as also with very fine Indian corn, with wheat, rye and barley, which had been sown, and with vines which I had had planted there during my winter's stay. These they took no care to preserve ; for on my return I found them all broken down, and was much displeased at the small amount of care they had taken in the preservation of a good and fine plot, out of which I had hoped to get something worth while.

Aprés auoir veu toutes choses en bon estat, nous partismes de Quebecq, le 8. du mois d'Aoust, pour aller à Tadoussac, afin de faire apareiller nostre vaisseau ; ce qui fut promptement fait.

Retour en France. Rencontre d'vne balaine, & de la façon qu'on les prent.

CHAP. III.

LE 13. dudit mois nous partismes de Tadoussac, & arriuasmes à l'isle Percee[1] le lendemain, où nous trouuasmes quantité de vaisseaux faisant pesche de poisson sec & vert.

Le 18. dudit mois, nous partismes de l'isle Percee[1] & p. 266. passames par la hauteur de 42. degrez de latitude, sans auoir aucune cognoissance du grand banc, où se fait la pesche du poisson vert, pour ledit lieu estre trop estroit en ceste hauteur.

Having seen that everything was in good order, we left Quebec on the eighth of the month of August and went to Tadoussac in order to prepare our ship for sea, and this was promptly done.

Return to France. Meeting with a whale and how these are taken.

CHAPTER III

ON the thirteenth of the month we set sail from Tadoussac and arrived on the following day at isle Percée,[1] where we found a number of vessels, catching fish and curing them.

On the eighteenth of the month we left isle Percée[1] and made our way as far as latitude 42° without having any knowledge of the Grand Bank where the green fishery is carried on, because it is too narrow at this latitude.

---

[1] See p. 9, note 4, and p. 108, note 1.

Estant comme à demy trauersé, nous rencontrasmes vne balaine qui estoit endormie, & le vaisseau passant par dessus, luy fit vne fort grande ouuerture proche de la queue, qui la fit biē tost resueiller sans que nostre vaisseau en fut endomage, & ietta grāde abbondāce de sang.

Il m'a semblé n'estre hors de propos de faire icy vne petite description de la pesche des balaines, que plusieurs n'ont veue, & croyent qu'elles se prennēt à coups de canon, d'autant qu'il y a de si impudens menteurs qui l'affermēt à ceux qui n'en sçauent rien. Plusieurs me l'ont soustenu obstinemēt sur ces faux raports.

Ceux donc qui sont plus adroits à ceste pesche sont les Basques, lesquels pour ce faire mettent leurs vaisseaux en vn port de seureté, ou proche de là où ils iugent y auoir quantité de ballaines, & équipent plusieurs chalouppes garnies de bons hommes & haussieres, qui sont petites cordes faites du meilleur chanure qui se peut recouurer, ayant de lōgeur pour le moins

---

When we were about half-way across, we met with a whale which was asleep. The vessel passing over it, cut a very large opening near its tail, awakening it very quickly, and causing it to shed a great quantity of blood. Our vessel received no damage whatever.

It has seemed to me not inappropriate to describe here briefly the capture of whales which many have not seen. Some think that they are taken by cannon-shot; for there are liars so impudent as to assert this to those who have no knowledge thereof. Many have stoutly maintained to me the truth of this on the strength of these false reports.

The cleverest men at this fishing are the Basques, who, in order to carry it on, place their vessels in a safe port, or near the spot where they judge there are many whales, and then they man with stout sailors a number of shallops, and equip them with lines. These are small ropes made of the best hemp that can be found, having a length of at least one

cent cinquante brasses, & ont force pertusanes longues de p. 267. demie pique qui ont le fer large de six pouces, d'autres d'vn pied & demy & deux de long, bien tranchantes. Ils ont en chacune chalouppe vn harponneur, qui est vn homme des plus dispos & adroits d'entre eux ; aussi tire il les plus grands salaires aprés les maistres, d'autant que c'est l'office le plus hazardeux. Ladite chalouppe estant hors du port, ils regardent de toutes parts s'ils pourront voir & descouurir quelque balaine, allant à la borde[a] d'vn costé & d'autre : & ne voyant rien, ils vont à terre & se mettent sur vn promontoire, le plus haut qu'ils trouuent pour descouurir de plus loing, où ils mettēt vn hōme en sentinelle, qui aperceuāt la balaine, qu'ils descouurēt tant par sa grosseur, que par l'eau qu'elle iette par les esuans,[b] qui est plus d'vn poinçon à la fois, & de la hauteur de deux lances ; & à ceste eau qu'elle iette, ils iugent ce qu'elle peut rendre d'huille. Il y en à telle d'où l'on en

[a] Il faudrait probablement lire *bordée*.

[b] Lire *esuents* = évents.

---

hundred and fifty fathoms. They have also many halberds, half a pike long, armed with an iron blade, six inches wide, and others a foot and a half or two feet long and very sharp. In each shallop there is a harpooner, who is one of the most nimble and wide-awake among them ; and since his part is the most dangerous, he, after the masters, draws the highest pay.

When the shallop has come outside the harbour, the men look in all directions to catch sight of a whale, whilst they tack from side to side. If they see nothing, they land and place themselves upon the highest point they can find in order to have as wide a view as possible. Here they station a look-out for the whale. They are able to discover it both from its size and by the water which it spouts from its blow-holes, which amounts each time to a hogshead, and is blown as high as the length of two lances. From the quantity of water thrown up one estimates the amount of oil which the whale

peut tirer iusques à six vingts poinçons, d'autres moins. Or voyant cet espouuantable poisson, ils s'embarquent promptemēt dās leurs chalouppes, & à force de rames ou de vent, vont iusques à ce qu'ils soient dessus. La voyant entre deux eaues, à mesme instant l'harponneur est au deuāt de la chalouppe auec vn harpon, qui est vn fer long de deux p. 268. pieds & demy de large par le bas, emmanché en vn baston de la longueur d'vne demie pique, où au milieu il y a vn trou où s'attache la haussiere, & aussi tost que ledit harponneur voit son temps, il iette son harpon sur la balaine, lequel entre fort auant, & incontinēt qu'elle se sent blessée, elle va au fonds de l'eau. Et si d'aduenture en se retournāt quelque fois, auec sa queue elle rencontre la chalouppe, ou les hommes, elle les brise aussi facilement qu'vn verre. C'est tout le hazard qu'ils courēt d'estre tuez en la harponnant : Mais aussitost qu'ils ont ietté le harpon dessus, ils laissent filer leur haussiere,

---

will produce. There are some from which you can get as much as six score hogsheads, but others give less.

Now when they see this enormous fish, they quickly get into their shallop and by dint of rowing or by help of the wind, reach the spot where they are over the whale. When it is seen near the surface, instantly the harpooner is in the bow of the boat with a harpoon, which is an iron weapon two feet long and half a foot wide at the lower part, set in a shaft half a pike in length. At mid-length there is a hole, where the line is fastened. As soon as the harpooner sees his chance, he throws his harpoon, which penetrates very deeply into the whale. Directly the whale feels itself wounded, it goes to the bottom, and if by chance in turning it strikes with its tail the shallop or the men, it crushes them as easily as a tumbler. This is the only risk they run of being killed, whilst harpooning; but as soon as they have thrown the harpoon, they let their line run out, until the whale reaches

iusques à ce que la balaine soit au fonds : & quelque fois cōme elle n'y va pas droit, elle entraine la chalouppe plus de huit ou neuf lieues, & va aussi viste cōme vn cheual, & sont le plus souuent contraints de coupper leur haussiere, craignant que la balaine ne les attire soubs l'eau : Mais aussi quand elle va au fonds tout droit, elle y repose quelque peu, & puis reuient tout doucement sur l'eau : & à mesure qu'elle monte, ils rembarquent leur haussiere peu à peu : & puis comme elle est dessus, ils se mettent deux ou trois chalouppes autour auec leurs pertusanes, desquelles ils luy dōnent plusieurs coups, & se sentant frappee, elle descend de rechef soubs l'eau en perdant son sang, & s'affoiblit de telle façō, qu'elle n'a plus de force ne vigueur, & reuenant sur l'eau ils acheuent de la p. 269. tuer : & quand elle est morte, elle ne va plus au fonds de l'eau, lors ils l'attachent auec de bonnes cordes, & la trainent à terre, au lieu où ils font leur degrat,[a] qui est l'endroit où ils

---

[a] *Degrat* (= degré), mot d'origine provençale, qui semble marquer ici l'endroit où un navire débarque son chargement, le débarcadère. Voir le Dictionnaire de Littré et le Grand Dictionnaire Larousse.

---

the bottom. And since it does not go straight down, it sometimes drags the shallop some eight or nine leagues, travelling as fast as a horse. And very often the men are forced to cut the line, for fear lest the whale should drag them under the water. But when the creature goes straight to the bottom, it stays there for a while, and then it slowly comes up to the surface. As it rises they haul in their line little by little. And when the whale comes up, two or three shallops surround it, and the men with their halberds give it many thrusts. Feeling itself struck it goes down again under the water, losing blood, and growing so weak that it has no more strength or vigour. When it comes again to the surface, they finally kill it. When dead it no longer sinks to the bottom, and they tie strong ropes to it and tow it ashore to the place where they do their curing, that is to say where

font fondre le lard de ladite balaine, pour en auoir l'huille.[1] Voila la façon que elles se peschēt, & non à coups de canon, ainsi que plusieurs pensēt, comme i'ay dit cy dessus. Pour reprendre le fil de mon discours, Aprés la blessure de la balaine cy deuant, nous prismes quantité de marsouins, que nostre contre maistre harponna, dont nous receusmes du plaisir & contentement.

Aussi prismes nous quantité de poisson à la grād oraille auec vne ligne & vn aim, où nous attachions vn petit poisson ressemblant au harang, & la laissions trainer derriere le vaisseau, & la grand oreille pensant en effect que se fut vn poisson vif, venoit pour l'engloutir, & se trouuoit aussitost prins à l'aim qui estoit passé dans le corps du petit poisson. Il est tresbon, & a de certaines aigrettes qui sont fort belles & aggreables, comme celles qu'on porte aux pennaches.

Le 22. de Septembre, nous arriuasmes sur la sonde, &

they melt the fat of the whale, in order to obtain the oil.[1] That is the way in which whales are caught, and they are not shot with cannon, which is what many think, as I have stated above.

But to resume. After wounding the whale as mentioned above, we took many porpoises which our mate harpooned, and from this we had pleasure and satisfaction. We caught also many tunnies with hook and line, to which we fastened a small fish resembling a herring, and which we allowed to trail behind the vessel. And the tunny, thinking it was really a live fish, would come to swallow it, and would soon be caught on the hook which had gone into the body of the little fish. The tunny is very good and has certain tufts which are very handsome and pleasant, resembling those which people wear in plumes.

On September 22 we came into soundings, and sighted aduisasmes vingt vaisseaux qui estoiēt à quelque quatre lieux à l'Ouest de nous, que nous iugions estre Flamans à les voir p. 270. de nostre vaisseau.

---

[1] See Ganong's Denys, *Description géographique et historique*, 324–25, Champlain Society, 1908.

Et le 25. dudit mois nous eusmes la veue de l'isle de Grenezé,[1] aprés auoir eu vn grand coup de vent, qui dura iusques sur le midy.

Le 27. dudit mois arriuasmes à Honfleur.[2]

---

twenty vessels some four leagues to the west of us, which we took to be Flemish ; for such they appeared from our ship. On the twenty-fifth of the month we sighted the island of Guernsey,[1] after a stiff blow which lasted till noon. On the twenty-seventh of the month we arrived at Honfleur.[2]

[1] One of the Channel islands.

[2] See p. 109, note 2.

p. 271.

LE TROISIESME

VOYAGE DV SIEVR DE
Champlain en l'annee 1611.

THE THIRD

VOYAGE OF THE SIEUR DE
Champlain in the year 1611.

Partement de France pour retourner en la nouuelle France. Les dangers & autres choses qui arriuerent iusques en l'habitation.

CHAP. I.

NOUS partismes de Honfleur,[1] le premier iour de Mars auec vent fauorable iusques au huictiesme dudit mois, & depuis fusmes contrariés du vent de Su Surouest & Ouest Norouest qui nous fit aller iusques à la hauteur de 42. degrez de latitude, sans pouuoir esleuer Su, pour nous mettre au droit chemin de nostre routte. Aprés donc auoir eu plusieurs coups de vent, & esté contrariés de mauuais tẽps : Et neãtmoins, auec tant de peines & trauaux, à force de tenir à vn bort & à l'autre, nous fismes en sorte que nous arriuasmes à quelque 80. lieux du grand banc où se fait la pesche du poisson vert,[2] où nous rencontrasmes des glaces de

---

Departure from France to return to New France. The dangers and other things which occurred until we reached the settlement.

CHAPTER I

WE set sail from Honfleur[1] on the first day of March with favourable winds till the eighth of the month. After that we were delayed by contrary winds from the S.S.W. and W.N.W., which drove us as far as latitude 42°, without our being able to make a southing, in order to take our direct course. Having in this way experienced several storms and been retarded by the bad weather, we still, with much difficulty and labour, by dint of going on one tack and then on the other, succeeded in reaching a point some eighty leagues from the Grand Bank, where the green fishing is carried on.[2] Here we met with icebergs

[1] See p. 109, note 2.

[2] See Grant's *Lescarbot,* iii. 138 *et seq.*, and Ganong's Denys, *Description*, etc., 269, *et seq.*

plus de trente à quarante brasses de haut, qui nous fit bien penser à ce que nous deuions faire, craignant d'en rencontrer p. 272. d'autres la nuit, & que le vent venant à changer, nous poussast contre, iugeant bien que ce ne seroit les dernieres, d'autāt que nous estiōs partis de trop bonne heure de France. Nauigeant donc le long de cedit iour à basse voile au plus prés du vent que nous pouuions, la nuit estant venue, il se leua vne brume si espoisse, & si obscure, qu'à peine voy[i]ons nous la longueur du vaisseau. Enuiron sur les onze heures de nuit les matelots aduiserēt d'autres glaces qui nous donnerēt de l'apprehensiō, mais enfin nous fismes tant auec la diligence des mariniers, que nous les esuitasmes. Pensant auoir passé les dāgers nous vinsmes à en rencōtrer vne deuāt nostre vaisseau que les matelots apperceurent, & non si tost que nous fusmes presques portez dessus. Et comme vn chacun se recommendoit à Dieu, ne pensant iamais esuiter le danger

---

more than thirty, or even forty, fathoms high, which made us consider what we were to do ; for we feared lest we might meet with them during the night and lest the wind, veering about, should drive us against them, suspecting indeed that these would not be the last, inasmuch as we had set out from France very early in the season. We sailed that day then with little sail and as near the wind as we could, and when night came on there arose such a thick, heavy mist that we could hardly see the length of the ship. About eleven o'clock at night the sailors noticed more icebergs, which frightened us, but in the end we made such efforts, joined to the diligence of the sailors, that we avoided them. When we thought we had passed all danger, we came upon one directly ahead of our ship, which the sailors sighted only just in time not to run into it. And as each one committed himself to God, thinking we should never escape the danger of that iceberg

de ceste glace qui estoit soubs nostre beau pré, l'on crioit au gouuerneur qu'il fit porter : Car ladite glace, qui estoit fort grande driuoit au vent d'vne telle façon qu'elle passa contre le bord de nostre vaisseau, qui demeura court comme s'il n'eust bougé pour la laisser passer, sans toutesfois l'offencer : Et bien que nous fussions hors du danger: si est ce que[a] le sang d'vn chacun ne fut si promptement rassis, pour p. 273. l'apprehention qu'on en auoit eue ; & louasmes Dieu de nous auoir deliurez de ce peril. Aprés cestuy là passé, ceste mesme nuit nous en passames deux ou trois autres, non moins dangereux que les premiers, auec vne brume pluuieuse & froide au possible, & de telle façon que l'on ne se pouuoit presque rechauffer. Le lendemain continuant nostre routte nous rencontrasmes plusieurs autres grandes & fort hautes glaces, qui sembloient des isles à les voir de loin, toutes lesquelles euitasmes, iusques à ce que nous arriuasmes sur ledit grand banc, où nous fusmes fort contrariez de mauuais temps l'espace de six iours : Et le vent venant à estre vn

[a] Locution vieillie, où le *si* a le sens de *néanmoins, pourtant*.

---

which was already under our bowsprit, we shouted to the helmsman to bear off. The great mass of ice was driving before the wind so fast that it passed close to our vessel, without striking it, but the ship stopped as if to let it go by. Although we were out of danger, yet each one's blood cooled down slowly from the fright we had had ; and we praised God for having delivered us from this peril. After passing that one, the same night we escaped two or three others not less dangerous than the first, in the midst of a fog so wet and cold that we could scarcely keep warm. On the following day as we continued on our course we met with several other large and very high icebergs, which, from a distance, seemed to be islands. All these we avoided and arrived on the Grand Bank where we were delayed by bad weather for the space of six days. The wind having fallen a little and being

peu plus doux & assez fauorable, nous desbanquasmes par la hauteur de 44. degrez & demy de latitude, qui fut le plus Su que peusmes aller. Aprés auoir fait quelque 60. lieues à l'Ouest-norouest nous apperceusmes vn vaisseau qui venoit nous recognoistre, & puis fit porter à l'Est-nordest, pour esuiter vn grand banc de glace contenāt toute l'estādue de nostre veue. Et iugeans qu'il pouuoit auoir passage par le milieu de ce grand banc, qui estoit separé en deux, pour parfaire nostre dite routte nous entrasmes dedans & y fismes quelque 10. lieues sans voir autre apparence que de beau passage iusques au soir, que nous trouuasmes ledit banc seelé, p. 274. qui nous dōna bien à penser ce que nous auions à faire, la nuit venant, & au defaut de la lune; qui nous ostoit tout moien de pouuoir retourner d'où nous estions venus : & neantmoins aprés auoir bien pensé, il fut resolu de rechercher nostre entree à quoy nous nous mismes en deuoir : Mais la nuict venant auec brumes, pluye & neges & vn vent si impetueux

---

rather favourable, we left the banks in latitude 44° 30′, which was the farthest south that we could get. Having sailed some sixty leagues to W.N.W., we sighted a vessel, which drew near to see who we were, and then bore away to the E.N.E. to avoid a great bank of ice which extended as far as we could see. Thinking there might be a passage through the middle of this great bank, which was separated in two, and in order to finish our journey, we entered this opening, and sailed some ten leagues, without seeing anything but a free passage until evening, when we found the passage closed. This gave us much anxiety as to what we should do, with night coming on and no moon. There seemed no possible way for us to return whence we had come. Still, after due reflection, we decided to make an effort to find the opening by which we had entered, and this we set about to do; but with night, came on fog, rain, snow and such a high wind that

que nous ne pouuions presque porter nostre grand papefi, nous osta toute cognoissance de nostre chemin. Car comme nous croyons esuiter lesdites glaces pour passer, le vent auoit desia fermé le passage; de façon que nous fusmes cōtraincts de retourner à l'autre bord, & n'auions loisir d'estre vn quart d'heure sur vn bord amurés, pour r'amurer sur l'autre, afin d'esuiter milles glaces qui estoiēt de tous costez: & plus de 20. fois ne pensions sortir nos vies sauues. Toute la nuict se passa en peines & trauaux: & iamais ne fut mieux fait le quart, car parsonne n'auoit enuie de reposer, mais biē de s'esuertuer de sortir des glaces & perils. Le froid estoit si grand que tous les maneuures dudit vaisseau estoient si gelez & pleins de gros glacōs, que l'ō ne pouuoit manouurer, ny se tenir sur le Tillac dudit vaisseau. Aprés donc auoir bien couru d'vn costé & d'autre, attendant le iour, qui nous p. 275. donnoit quelque esperance: lequel venu auec vne brume, voyant que le trauail & fatigue ne pouuoit nous seruir, nous

we could hardly carry our mainsail, and we lost all bearings of our route. For, when we thought we could avoid the ice and pass through, the wind had already closed the passage. Hence we were forced to return on the other tack, and we could not remain longer than a quarter of an hour on one tack, before making the other tack, in order to avoid thousands of floes on all sides. More than a score of times we thought we should not come off alive. The whole night was spent amid difficulties and labours. Never was the watch better kept; for nobody had any desire to sleep, but rather to struggle to get out of the dangerous ice. The cold was so great that all the ship's running rigging was so frozen and covered with big icicles that we could not work it nor stand upon the vessel's deck. Having manœuvred then from side to side, we waited for daylight to give us hope. But when day came, bringing fog, we saw that labour and fatigue would

resolusmes d'aller à vn banc de glace, où nous pourrions estre à l'abri du grand vent qu'il faisoit, & amener tout bas, & nous laisser driuer comme lesdites glaces, afin que quand nous les aurions quelque peu esloignees nous remissions à la voile, pour aller retrouuer ledit bāc, & faire comme auparauant, attendāt que la brume fut passée, pour pouuoir sortir le plus promptement que nous pourrions. Nous fusmes ainsi tout le iour iusques au lendemain matin, où nous mismes à la voille, allant tantost d'vn costé & d'autre, & n'allions en aucun endroit que ne nous trouuasions enfermez en de grands bancs de glaces, comme en des estangs qui sont en terre. Le soir apperceusmes vn vaisseau, qui estoit de l'autre costé d'vn desdicts bancs de glace, qui, ie m'asseure, n'estoit point moins en soing que nous, & fusmes quatre ou cinq iours en ce peril en extremes peines, iusques à ce qu'a vn matin iettans la veue de tous costez nous n'apperceusmes aucun passage, sinon à vn endroit où l'on iugea que la glace n'estoit espoisse, & que facillement nous la pourrions passer.

be of no service to us, and decided to lie alongside a bank of ice where we should be sheltered from the high wind that was blowing, and to lower all sails and let ourselves drift like the ice, in order that, when we had got some distance away from the ice, we might hoist sail again, and go back to the bank of ice and do as we did before, waiting for the fog to lift, when we should come out of the ice as quickly as possible. We lay thus all day until the following morning, when we set sail, tacking from side to side, and nowhere did we go that we did not find ourselves shut in by great banks of ice, as if we were in ponds on land. In the evening we sighted a vessel which was on the other side of one of the banks of ice, and it was in no less anxiety, I am sure, than were we. We remained four or five days in this extreme danger, until one morning as we looked about us in all directions, we saw indeed no passage, but a place where we judged the ice not to be thick,

Nous nous mismes en deuoir & passames par quãtité de bourguignons, qui sont morceaux de glace separez des grands bancs par la violance des vents. Estans paruenus audit banc p. 276. de glasse, les matelots commencerent à s'armer de grands auirons, & autres bois pour repousser les bourguignons que pourrions rencontrer, & ainsi passasmes ledit banc, qui ne fut pas sans bien aborder des morceaux de glace qui ne firent nul bien à nostre vaisseau, toutesfois sans nous faire dommage qui peust nous offencer. Estant hors nous louasmes Dieu de nous auoir deliurez. Continuans nostre routte le lendemain, nous en rencontrasmes d'autres, & nous engageasmes de telle façon dedans, que nous nous trouuasmes enuironés de tous costés, sinõ par où nous estions venus, qui fut occasiõ qu'il nous fallut retourner sur nos brisees pour essayer de doubler la pointe du costé du Su : ce que ne peusmes faire que le deuxiesme iour, passant par plusieurs petits glaçons separez dudit grand banc, qui estoit par la hauteur de 44. degrez & demy, & singlasmes iusques au

---

and where we could easily pass through. We made for this spot and passed many *bourguignons*, which are pieces of ice separated from the great masses by the violence of the winds. On reaching the bank of ice, the sailors armed themselves with great bars and other pieces of wood to ward off the *bourguignons* we might meet, and in this way we cleared the bank, but not without striking smaller pieces, which did no good to our vessel, although no very great harm was done to us. Being outside, we praised God for our deliverance. On the following day we kept on our way, and met with other ice-fields in which we became entangled, so that we found ourselves surrounded on all sides except at the place where we had come in. Hence we were obliged to retrace our steps, and try to double the southern point. This we were not able to do until the second day, when in latitude 44° 30′, we passed several small blocks of ice, which had been separated

lendemain matin, faisant le Norouest & Nor-norouest, que nous rencontrasmes vn autre grand banc de glace, tant que nostre veue se pouuoit estendre deuers l'Est & l'Ouest, lequel quand l'on l'apperceut l'on croioit que ce fut terre : car ledit banc estoit si vny que l'on eust dit proprement que cela auoit esté ainsi fait exprés, & auoit plus de dixhuit pieds de p. 277. haut, & deux fois autant soubs l'eau, & faisions estat de n'estre qu'à quelque quinze lieues du cap Breton, qui estoit le vingtsixiesme iour dudit mois.[1] Ces rencontres de glaces si souuent nous apportoient beaucoup de desplaisir : croyant aussi que le passage dudit cap Breton & cap de Raye [2] seroit fermé, & qu'il nous faudroit tenir la mer long temps deuant que de trouuer passage. Ne pouuans donc rien faire nous fumes contraincts de nous remettre à la mer quelque quatre ou cinq lieues pour doubler vne autre pointe dudit grād banc, qui nous demeuroit à l'Ouest-surouest, & aprés retournames

from the great bank, and sailed towards the N.W. and N.N.W. until the following morning, when we met with another great bank of ice extending from east to west as far as the eye could reach; and when you saw it, you thought it was land; for it was so level that you would have really said it had been made so on purpose. It was more than eighteen feet high, with twice as much under the water. And on the twenty-sixth day of the month [1] we estimated that we were only some fifteen leagues from cape Breton. These frequent encounters with ice annoyed us much. We thought also that the passage between cape Breton and cape Ray [2] would be closed, and that we should have to keep out to sea a long time before finding an opening. Hence, being unable to make headway, we were forced to put to sea again for a distance of some four or five leagues in order to double another point of the same great ice-bank, which lay to the W.S.W. of us; and then

---

[1] April?

[2] Cabot strait. See p. 170.

à l'autre bord au Norouest, pour doubler lad. pointe, & singlasmes quelques sept lieues, & puis fismes le Nor-norouest quelque trois lieues, où nous apperçusmes derechef vn autre banc de glace. La nuit s'approchoit, & la brume se leuoit, qui nous fit mettre à la mer pour passer le reste de la nuit attendant le iour, pour retourner recognoistre lesdites glaces. Le vintseptiesme iour dud. mois, nous aduisasmes terre à l'Ouest-norouest de nous, & ne vismes aucunes glaces qui nous peussēt demourer au Nor-nordest : Nous approchasmes de plus prés pour la mieux recognoistre, & vismes que c'estoit p. 278. Campseau,[1] qui nous fit porter au Nort pour aller à l'isle du cap Breton, nous n'eusmes pas plustost fait deux lieues que rencontrasmes vn banc de glace qui fuioit au Nordest. La nuit venant nous fusmes contraincts de nous mettre à la mer iusques au lendemain, que fismes le Nordest, & rencontrasmes vne autre glace qui nous demeuroit à l'Est & Est-suest, & la costoyasmes, mettant le cap au Nordest &

we went back on the other tack to the north-west, in order to double this point, and sailed some seven leagues and then headed N.N.W. some three leagues, where we sighted another ice-bank. Night was approaching and a fog was coming up which made us head out to sea to spend the rest of the night waiting for daylight so that we might return and reconnoitre these ice-banks. On the twenty-seventh of the month we sighted land to the W.N.W. of us, and saw no ice lying to the N.N.E. We came closer in to examine the land better, and found that it was Canso,[1] and accordingly headed north to make Cape Breton island, but we had not gone more than two leagues when we met with an ice-bank which stretched to the north-east. Night coming on, we were obliged to put to sea until the following day, when we headed north-east and met with another ice-bank, which lay to the east and E.S.E., along which we coasted, steering north and north-east for

---

[1] See Vol. I, 465.

au Nor plus de quinze lieux : En fin fusmes contraincts de refaire l'Ouest, qui nous dōna beaucoup de desplaisir, voyant que ne pouuions trouuer passage, & fusmes contraincts de nous en retirer & retourner sur nos brisees : & le mal pour nous que le calme nous prit de telle façon que la houle nous pensa ietter sur la coste dudit banc de glace, & fusmes prests de mettre nostre batteau hors, pour nous seruir au besoin. Quand nous nous fussions sauuez sur lesdites glaces il ne nous eut seruy que de nous faire languir, & mourir tous miserables. Comme nous estions donc en deliberation de mettre nostredit batteau hors, vne petite fraischeur se leua, qui nous fit grand plaisir, & par ainsi éuitasmes lesdites glaces. Comme nous eusmes fait deux lieues, la nuit venoit auec vne brume fort espoisse, qui fut occasion que nous amenasmes pour ne pouuoir voir : & aussi qu'il y auoit plusieurs grādes glaces en nostre routte, que craignions abborder : & demeurasmes ainsi toute la nuit iusques au lendemain ,vingt- p. 279.

---

more than fifteen leagues. Finally we were forced to head again to the west, which vexed us greatly, seeing that we were unable to find an opening and were forced to draw back and to retrace our steps. And unfortunately for us, a calm fell upon us in such a way that the swell very nearly cast us against the ice-bank, and we were on the point of launching our boat, to use in case of need. Even had we escaped on this ice the only result would have been that we should all have starved miserably to death. As we were deliberating whether we should launch our boat, a light breeze sprang up, which pleased us greatly, and by it we escaped from the said ice.

After we had gone two leagues, night came on with a very thick fog, which made us strike sail ; for we could not see, and besides there were several large fields of ice in our way into which we feared we might run. And thus we remained all night, until the following day, which was the twenty-ninth

neufiesme iour dudit mois, que la brume renforca de telle façon, qu'à peine pouuoit on voir la longueur du vaisseau, & faisoit fort peu de vent : neātmoins nous ne laissasmes de nous appareiller pour esuiter lesdites glaces : mais pensans nous desgager, nous nous y trouuasmes si embarrassez, que nous ne sçauions de quel bort amurer : & derechef fusmes contraints d'amener, & nous laisser driuer iusques à ce que lesdites glaces nous fissent appareiller, & fismes cent bordees d'vn costé & d'autre, & pensasmes nous perdre par plusieurs fois : & le plus asseuré y perdroit tout iugement ; ce qu'eust aussi bien fait le plus grand astrologue du monde. Ce qui nous donnoit du desplaisir d'auātage, c'estoit le peu de veue, & la nuit qui venoit, & n'auions refuite d'vn quart de lieue sans trouuer banc ou glaces, & quantité de bourguignons, que le moindre eust esté suffisant de faire perdre quelque vaisseau que ce fust. Or comme nous estions tousiours cottoyans au tour des glaces, il s'esleua vn vent si impetueux

of the month, when the fog thickened so much that one could scarcely see the length of the ship, and there was very little wind. Yet we failed not to attempt to set sail in order to get out of the ice. But though we thought to free ourselves, we found ourselves so hemmed in that we did not know which way to tack. And once again we were forced to lower sail and to let ourselves drift until the ice made us hoist sail, and we tacked a hundred times from side to side and several times just escaped destruction. Here the coolest would quite lose his head, as well indeed as the greatest astrologer alive. What worried us still more was the short distance we could see, and the approach of night, nor could we do a leg of a quarter of a league without meeting icebergs, great or small, and also much floating ice, the smallest piece of which would have been sufficient to sink any vessel afloat.

Now, as we were still coasting about among these icebergs, such a strong wind arose that it very quickly dispersed qu'en peu de tēps il separa la brume, & fit faire veue, & en moins d'vn rien rendit l'air clair, & beau soleil. Regardant au tour de nous, nous nous vismes enfermez dedans vn petit p. 280. estang, qui ne contenoit pas lieue & demie en rondeur, & apperçeusmes l'isle dudit cap Breton, qui nous demeuroit au Nort, presque à quatre lieues, & iugeasmes que le passage estoit encore fermé iusques audit cap Breton. Nous apperceusmes aussi vn petit banc de glace au derriere de nostredit vaisseau, & la grand mer qui paroissoit au delà, qui nous fit prendre resolution de passer par dessus ledit banc, qui estoit rompu : ce que nous fismes dextremēt sans offencer nostredit vaisseau, & nous nous mismes à la mer toute la nuit, & fismes le Suest desdites glaces. Et comme nous iugeasmes que nous pouuions doubler ledit bāc de glace, nous fismes l'Est-nordest quelques quinze lieues, & apperceusmes seulement vne petite glace, & la nuit amenasmes iusques au lendemain, que nous apperceusmes vn autre banc de glace au Nord de nous, qui continuoit tant que nostre veue se pouuoit estendre,

---

the fog, opened up the view, and in no time gave us a clear sky and a bright sun. When we looked about us, we saw that we were enclosed within a small pond, less than a league and a half in circumference, and we caught sight of Cape Breton island, lying almost four leagues to the north of us, and we supposed that the passage to Cape Breton was still closed. We saw also a small bank of ice astern of us and beyond it the open sea which made us decide to pass through the ice-bank which was loose. We accomplished this quite dexterously without injuring our vessel, and put out to sea for the night, heading to the south-east of the icebergs. And when we judged that we could double the bank of ice, we sailed E.N.E. some fifteen leagues, and saw only one small berg. At night we lowered sail till the following morning, when we saw another ice-bank to the north of us, stretching as far as the eye could reach. Having drifted to within

& auions driué à demy lieue prés, & mismes les voiles haut,
cottoyant tousiours ladite glace pour en trouuer l'extremité.
Ainsi que nous singlions nous auisasmes vn vaisseau le premier
iour de May qui estoit parmy les glaces, qui auoit bien eu
de la peine d'en sortir aussi bien que nous, & mismes vent
p. 281. deuant pour attendre ledit vaisseau qui faisoit large sur
nous, d'autant que desirons sçauoir s'il n'auoit point veu
d'autres glaces. Quand il fut proche, nous apperçeusmes
que c'estoit le fils du sieur de Poitrincourt qui alloit trouuer
son pere qui estoit à l'habitatiō du port Royal[1] ; & y auoit
trois mois qu'il estoit party de France (ie crois que ce ne
fut pas sans beaucoup de peine) & s'ils[a] estoient encore à prés
de cent quarante lieues dudit port Royal, bien à l'escart de
leur routte. Nous leur dismes que nous auions eu cog-
noissance des isles de Campseau,[2] qui à mon opiniō les asseura
beaucoup, d'autāt qu'ils n'auoient point encore eu cognois-

[a] Entendez : *et si ils estoient . . . = et pourtant . . .* (Voir ci-dessus, p. 159, note [a].)

---

about half a league of it we hoisted sail, and ran along the ice-bank to find the end of it.

As we were sailing along, we sighted, on the first of May, amongst the ice, a vessel, which, like us, had had difficulty in getting out of it. We ran up into the wind to wait for this vessel, which was bearing down upon us ; for we wanted to know whether she had not seen other ice-fields. When she drew near, we saw that it was the Sieur de Poutrincourt's son, who was on his way to visit his father at the settlement at Port Royal,[1] and he had left France three months previously (not without much difficulty, I imagine), and yet he and his crew were nearly a hundred and forty leagues from Port Royal, a long way out of their proper course. We told them that we had sighted the islands of Canso,[2] which I think reassured them greatly, inasmuch as they had not yet sighted

---

[1] See Vol. I, 256.

[2] Either cape Canso or Arichat at the mouth of the gulf of Canso. See Vol. I, 465.

sance d'aucune terre, & s'en alloiēt dōner droit entre le cap S. Laurēs,[1] & cap de Raye,[2] par où ils n'eussent pas trouué led. port Royal, si ce n'eust esté en trauersant les terres. Aprés auoir quelque peu parlé ensemble, nous nous departismes chacun suiuant sa routte. Le lendemain nous eusmes cognoissance des isles sainct Pierre,[3] sans trouuer glace aucune : & continuant nostre routte, le lendemain troisiesme iour du mois eusmes cognoissance du cap de Raye,[2] sans aussi trouuer glaces. Le quatriesme dudit mois eusmes cognoissance de l'isle sainct Paul,[4] & cap sainct Laurens [1] : & estiōs à quelques huit lieues au Nord dudit cap S. Laurens. Le lendemain eusmes cognoissance de Gaspé. Le septiesme iour dudit mois fusmes contrariez p. 282. du vent de Norouest, qui nous fit driuer prés de trēte cinq lieues de chemin, puis le vent se vint à calmer, & en beauture,[a]

[a] *Beauture* = beau temps.

---

any land, and were heading straight between cape St. Lawrence [1] and cape Ray,[2] in which direction they would not have found Port Royal except by going overland. After some little conversation together, we separated, each one taking his own course.

On the following day we sighted the islands of St. Pierre [3] without meeting any ice, and continuing on our course on the next day, being the third of the month, we sighted cape Ray,[2] also without meeting ice. On the fourth day of the month we sighted St. Paul island [4] and cape St. Lawrence,[1] and were some eight leagues north of cape St. Lawrence. The next day we sighted Gaspé. On the seventh of the month we were held up by a north-west wind which drove us out of our course some thirty-five leagues. Then the wind dropped

[1] The north-western extremity of Cape Breton island. See Vol. I, 94.
[2] The south-western extremity of Newfoundland.
[3] St. Pierre and Miquelon.
[4] In Cabot strait off cape North.

qui nous fut fauorable iusques à Tadoussac, qui fut le tresiesme iour dud. mois de May, où nous fismes tirer vn coup de canon pour aduertir les sauuages, afin de sçauoir des nouuelles des gens de nostre habitation de Quebecq. Tout le pays estoit encore presque couuert de neige. Il vint à nous quelques canots, qui nous dirent qu'il y auoit vne de nos pattaches qui estoit au port il y auoit vn mois, & trois vaisseaux qui y estoient arriuez depuis huit iours. Nous mismes nostre batteau hors, & fusmes trouuer lesdicts sauuages, qui estoient assez miserables, & n'auoient à traicter que pour auoir seulement des rafraichissemens, qui estoit fort peu de chose : encore voulurent ils attēdre qu'il vint plusieurs vaisseaux ensemble, afin d'auoir meilleur marché des marchandises : & par ainsi ceux s'abusent qui pensent faire leurs affaires pour arriuer des premiers : car ces peuples sont maintenant trop fins & subtils.

Le dixseptiesme iour dudit mois ie partis de Tadoussac

---

and it was fine and favourable until we reached Tadoussac on the thirteenth of May. Here we fired a cannon to warn the Indians so that we might have news of the people at our settlement at Quebec. The whole country was still almost covered with snow. Some canoes came out to us, and we learned that one of our pataches had been in port for a month and that three vessels had arrived a week before. We lowered our boat and went to see these Indians, who were in a rather miserable condition and had only a few articles which they wished to barter merely in order to get food. Furthermore, they wanted to wait until several ships had arrived in order to get our wares more cheaply. Thus those people are mistaken who think that by coming first they can do better business ; for these Indians are now too sharp and crafty.

On the seventeenth of the month I set out from Tadoussac pour aller au grand saut[1] trouuer les sauuages Algoumequins & autres nations qui m'auoient promis l'annee precedente de si[a] trouuer auec mon garçon que ie leur auois baillé,[b] pour p. 283. apprendre de luy ce qu'il auroit veu en son yuernement dans les terres.[2] Ceux qui estoient dans ledit port, qui se doutoient bien, où ie deuois aller, suiuant les promesses que i'auois faites aux sauuages, comme i'ay dit cy dessus,[3] commēcerent à faire bastir plusieurs petites barques pour me suiure le plus promptement qu'ils pouroient : Et plusieurs, à ce que i'appris deuant que partir de France, firent equipper des nauires & pattaches sur l'entreprise de nostre voyage, pensant en reuenir riches comme d'vn voyage des Indes.

Le Pont demeura audit Tadoussac sur l'esperance que[c] s'il n'y faisoit rien, de prendre vne pattache, & me venir trouuer audit saut. Entre Tadoussac & Quebecq nostre

[a] Lire *s'y*. [b] *Bailler* = donner. [c] Le *que* est à supprimer.

---

for the Great Rapid[1] to meet the Algonquins and other tribes who had promised me the year before to be there with the youth whom I had given them, so that I might learn from him what he had seen while wintering in the interior.[2] Those who were in this harbour, who suspected where I was going in accordance with the promises I had made to the Indians, as related above,[3] began to build several small pinnaces for the purpose of following me as promptly as they could. And several, as I learned before leaving France, had ships and pataches equipped on the strength of our undertaking, hoping to come back as rich as if they had gone to the Indies.

Pont-Gravé remained at Tadoussac, intending, if he did no barter there, to take a patache and come and join me at the said rapids. Between Tadoussac and Quebec our pinnace barque faisoit grand eau, qui me contraignit de retarder à Quebecq pour l'estancher, qui fut le 21. iour de May.

---

[1] The Lachine rapids.
[2] See pp. 138–42 *supra*.
[3] See p. 142 *supra*.

Descente à Quebecq pour faire racommoder la barque. Partement dudit Quebecq pour aller au saut trouuer les sauuages & recognoistre vn lieu propre pour vne habitation.

CHAP. II.

ESTANS à terre ie trouuay le sieur du Parc qui auoit yuerné en ladite habitation, & tous ses p. 284. compagnons, qui se portoiẽt fort bien, sans auoir eu aucune maladie. La chasse & gibier ne leur manqua aucunement en tout leur yuernement, à ce qu'ils me dirent. Ie trouuay le Capitaine sauuage appelé Batiscan & quelques Algoumequins, qui disoient m'attendre, ne voulãt retourner à Tadoussac qu'ils ne m'eussent veu. Ie leur fis quelque proposition de mener vn de nos gens aux trois riuieres [1] pour

leaked a good deal, which forced me to stay at Quebec to stop the leak. This was on the twenty-first of May.

Landing at Quebec to repair the pinnace. Departure from Quebec for the Rapids to meet with the savages and to select a proper site for a settlement.

CHAPTER II

ON landing I found the Sieur du Parc who with his companions had spent the winter at the settlement. They were all very well, and had had no sickness. They told me there had been plenty of hunting—animals and birds—during the whole winter. I found the Indian chief Batiscan and some Algonquins who said they were waiting for me, not wishing to go back to Tadoussac until they had seen me. I made a proposal to them to take one of our men to Three Rivers to explore that region,[1] but I

---

[1] The St. Maurice.

les recognoistre, & ne peu obtenir aucune chose d'eux pour ceste annee, me remettant à l'autre : neantmoins ie ne laissay de m'informer particulierement de l'origine & des peuples qui y habitent : ce qu'ils me dirent exactement. Ie leur demanday vn de leurs canots, mais ils ne s'en voulurent desfaire en aucune façon que ce fut pour la necessité qu'ils en auoiēt : car i'estois deliberé d'enuoyer deux ou trois hommes descouurir dedans lesdites trois riuieres voir ce qu'il y auroit : ce que ie ne peu faire, à mon grand regret, remettant la partie à la premiere occasion qui se presenteroit.

Ie fis cependant diligeance de faire accommoder nostredicte barque. Et comme elle fut preste, vn ieune homme de la Rochelle appelé Tresart, me pria que ie luy permisse de me faire compagnie audit saut,[1] ce que ie luy refusay, disant que i'auois des dessins particuliers, & que ie ne desirois estre p. 285.
cōducteur de personne à mon preiudice, & qu'il y auoit

could not obtain anything from them for that year, and so I postponed it for another year. However, I did not fail to question them particularly regarding the tribes who live there and their origin, which information they gave me accurately. I asked them for one of their canoes, but they would not part with it on any account whatever, because of the need they had of it : for I had intended to send two or three men to explore up the Three Rivers, to see what was there. But to my great regret I was unable to do this, and I put the thing off till the first opportunity that should present itself.

Meanwhile I pushed forward the repairs of our pinnace. And when it was ready, a young man of La Rochelle, called Tresart, begged me to allow him to accompany me to the rapid,[1] but I declined, saying that I had private plans, and was not willing to lead anyone there to my own detriment ;

[1] The Lachine rapids.

d'autres compaignies que la mienne pour lors, & que ie ne desirois ouurir le chemin & seruir de guide, & qu'il le trouueroit assés aisement sans moy.

Ce mesme iour ie partis de Quebecq, & arriuay audit grand saut[1] le vingthuictiesme de May, où ie ne trouuay aucun des sauuages qui m'auoient promis d'y estre au vingtiesme dudit mois. Aussitost ie fus dans vn meschant canot auec le sauuage que i'auois mené en France,[2] & vn de nos gens. Aprés auoir visité d'vn costé & d'autre, tant dans les bois que le long du riuage, pour trouuer vn lieu propre pour la scituation d'vne habitation, & y preparer vne place pour y bastir, ie fis quelques huit lieues par terre cottoyant le grand saut[1] par des bois qui sont assez clairs, & fus iusques à vn lac,[3] où nostre sauuage me mena ; où ie consideray fort particulierement le pays ; Mais en tout ce que ie vy, ie n'en trouuay point de lieu plus propre qu'vn petit endroit, qui

---

that there were other companies in existence than mine; that I did not wish to open the way and act as guide, but that he would find the place easily enough without me.

That same day I left Quebec and arrived on the twenty-eighth of May at the Great Rapid,[1] where I found none of the Indians who had promised me to be there by the twentieth of the month. I at once got into a poor canoe with the Indian whom I had taken to France [2] and one of our men. Having examined both shores, in the woods as well as along the river banks, in order to find a suitable place for the site of a settlement, and also to prepare the ground for building, I went some eight leagues by land, skirting the Great Rapid,[1] through rather thin woods, until I came to a lake,[3] to which our Indian led me. Here I examined the country very carefully, but after looking everywhere found no spot more

[1] The Lachine rapids. [2] Savignon. See p. 142 *supra*.

[3] The lake of Two Mountains, after passing lake St. Louis.

est iusques où les barques & chalouppes peuuēt mōter aisement : neantmoins auec vn grand vent, ou à la cirque, à cause du grand courant d'eau : car plus haut que ledit lieu (qu'auons nommé la place Royalle[1]) à vne lieue du mont Royal,[2] y a quantité de petits rochers & basses, qui sont fort p. 286. dangereuses. Et proches de ladite place Royalle y a vne petite riuiere[3] qui va assez auāt dedans les terres, tout le long de laquelle y a plus de 60. arpens de terre desertés[a] qui sont comme prairies, où l'on pourroit semer des grains, & y faire des iardinages. Autresfois des sauuages y ont labouré, mais ils les ont quitées pour les guerres ordinaires qu'ils y auoiēt.[4] Il y a aussi grāde quātité d'autres belles prairies pour nourrir tel nombre de bestail que l'on voudra : & de toutes les sortes de bois qu'auons en nos forests de pardeça : auec quantité de

[a] Voir ci-dessus, p. 60, note [a].

---

suitable than a little place to which pinnaces and shallops can ascend, only however with a strong wind, or by going a roundabout way, on account of the strong current. For higher up than this place (which we named Place Royale[1]) at a league's distance from Mount Royal,[2] there are many small rocks and very dangerous shoals. And near this Place Royale there is a small river,[3] which leads some distance into the interior, alongside which are more than sixty arpents of land, which have been cleared and are now like meadows, where one might sow grain and do gardening. Formerly Indians cultivated these lands, but they have abandoned them on account of the frequent wars which they carried on there.[4] And there are many other fine meadows which would feed as many cattle as one could wish, and there are all the varieties of wood which we have in our forests in

---

[1] This Place Royale was on the point to which the name of Callières was afterwards given. (Lav.)

[2] The mountain at Montreal, still so called.

[3] The river St. Pierre. See Plate VII, p. 185.

[4] See Biggar, *The Voyages of Cartier*, 152 *et seq.*

vignes, noyers, prunes, serizes, fraises, & autres sortes qui sont trés-bonnes à manger, entre autres vne qui est fort excellente, qui à le gout sucrain, tirāt à celuy des plantaines (qui est vn fruit des Indes) & est aussi blanche que neige, & la fueille ressemblāt aux orties, & rampe le long des arbres & de la terre, comme le lierre. La pesche du poisson y est fort abōdāte, & de toutes les especes que nous auons en France, & de beaucoup d'autres que nous n'auons point, qui sont tres-bons : comme aussi la chasse des oiseaux aussi de diferētes especes : & celle des Cerfs, Daims, Cheureuls, Caribous, Lapins, Loups-seruiers, Ours, Castors, & autres p. 287. petites bestes qui y sont en telle quantité, que durant que nous fusmes audit saut, nous n'en manquasmes aucunement.

Ayant donc recogneu fort particulierement & trouué ce lieu vn des plus beaux qui fut en ceste riuiere, ie fis aussitost coupper & deffricher le bois de ladite place Royalle[1] pour la

---

France, with many vines, butternuts, plums, cherries, strawberries, and other kinds of fruits which are very good to eat. Amongst others there is a very fine one with a sweetish taste, like that of the plantains (a fruit of the Indies) as white as snow, with leaves like those of the nettle, and it creeps up the trees and along the ground like ivy. An abundance of fish can be caught, of all the varieties we have in France, and of many other very good kinds which we do not have. Game birds too of different varieties are abundant, and animals are also numerous, such as stags, fallow deer, roebucks, caribous, rabbits, lynxes, bears, beavers, and many small animals ; all of these are so abundant that during the time we were at the rapid, we lacked for none of them.

So, having examined very carefully and found this spot to be one of the finest on this river, I ordered the trees of the Place Royale[1] to be cut down and cleared off, in order to level the ground and make it ready for building. Water

[1] See p. 176 *supra*.

rendre vnie, & preste à y bastir ; & peut on faire passer l'eau au tour aisement, & en faire vne petite isle, & s'y establir cōme l'on voudra.

Il y a vn petit islet[1] à quelque 20. thoises de ladite place Royalle, qui a quelques cent pas de long, où l'on peut faire vne bonne & forte habitation. Il y a aussi quantité de prairies de trés-bonne terre grasse à potier, tant pour bricque que pour bastir, qui est vne grande cōmodité. I'en fis accommoder vne partie & y fis vne mouraille de quatre pieds d'espoisseur & 3. à 4. de haut, & 10. toises de long pour voir comme elle se conserueroit durant l'yuer quād les eaux descenderoient, qui à mon opinion ne sçauroit paruenir iusques à lad. muraille, d'autāt que le terroir est de douze pieds esleué dessus ladite riuiere, qui est assez haut. Au milieu du fleuue y a vne isle d'enuiron trois quarts de lieues de circuit, capable d'y bastir vne bonne & forte ville, &

can be made to encircle the place very easily, and a little island formed of it, on which to erect such an establishment as one may wish.

Some yards from the Place Royale lies a small island,[1] about a hundred yards long, where a good strong dwelling might be built. There are also many level stretches of very good rich potter's clay suitable for brickmaking and building, which is a great convenience. I had a portion of it prepared, and built there a wall, four feet thick, three or four feet high and ten yards long, to see how it would last during the winter when the waters came down. I did not think the water would reach the wall; for the land was quite high, being twelve feet above the river. In the middle of the river is an island which we named St. Helen's island, three-quarters of a league in circumference, where there is

---

[1] Market Gate island. See Plate VII, p. 185, and Vol. I, 148, note 1.

l'auons nommée l'isle de saincte Elaine.[1] Ce saut descend en maniere de lac, où il y a deux ou trois isles & de belles prairies.

p. 288. Le premier iour de Iuin le Pont arriua audit saut, qui n'auoit rien sceu faire à Tadoussac ; & bonne compagnie le suiuirent & vindrent aprés luy pour y aller au butin, car sans ceste esperance ils estoient bien de l'arriere.

Or attendant les sauuages, ie fis faire deux iardins, l'vn dans les prairies, & l'autre au bois, que ie fis deserter[a] ; & le deuxiesme iour de Iuin i'y semay quelques graines, qui sortirent toutes en perfection, & en peu de temps, qui demonstre la bonté de la terre.

Nous resolusmes d'enuoyer Sauignon nostre sauuage auec vn autre, pour aller audeuant de ceux de son pays,

[a] Voir ci-dessus, p. 60, note [a].

---

room to build a good strong town.[1] The river at the foot of this rapid is like a lake, where there are two or three islands, and fine meadows.

On the first day of June Pont-Gravé arrived at the rapid, having been unable to do any trade at Tadoussac. And a large company followed him, coming after him for the sake of the booty; for, without this hope they would be very backward.

Now, whilst waiting for the Indians, I had two gardens made, one in the meadows and the other in the woods, which I caused to be cleared. And on the second day of June I sowed some seeds there which all came up quickly and in perfect condition, which shows the good quality of the soil.

We decided to send our Indian, Savignon, along with another, to meet those of his tribe, to quicken their coming.

[1] Probably so named after Hélène Boullé, to whom Champlain had just been married. See Vol. I, 147, note 2, and *in ra*, pp. 315 *et seq*.

afin de les faire haster de venir, & se deliberent[a] d'aller dans nostre canot, qu'ils doubtoient,[b] d'autant qu'il ne valoit pas beaucoup.

Ils partirent le cinquiesme iour dudit mois. Le lendemain arriua quatre ou cinq barques (c'estoit pour nous faire escorte) d'autant qu'ils ne pouuoient rien faire audit Tadoussac.

Le septiesme iour ie fus recognoistre vne petite riuiere par où vont quelques fois les sauuages à la guerre, qui se va rendre au saut de la riuiere des Yroquois :[1] elle est fort plaisante, y ayant plus de trois lieues de circuit de prairies, & force terres, qui se peuuent labourer : elle est à vne lieue du grand saut,[2] & lieu[e] & demie de la place Royalle.[3] p. 289.

Le neufiesme iour nostre sauuage arriua,[4] qui fut quelque peu pardela le lac qui a quelque dix lieues de long, lequel

[a] Lisez *se delibererent*, c'est-à-dire *hésitèrent*.
[b] Voir ci-dessus, p. 143, note [a].

They decided, after deliberation, to go in our canoe, of which they had doubts, since it was not a very good one.

They set out on the fifth day of the month. On the following day arrived four or five pinnaces to act as our escort, since they could do no trade at Tadoussac.

On the seventh I went to explore a little river by which the natives sometimes go on the war-path ; for it leads away to the rapid of the river of the Iroquois.[1] It is very pleasant and skirts more than three leagues of meadows and much arable land. It is situated one league from the Great Rapid [2] and a league and a half from the Place Royale.[3]

On the ninth day our Indian arrived.[4] He had gone a little beyond the lake, which is about ten leagues long, and i'auois veu auparauant,[1] où il ne fit rencontre d'aucune chose, & ne purent passer plus loin à cause de leurdit canot qui leur manqua ; & furent contraints de s'en reuenir. Ils nous rapporterent que passant le saut ils virent vne isle où il y auoit si grande quantité de herons, que l'air en estoit tout couuert. Il y eust vn ieune homme qui estoit au sieur de Mons appelé Louys, qui estoit fort amateur de la chasse, lequel entendant cela, voulut y aller contenter sa curiosité, & pria fort instammēt nostredit sauuage de l'y mener : ce que le sauuage luy accorda auec vn Capitaine sauuage Montagnet fort gentil personnage, appelé Outetoucos. Dés le matin led. Louys fut appeler les deux sauuages pour s'en aller à ladite isle des herons. Ils s'embarquerent dans vn canot & y furent. Ceste isle est au milieu du saut,[2] où ils prirent telle quantité de heronneaux & autres oyseaux qu'ils voulurent, & se rembarquerent en leur canot. Outetoucos

---

[1] By going up the river St. Lambert and following the Montreal river, one can reach Chambly basin. (Lav.)
[2] The Lachine rapids. [3] See p. 176. [4] Savignon. See p. 179.

---

which I had seen before.[1] He had not met with anything, and they could not go any farther on account of their canoe, which failed them, and so were obliged to come back. They reported to us that, when passing the rapid, they had seen an island where there were so many herons that the air was full of them. There was a young man called Louis, in the service of the Sieur de Monts, who was a great lover of hunting. On hearing this he wanted to go to the place and satisfy his curiosity, and urgently begged our Indian to take him there. The Indian consented and also took along a Montagnais chief, named Outetoucos, who was a very agreeable person. On the following morning Louis went and called the two Indians to go to the Herons' island. They got into a canoe and went there. This island is in the middle of the rapid.[2] Here they caught as many young herons and other birds as they wished, and got into their canoe again.

[1] The lake of Two Mountains. See p. 175.

[2] See Plate VII, p. 185.

contre la volonté de l'autre sauuage & de l'instance qu'il peut faire, voulut passer par vn endroit fort dangereux, où l'eau tomboit prés de trois pieds de haut, disant que d'autresfois p. 290. il y auoit passé, ce qui estoit faux, il fut long temps à debatre contre nostre sauuage qui le voulut mener du costé du Su le long de la grand Tibie,[a] par où le plus souuent ils ont accoustumé de passer, ce que Outetoucos ne desira, disant qu'il n'y auoit point de danger. Cõme nostre sauuage le vit opiniastre, il condescendit à sa volonté : mais il luy dit qu'a tout le moins on deschargeast le canot d'vne partie des oyseaux qui estoient dedans, d'autant qu'il estoit trop chargé, ou qu'infaliblement ils empliroiēt d'eau, & se perdoient[b] : ce qu'il ne voulut faire, disant qu'il seroit assez à temps s'ils voyoient qu'il y eut du peril pour eux. Ils se laissarent donc driuer dans le courãt. Et comme ils furent dans la cheute du saut, ils en voulurent sortir & ietter leurs

---

[a] Faute d'impression pour *Terre*. (Voir l'édition de 1632.)

[b] A lire *perdroient*.

Outetoucos, against the wish of the other Indian and in spite of his earnest solicitation, was determined to go down a very dangerous place, where the water fell nearly three feet, saying that he had gone that way before, which was not true. For a long time he disputed with our Indian, who wanted to take him on the south side, along the main shore, which is the way they are more accustomed to go. This, Outetoucos did not wish, declaring that there was no danger. When our Indian saw that he was obstinate, he yielded to his desire, but said that at least the canoe should be lightened of some of the birds in it, as it was overloaded, or that otherwise they would certainly be swamped and lost. But Outetoucos would not do so, saying it would be time enough when they saw that they were in danger. So they let themselves drift with the current; but when they were on the brink of the rapid, they tried to get out of it by throwing

charges, mais il n'estoit plus temps, car la vitesse de l'eau les maistrisoit ainsi qu'elle vouloit, & emplirent aussitost dans les boullons du saut, qui leur fesoient faire mille tours haut & bas. Ils ne l'abandonnerent de long temps : Enfin la roideur de l'eau les lassa de telle fāçon, que ce pauure Louys qui ne sçauoit nager en aucune façon perdit tout iugemēt & le canot estāt au fonds de l'eau il fut contraint de l'abandonner : & reuenant au haut les deux autres qui le p. 291. tenoient tousiours ne virent plus nostre Louys, & ainsi mourut miserablement.[1] Les deux autres tenoient tousiours ledit canot : mais comme ils furent hors du saut, ledit Outetoucos estant nud, & se fiant en son nager, l'abandonna, pensant gaigner la terre, bien que l'eau y courust encor de grande vitesse, & se noya : car il estoit si fatigué & rompu de la peine qu'il auoit eue, qu'il estoit impossible qu'il se peust sauuer

---

overboard their load. It was now, however, too late, for the swift water had them completely in its power. And their canoe filled quickly in the whirling waters of the rapid, which tossed them up and down in all sorts of ways. They clung to it for a long time. At length the strength of the current wore them out, so that this poor Louis, who was quite unable to swim, lost his head completely, and the canoe going under, he was forced to abandon it. The other two continued to cling to it, and came to the surface, but saw nothing more of our Louis. In this miserable manner did the poor fellow die.[1] The other two still clung to the canoe; but when they got clear of the rapid, Outetoucos, who was naked, and trusted to his ability to swim, abandoned it, thinking he could reach the shore, although the water was still running very swiftly. But he was drowned; for he was so exceedingly worn out by his exertions, and having

[1] It was very likely in memory of this Louis that the rapid was named St. Louis. (Lav.)

LE GRAND SAULT ST. LOUI

A.—Small Open Space which I had Cleare

Place Royale, as shown in the text (p. 176), on the south-west point of t
According to the detailed plan of Montreal in Bellin's *Petit Atlas Mari*
modern Custom House Square.

B.—Small Pond.

Obliterated by the modern city.

C.—Small Island on which I had a Stone Wall

Market Gate island (*cf.* Vol. I., p. 148), now joined by quays to the city. The
its position as opposite to the end of St. Sulpice Street, and therefore
Albert Wharf. The King's Basin, partly enclosed by this wharf, receive

D.—Small Stream in which the Boats are K

St. Pierre river, flowing from lake St. Pierre, which also had an outlet by a stre
rapids. Its general course was that of the Lachine canal.

E.—Meadows where the Savages Encamp when they come

F.—Mountains which are Seen in the Dista

Mounts St. Bruno and St. Hilaire, which are respectively ten and sixteen mile
no doubt, from Mount Royal, whence they appear to be close toget
Rougemont lies too far south to fall into this group.

G.—Small Pond.

H.—Mount Royal.

This letter is duplicated below Market Garden island. Here it is probably, a
error for a sounding of 11 feet.

I.—Small Stream.

Originally this stream, which still exists, connected the river St. Pierre with the
island.

L.—The Rapid.

The Lachine rapids, the length of which is here exaggerated, for they barely e

M.—The Spot where the Savages Portage their Canoes alo

This would indicate the western end of the portage round the Lachine rapids.

N.—The spot where one of our Men and an Indian w

(*See* p. 181.)

O.—Small Rocky Islet.

P.—Another Islet where the Birds Build thei

Although this letter is duplicated, the one between N and O is probably mea

Q.—Heron Island.

As seen on the modern map this letter, which has been omitted by Champlai
the naming of this island, *see* p. 181.

R.—Another Island in the Rapids.

The present *I. au Diable*, misprinted on Champlain's map as P, as Laverdière

S.—Small Islet.

Now a group of small rocky islands.

T.—Small Round Islet.

V.—Another Islet half covered with Wat

X.—Another Islet on which are many River

The above three islets, which to-day are very insignificant, owe their promine
to their propinquity to one of his sketching-points.

Y.—Meadows.

Note that a village has been named for them.

Z.—Small River.

River St. Lambert, important for the reasons stated in the text, p. 180.

h of the R. St. Pierre. was at or very near the

entioned map would fix ath the outer portion of utlet of St. Pierre river.

tying above the Lachine

SE PARTS.

Champlain saw them, Champlain draws them.

dière notes, an engraver's

wrence opposite to Nuns

bove *Ile au Diable*.

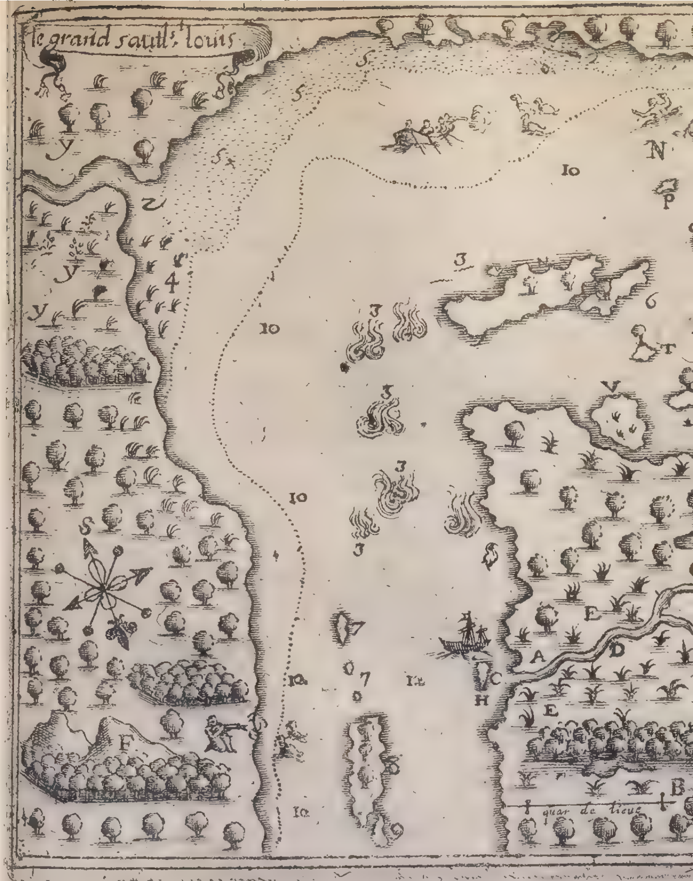
NORTH SHORE.

OWNED.

.

resented by his R.   On

hamplain's map possibly



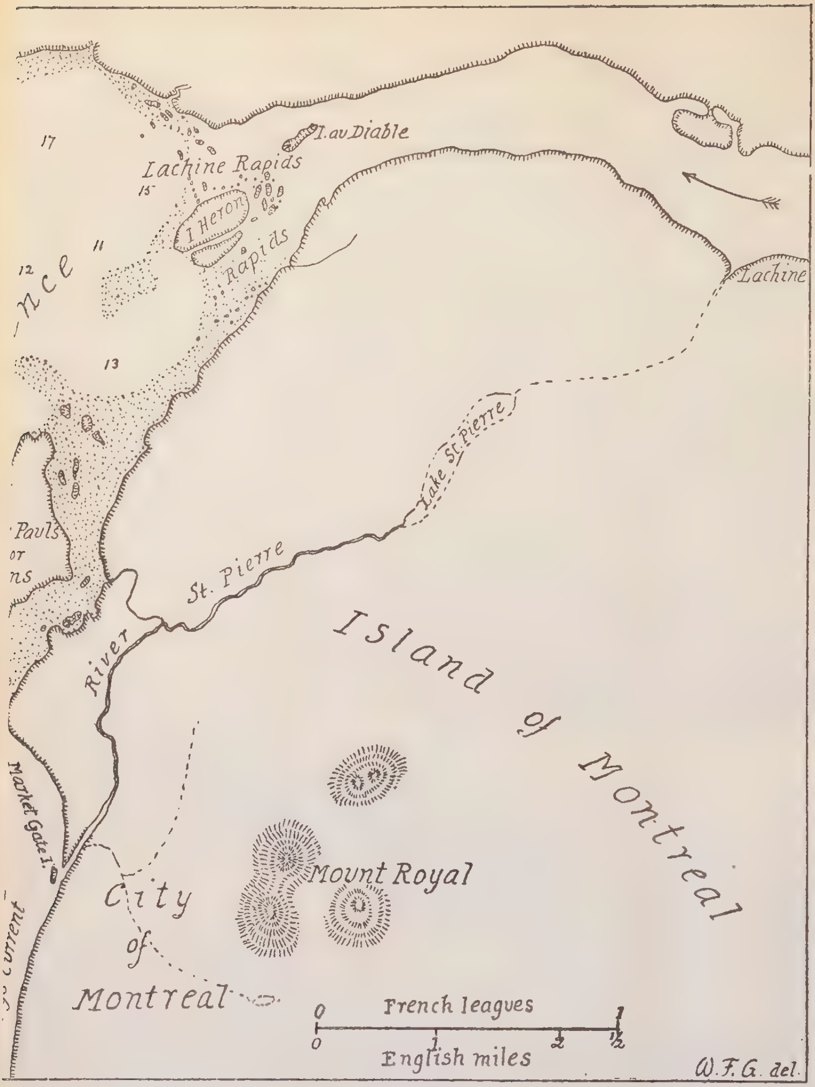
A Petite place que ie fis deffricher.
B Petit eſtang.
C Petit iſlet où ie fis faire vne muraille de pierre.
D Petit ruiſſeau où ſe tiennét les barques.
E Prairies où ſe mettent les ſauuages quand ils viennent en ce pays.
F Montaignes qui paroiſſent dans le terres.
G Petit eſtang.
H Mont Royal.
I Petit ruiſſeau.
L Le ſaut.
M Le lieu où les ſau paſſent leurs canots terre du coſté du No
N Endroit où vn de nos & vn ſauuage ſe noye
O Petit iſlet de rochers.
P Autre iſlet où les oy font leurs nids.
Q L'iſle aux herons.
R Autre iſle dans le ſaut,
S Petit iſlet.
T Petit iſlet rond.
V Autte iſlet demy cou d'eau.
X Autre iſlet où il y a oyſeaux de riuiere.

2.—FAIRLY LARGE AND BEAU

St. Paul's island, mistaken no doubt for topographical reasons f thus resembling an N.

3.—PLACES WHICH APPEAR ABOVE WATER WHEN THE WATER AS IN THE SAID RA

These shoals, with the whirlpools at low water, are well known, b them.



4.—Meadows Covered with Water.
the best maps.

s where the Water is Low and Shallow.

6.—Another Little Islet.
est of St. Paul's island.

7.—Small Rocks.
he adjoining rocks.

8.—St. Helen's Island.

9.—Small Islet Bare of Trees.

amps which Empty into the Great Rapid.
ate the safest route for travel by canoe. (*See* p. 175.)
ault St. Louis is not based on surveys in the modern sense, but on compass-
ts—in this case the summit of Mount Royal and a point near the Lachine
urrounding its production (*cf.* Vol. I., pp. 196-7), the map, as every surveyor
pon the geographical skill of its maker.

[*To face p.* 185.

ailleurs : car il est impossible d'y passer pour auoir sept à huit cheutes d'eau qui descendēt de degré en degré, le moindre de trois pieds de haut, où il se faisoit vn frain [a] & bouillonnement estrange, & vne partie dudit saut estoit toute blāche d'escume, qui mōtroit le lieu plus effroyable, auec vn bruit si grand que l'on eut dit que c'estoit vn tonnerre, comme l'air retentissoit du bruit de ces cataraques. Aprés auoir veu & consideré particulieremēt ce lieu & cherché le long du riuage lesdicts corps, cependant qu'vne chalouppe assez legere estoit allée d'vn autre costé, nous nous en reuinsmes sans rien trouuer.

P. 293. [PLANCHE : LE GRAND SAULT S^T. LOUIS.]

[a] Vieux mot = le mouvement et le bruit des vagues.

---

they might have gone another way; for it was impossible to go through there, on account of seven or eight waterfalls which tumble from ledge to ledge, the lowest of which is three feet high. All this made a remarkable noise and whirl, and part of the rapid was completely white with foam, which indicated the worst spot. There was a noise so loud that one would have said it was thunder, as the air rang from the sound of these cataracts. Having viewed and carefully considered this place, and searched along the bank for the dead bodies, at the same time that a rather light shallop had gone in another direction, we came back without finding anything.

[PLATE VII]

Deux cens sauuages ramenent le François qu'on leur auoit baillé, & remmenerent leur sauuage qui estoit retourné de France. Plusieurs discours de part & d'autre. p. 294.

CHAP. III.

LE treisiesme iour dudit mois[1] deux cens sauuages Charioquois,[2] auec les Capitaines Ochateguin, Yroquet & Tregouaroti frere de nostre sauuage[3] amenerent mon garçon.[4] Nous fusmes fort contens de les voir, ie fus au deuant d'eux auec vn canot & nostre sauuage,[3] & cependant qu'ils approchoient doucement en ordre, les nostres s'apareillerēt de leur faire vne escopeterie d'arquebuses & mousquets, & quelques petites pieces. Comme ils approchoient, ils commencerent à crier tous ensemble, &

Two hundred savages bring back the Frenchman who had been given to them, and take away again their Indian who had returned from France. Several speeches on both sides.

CHAPTER III

ON the thirteenth of the aforesaid month,[1] two hundred Charioquois[2] Indians with the chiefs Ochateguin, Iroquet and Tregouaroti, brother of our Indian,[3] brought back my youth.[4] We were very glad to see them, and I went to meet them with a canoe and our Indian,[3] and whilst they were approaching slowly and in order, our men got ready to receive them with a salute of arquebuses, muskets, and small pieces. As they drew near, they began to shout all together, and one of their chiefs ordered their harangue

---

[1] June.

[2] In his edition of 1632 Champlain substitutes 'Hurons.' This was possibly the chief of that nation. (Lav.)

[3] Savignon.

[4] Possibly Etienne Brulé. See p. 138 and *cf.* Butterfield, *op. cit.* 19–25.

vn des chefs commanda de faire leur harangue, où ils nous louoient fort, & nous tenant pour veritables, de ce que ie leur auois tenu ce que ie leur promis, qui estoit de les venir trouuer audit saut. Aprés auoir fait trois autres cris, l'escopeterie tira par deux fois de 13. barques ou pattaches qui y estoient, qui les estonna de telle façon qu'ils me prierent de dire que l'on ne tirast plus, & qu'il y en auoit la plus grand part, qui n'auoient iamais veu de Chrestiēs, ny ouy des tonnerres de la façon, & craignoient qu'il ne leur fit mal,
p. 295. & furent fort contans de voir nostredit sauuage[1] sain, qu'ils pensoiēt mort, sur des rapports que leur auoiēt fait quelques Algoumequins qui l'auoient ouy dire à des sauuages Montagnets. Le sauuage se loua du traictement que ie luy auois fait en France, & des singularitez qu'il auoit veues, dont ils entrerent tous en admiration, & s'en allarent cabaner dans le bois assez legerement attendant le lendemain, que ie leur monstrasse le lieu ou ie desirois qu'ils se logassent. Aussi

to be made, wherein they praised us greatly, regarding us as trustworthy, because I had kept my promise to come and meet them at the rapid. After three more shouts, two salutes were fired from thirteen pinnaces or pataches which were there. This astonished them so much that they begged me to ask that there should be no more firing; for, said they, the greater number of these Indians had never seen Christians nor heard thunder of that sort, and were afraid it might hurt them. They were very glad to see our Indian[1] in good health; for they thought he was dead, according to reports made to them by some Algonquins, who had heard the story from some Montagnais Indians. This Indian spoke well of the treatment I had given him in France and of the strange things he had seen, whereat they all wondered and went and set up a temporary encampment in the wood, waiting for the following day when I was to show them where I wished them to set up their lodges.

[1] Savignon.

ie vis mon garçon qui vint habillé à la sauuage,[1] qui se loua du traictement des sauuages, selon leur pays, & me fit entendre tout ce qu'il auoit veu en son yuernement, & ce qu'il auoit apris desdicts sauuages.

Le lendemain venu, ie leur monstray vn lieu pour aller cabaner, où les antiens & principaux deuiserent fort ensemble : Et aprés auoir esté vn long temps en cest estat, ils me firent appeler seul auec mon garçon, qui auoit fort bien apris leur langue, & luy dirent qu'ils desiroiēt faire vne estroite amitié auec moy, & estoient faschez de voir toutes ces chalouppes ensemble, & que nostre sauuage leur auoit dit qu'il ne les cognoissoit point, ny ce qu'ils auoient dans l'ame, & qu'ils voyoient bien qu'il n'y auoit que le gain & l'auarice qui les y amenoit, & que quand ils auroient besoin de leur assistance p. 296. qu'ils ne leur donneroiēt aucun secours, & ne feroient comme moy qui m'offrois auec mes compagnons d'aller en

I also saw my French boy who came dressed like an Indian.[1] He was well pleased with the treatment received from the Indians, according to the customs of their country, and explained to me all that he had seen during the winter, and what he had learned from the Indians.

When the next day came, I showed them a place where they might encamp, and there the chief old men held a long deliberation together. After being thus engaged for some time they sent for me to come alone with my lad, who had learned their language very well. They told him they desired to form a close alliance with me and that they were sorry to see all these shallops here ; for our Indian had told them that he neither knew these people nor what was in their minds ; that they saw clearly, that it was only love of gain and avarice which brought these people thither, and that when the Indians should need their help they would give none ; and would not do as I had done, who used to

---

[1] Possibly Etienne Brulé. See Butterfield, *op. cit.* 19–25.

leur pays, & les assister, & que ie leur en auois monstré des tesmoignages par le passé, en se loüãt tousiours du traictement que i'auois fait à nostre sauuage comme à mon frere, & que cela les oubligeoit tellement à me vouloir du bien, que tout ce que ie desirerois d'eux, ils assayeroient à me satisfaire, & craignoient que les autres pattaches ne leur fissent du desplaisir. Ie leur asseuray que non feroient, & que nous estions tous soubs vn Roy,[1] que nostredit sauuage auoit veu, & d'vne mesme nation, (mais pour ce qui estoit des affaires, qu'elles estoient particulieres) & ne deuoiẽt point auoir peur, estant aussi asseurez comme s'ils eussent esté dãs leur pays. Aprés plusieurs discours, ils me firẽt vn present de 100. castors. Ie leur dõnay en eschange d'autres sortes de marchandise, & me dirent qu'il y auoit plus de 400. sauuages qui deuoient venir de leur pays, & ce qui les auoit retardés, fut vn prisonnier Yroquois qui estoit à moy, qui s'estoit

offer to go with my companions into their country and to help them, of which I had given them proofs in the past. They expressed satisfaction at the kind treatment I had shown to our Indian, as if he had been my brother, which placed them under such obligations to be kind to me that in anything I might desire of them, they would try to satisfy me ; but they feared lest the other pataches would do them harm. I assured them that the others would not do so and that we all served one king,[1] whom our Indian had seen, and that we were all of the same nation, but that business was a private affair. And I said that they ought not to be afraid ; for they were as safe as if they were in their own country. After several harangues, they made me a gift of a hundred beaver-skins, and I gave them in exchange other sorts of merchandise. They told me that more than four hundred Indians had intended to come down from their country, but what had kept them back was one of my Iroquois prisoners,

---

[1] Louis XIII.

eschappé & s'en estoit allé en son pays,[1] & qu'il auoit donné à entendre que ie luy auois dōné liberté & des marchādises, & que ie deuois aller audit saut auec 600. Yroquois attendre les Algoumequins, & les tuer tous : Que la crainte de ces p. 297. nouuelles les auoit arrestés, & que sans cela qu'ils fussent venus. Ie leur fis respōse que le prisonnier s'estoit desrobé sans que ie luy eusse dōné congé, & que nostredit sauuage sçauoit bien de quelle façon il s'en estoit allé, & qu'il n'y auoit aucune apparence de laisser leur amitié comme ils auoient ouy dire, ayant esté à la guerre auec eux, & enuoyé mon garçon en leur pays pour entretenir leur amitié ; & que la promesse que ie leur auois si fidelement tenue le confirmoit encore. Ils me respondirent que pour eux ils ne l'auoient aussi[a] iamais pensé, & qu'ils recognoissoient bien que tous ces discours estoient esloignez de la verité ; &

[a] Emploi vieilli de *aussi* = non plus.

---

who had escaped and gone back to his own country.[1] He had spread the report that I had given him his liberty and certain goods, and that I was to go to the rapid with six hundred Iroquois to await the Algonquins and kill them all. They said that the fear aroused by this news had kept them back and that but for this they would have come down.

I replied that the prisoner had escaped without my giving him leave; that our Indian knew quite well how he had got away, and that there was no likelihood of my renouncing their friendship, as they had heard, after going with them on the war-path, and sending my young lad into their country in order to keep their friendship. Moreover, the promise I had so faithfully kept was a further confirmation of this. They said in reply that, as far as they were concerned, they had never believed such things; that they quite recognized that all this talk was far from the truth; that had they

---

[1] See p. 143 *supra*.

que s'ils eussent creu autremēt, qu'ils ne fussent pas venus, & que c'estoit les autres qui auoient eu peur, pour n'auoir iamais veu de François que mon garçon. Ils me dirent aussi qu'il viendroit trois cens Algoumequins dās cinq ou six iours, si on les vouloit attendre, pour aller à la guerre auec eux contre les Yroquois, & que si ie n'y venois ils s'en retourneroient sans la faire. Ie les entretins fort sur le subiet de la source de la grande riuiere,[1] & de leur pays, dont ils me discoururent fort particulierement, tant des riuieres, sauts, lacs, & terres, que des peuples qui y habitent, & de ce qui p. 298. s'y trouue. Quatre d'entre eux m'asseurerent qu'ils auoient veu vne mer fort esloignee de leur pays, & le chemin difficile, tant à cause des guerres, que des deserts qu'il faut passer pour y paruenir. Ils me dirent aussi que l'yuer precedāt il estoit venu quelques sauuages du costé de la Floride par

---

thought otherwise they would not have come and that it was the others who were afraid, because they had never seen any Frenchmen except my young lad. They told me also that in five or six days would arrive three hundred Algonquins, if we would wait for them, for the purpose of going on the war-path with them against the Iroquois, but that if I did not go, they would return without doing anything.

I had much conversation with them regarding the source of the great river[1] and regarding their country, about which they told me many things, both of the rivers, falls, lakes, and lands, and of the tribes living there, and whatever is found in those parts. Four of them assured me that they had seen a sea, far from their country, but that the way to it was difficult, both on account of enemies, and of the wild stretches to be crossed in order to reach it. They told me also that during the preceding winter some Indians had come from the direction of Florida, beyond the country of the

[1] St. Lawrence.

derriere le pays des Yroquois, qui voyoient nostre mer Oceane, & ont amitié auec lesdicts sauuages : Enfin ils m'en discoururent fort exactement, me demonstrant par figures tous les lieux où ils auoient esté, prenant plaisir à m[']en discourir : & moy ie ne m'ennuiois pas à les entendre, pour estre fait certain des choses dont i'auois esté en doute iusques à ce qu'ils m'en eurent esclarcis. Aprés tous ces discours finis, ie leur dis qu'ils traictassent ce peu de cōmodités qu'ils auoiēt, ce qu'ils firent le lendemain, dont chacune des barques emporta sa piece : nous toute la peine & aduanture, les autres qui ne se soucioiēt d'aucunes descouuertures, la proye, qui est la seule cause qui les meut, sans rien employer ny hazarder.

Le lendemain aprés auoir traité tout ce qu'ils auoient, qui estoit peu de chose, ils firent vne barricade autour de leur logement du costé du bois, & en partie du costé de nos pattaches, & disoient que c'estoit pour leur seureté, afin

---

Iroquois, who were familiar with our ocean, and friendly with these latter Indians. In short they spoke to me of these things in great detail, showing me by drawings all the places they had visited, taking pleasure in telling me about them. And as for myself, I was not weary of listening to them, because some things were cleared up about which I had been in doubt until they enlightened me about them. When all this conversation was over, I told them they should barter the few articles they had, and they did so on the following day. Each pinnace carried off its share. We had had all the trouble and risk ; others, who did not worry about discoveries, had the profit, which is the only motive that moves them since they invest nothing and risk nothing.

On the following day after bartering all they had, which was very little, they made a barricade about their camp on the side of the woods and partly on the side of our pataches, saying that it was for greater security in case they were

p. 299. d'esuiter la surprinse de leurs ennemis : ce que nous prismes pour argent content.[a] La nuit venue ils appellerent nostre sauuage[1] qui couchoit à ma pattache, & mon garçon,[2] qui les furent trouuer : Aprés auoir tenu plusieurs discours, ils me firent aussi appeler enuiron sur la minuit. Estāt en leurs cabannes, ie les trouuay tous assis en conseil, où ils me firent assoir prés d[']eux, disans que leur coustume estoit que quād ils vouloient s'assembler pour proposer quelque chose, qu'ils le faisoient la nuit, afin de n'estre diuertis par l'aspect d'aucune chose, & que l'on ne pensoit qu'a escouter, & que le iour diuertissoit l'esprit par les abiects[b] : mais à mon opinion ils me vouloient dire leur volonté en cachette, se fians en moy. Et d'ailleurs ils craignoient les autres pattaches, comme ils me donnerēt à entendre depuis. Car ils me dirent qu'ils estoiēt faschez de voir tāt de François, qui n'estoient pas

[a] *Content = Comptant.*

[b] *Sic.*

---

surprised by their enemies, which we believed to be the truth. When night came they called our Indian,[1] who was sleeping in my patache, and my young lad,[2] and the two went to them. After a good deal of talk, they sent also about midnight for me. When I arrived at their lodges, I found them all sitting in council, and they made me sit down beside them, saying that their custom was, when they wished to meet to discuss some matter, to do so at night, in order not to have their attention diverted by any objects; for at night one thought only of listening, whilst daylight distracted the mind by the objects seen. But it seemed to me that, having confidence in me, they wished to tell me their desire in secret. Moreover, they were afraid of the other pataches, as they gave me afterwards to understand; for they told me that they were displeased at seeing so many Frenchmen, who were not very friendly towards one another,

[1] Savignon.

[2] Brulé ?

bien vnis ensemble, & qu'ils eussent bien desiré me voir seul : Que quelques vns d'entre eux auoient esté battuz : Qu'il[s] me vouloient autant de bien qu'a leurs enfans, ayant telle fiance en moy, que ce que ie leur dirois ils le feroient, mais qu'ils se m'effioiēt fort des autres : Que si ie retournois, que i'amenasse telle quantité de gens que ie voudrois, pourueu qu'ils fussent soubs la conduite d'vn chef : & qu'ils m'enuoyoient querir pour m'asseurer d'auantage de leur amitié, p. 300. qui ne se romproit iamais, & que ie ne fusse point faché contre eux : & que sçachans que i'auois pris deliberation de voir leur pays, ils me le feroient voir au peril de leurs vies, m'assistant d'vn bon nombre d'hommes qui pourroient passer par tout. Et qu'a l'aduenir nous deuions esperer d'eux comme ils faisoient de nous. Aussitost ils firent venir 50. castors & 4. carquans de leurs porcelaines (qu'ils estiment entre eux comme nous faisons les chaisnes d[']or) & que i'en fisse

---

and that they would have much liked to see me alone. They also said that some of their people had been beaten; that they were as kindly disposed to me as to their own children, and had such confidence in me that they would do whatever I told them, but that they much mistrusted the others. Furthermore, that should I return, I was to bring as many people as I liked, provided they were under the leadership of one chief; that they had sent for me to assure me again of their friendship, which would never be broken, and that they hoped I should not be angry with them. They said, moreover, that knowing I had resolved to visit their country, they would show it to me, at the risk of their lives, assisting me with a good number of men who could go anywhere, and that in future we should have the same confidence in them as they had in us.

Thereupon they sent for fifty beaver-skins and four wampum belts (which they value as we do gold chains)

participant mon frere (ils entendoient Pont-graué d'autant que nous estions ensemble) & que ces presens estoient d'autres Capitaines qui ne m'auoient iamais veu, qui me les enuoyoient, & qu'ils desiroient estre tousiours de mes amis : mais que s'il y auoit quelques Frãçois qui voulussent aller auec eux, qu'ils en eussent esté fort contens, & plus que iamais, pour entretenir vne ferme amitié. Aprés plusieurs discours faits, ie leur proposay, Qu'ayant la volonté de me faire voir leur pays, que ie supplierois sa Maiesté de nous assister iusques à 40. ou 50. hommes armez de choses necessaires pour ledit voyage, & que ie m'enbarquerois auec eux, à la charge qu'ils nous entretiendroient de ce qui seroit de besoin pour nostre viure durant ledit voyage, & que ie leur
p. 301. apporterois dequoy faire des presens aux chefs qui sont dans les pays par où nous passerions, puis nous nous en reuiẽdriõs yuerner en nostre habitation : & que si ie recognoissois le

saying I was to share these with my brother (meaning Pont-Gravé, since we were together): and that these were gifts from other chiefs, who, though they had never seen me, sent them to me; and that they were desirous always to be my friends; and that if there were any Frenchmen who wished to go with them, they would be more pleased than ever in order to maintain a firm friendship between us. After much conversation I proposed to them that, since they were willing to show me their country, I should humbly request His Majesty to assist us, to the extent of forty or fifty men, equipped with arms and implements necessary for the expedition, and that I should embark with these men on condition that they, the natives, should provide us with provisions during our journey, but that I should bring them what was required to make presents to the chiefs of the regions through which we should pass, and that we should then return and spend the winter at our settlement. Further-

pays bon & fertile, l'on y feroit plusieurs habitations ; & que par ce moyen aurions communication les vns auec les autres, viuās heureusement à l'auenir en la crainte de Dieu, qu'on leur feroit cognoistre. Ils furent fort contens de ceste proposition, & me prierent d'y tenir la main, disans qu'ils feroient de leur part tout ce qu'il leur seroit possible pour en venir au bout : & que pour ce qui estoit des viures, nous n'en manquerions non plus que eux mesmes, m'asseurans de rechef, de me faire voir ce que ie desirois : & la dessus ie pris cōgé d'eux au point du iour, en les remerciant de la volonté qu'ils auoient de fauoriser mon desir, les priant de tousiours continuer.

Le lendemain 17. iour dud. mois[1] ils dirent qu'ils s'en alloient à la chasse des castors, & qu'ils retourneroient tous. Le matin venu ils acheuerent de traicter ce peu qu'il leur restoit, & puis s'embarquerent en leurs canots, nous prians

---

more, if I discovered the country to be good and fertile, I promised to establish several settlements there whereby we should have communication with one another, and live happily in the future in the fear of God, whom we should make known to them. They were much pleased with this proposal, and urged me to see to it, saying that they on their part would do their utmost to bring it about, and that, as regards provisions, we should no more lack these than would they themselves, assuring me anew that they would show me what I desired to see. Thereupon, I took leave of them at daybreak, thanking them for their willingness to favour my wishes, and begging them to continue to do so.

On the following day, being the seventeenth of the month,[1] they said they were going off to hunt beavers, but that they would all come back. When morning came they finished bartering the few things they still had left, and then got

[1] June.

de ne toucher à leurs logemēts pour les deffaire, ce que nous leur promismes : & se separerent les vns des autres, faignant p. 302. aller chasser en plusieurs endroits, & laisserent nostre sauuage[1] auec moy pour nous dōner moins de mesfience d'eux : & neātmoins ils s'estoient donnez le randez-vous par de là le saut, où ils iugeoient bien que nous ne pourrions aller auec nos barques : cependant nous les attandions comme ils nous auoient dit.

Le lendemain il vint deux sauuages, l'vn estoit Yroquet, & l'autre le frere de nostre Sauignon,[2] qui le venoiēt requerir, & me prier de la part de tous leurs cōpagnōs que i'allasse seul auec mon garçon, où ils estoiēt cabannez, pour me dire quelque chose de consequence, qu'ils ne desiroient communiquer deuant aucuns François : Ie leur promis d'y aller.

Le iour venu ie donnay quelques bagatelles à Sauignon

---

into their canoes, requesting us not to touch their lodges for the purpose of taking them down; and we promised not to do so. And so they separated, pretending to go hunting in several directions, but they left our Indian [1] with me, so that we should have less suspicion of them. Nevertheless they had arranged a rendezvous above the rapid where they well knew we should be unable to take our pinnaces. Meanwhile we waited for them, relying upon what they had said.

On the following day came two Indians, Iroquet and the brother of our Indian Savignon.[2] They came to get the latter and asked me, on behalf of all their companions, to go alone with my lad to their encampment; for they had something important to tell me which they did not wish to communicate in the presence of any Frenchmen. I promised them to go.

When day came, I gave some trinkets to Savignon who

[1] Savignon.

[2] Tregouaroti. See p. 186.

qui partit fort content, me faisant entendre qu'il s'en alloit prendre vne vie bien penible aux prix de celle qu'il auoit eue en France ; & ainsi se separa auec grand regret, & moy biē aise d'en estre deschargé. Les deux Capitaines me dirent que le lendemain au matin ils m'enuoyeroient querir, ce qu'ils firent. Ie m'enbarquay & mon garçon auec ceux qui vinrent. Estant au saut,[1] nous fusmes dans le bois quelques huit lieues, où ils estoient cabannez sur le bort d'vn lac,[2] où i'auois esté auparauant. Comme ils me virent ils furent fort contens, & commencerent à s'escrier selon leur coustume, p. 303. & nostre sauuage[3] s'en vint audeuant de moy me prier d'aller en la cabāne de son frere, où aussi tost il fit mettre de la cher & du poissō sur le feu, pour me festoyer. Durant que ie fus là il se fit vn festin, où tous les principaux furēt inuitez : ie n'y fus oubligé,[a] bien que i'eusse desia pris ma refection

[a] Il faut sans doute lire *oublié*.

---

went off very happy, letting me know that he was going to lead a very hard life compared with the life he had lived in France. And so he went away regretfully, but I was glad to be relieved of the responsibility for him. The two chiefs told me that early on the following day they would send for me, and they did so. My lad and I embarked with those who came. On reaching the rapid,[1] we went into the woods, about eight leagues to their encampment, on the bank of a lake,[2] where I had been before.

When they saw me they rejoiced greatly, and began to shout as is their custom, and our Indian [3] came out to meet me, inviting me to go to his brother's tent, where immediately meat and fish were put on the fire for my entertainment. Whilst I was there a feast was given, to which all the chief men were invited. I was not left out, and, although I had

---

[1] The Lachine rapids.

[2] Probably the lake of Two Mountains at the mouth of the Ottawa. See p. 175.

[3] Savignon.

honnestement, mais pour ne rōpre la coustume du pays i'y fus. Aprés auoir repeu, ils s'en allerent dans les bois, tenir leur Conseil, & cependant ie m'amusay à contempler le paisage de ce lieu, qui est fort aggreable. Quelque temps aprés ils m'enuoyerent appeler pour me communiquer ce qu'ils auoient resolu entre eux. I'y fus auec mon garçon. Estant assis auprés d'eux ils me dirēt qu'ils estoient fort aises de me voir, & n'auoir point manqué à ma parolle de ce que ie leur auois promis, & qu'ils recognoissoient de plus en plus mon affection, qui estoit à leur continuer mon amitié, & que deuant que partir, ils desiroient prendre congé de moy, & qu'ils eussent eu trop de desplaisir s'ils s'en fussent allez sans me voir, croyant qu'autrement ie leur eusse voulu du mal : & que ce qui leur auoit faict dire qu'ils alloient à la chasse, & la barricade qu'ils auoient faite, ce n'estoit la crainte de leurs ennemis, ny le desir de la chasse, mais la crainte qu'ils

---

already had a good meal, I went to the feast, in order not to interrupt the custom of the country. After the banquet they went into the woods to hold their council, and meanwhile I amused myself by looking at the scenery of the place, which is very pleasant.

Some time afterwards they sent for me to communicate to me what had been decided. I went to them with my young lad. After taking my seat among them, they told me they were very glad to see me, and to know that I had not failed to keep my promise. They recognized more and more my affection and desire to continue our friendship, and said that before departing they wanted to take leave of me, and would have been quite hurt if they had gone away without seeing me ; for otherwise they would have thought that I wished them harm. They also stated that what had made them say they were going hunting and to build a barricade, was not fear of their enemies, nor the wish to hunt, but

auoient de toutes les autres pattaches qui estoient auec moy p. 304. à cause qu'ils auoient ouy dire que la nuit qu'ils m'enuoyerent appeler, qu'on les deuoit tous tuer, & que ie ne les pourrois deffendre contre les autres, estans beaucoup plus que moy, & que pour se desrober, ils vserent de ceste finesse : mais que s'il n'y eust eu que nos deux pattaches qu'ils eussent tardé quelques iours d'auantage qu'ils n'auoient fait ; & me prierent que reuenant auec mes compagnons ie n'en amenasse point d'autres. Ie leur dis que ie ne les amenois pas, ains[a] qu'ils me suiuoient sans leur dire, & qu'à l'aduenir i'yrois d'autre façon que ie n'auois fait, laquelle ie leur declaray, dont ils furent fort contens.[b]

Et derechef ils me commencerent à reciter ce qu'ils m'auoient promis touchant les descouuertures des terres, & moy ie leur fis promesse d'accomplir, moyennant la grace

---

[a] *Ains* = mais (au contraire).

[b] Ce long passage est un bon exemple de la naïveté littéraire de notre auteur, et de son style parfois si enchevêtré.

---

their fear of all the other pataches which were with me, because, on the night they had sent for me, they had heard that they were all to be killed. They felt that I could not defend them against the others, who were much more numerous, and so they had used this craftiness, in order to get away quietly. Had there been only our two pataches, they would have stayed a few days longer. They begged of me, when I returned with my companions, not to bring any other people. I told them I had not brought these, but that they had followed me without my asking them, and that in future I should proceed in a different fashion from what I had done in the past, at which declaration they were highly pleased.

And again they began to recite what they had promised me touching the exploration of the country. And on my part I promised them with God's help to do what I had

de Dieu, ce que ie leur auois dit. Ils me prierent encore de rechef de leur donner vn homme : ie leur dis que s'il y en auoit parmy nous qui y voulussent aller que i'en serois fort content.

Ils me dirent qu'il y auoit vn marchand appelé Bouier qui commandoit en vne pattache, qui les auoit priés d'emmener vn ieune garçõ ; ce qu'ils ne luy auoient voulu accorder qu'auparauant ils n'eussent sçeu de moy si i'en p. 305. estois content, ne sçachant si nous estions amis, d'autant qu'il estoit venu en ma compagnie traicter auec eux ; & qu'ils ne luy auoient point d'obligation en aucune façon : mais qu'il s'offroit de leur faire de grands presens.

Ie leur fis response que nous n'estions point ennemis, & qu'ils nous auoient veu conuerser souuent ensemble : mais pour ce qui estoit du trafic, chacun faisoit ce qu'il pouuoit, & que ledit Bouyer peut estre desiroit enuoyer ce garçon, comme i'auois fait le mien pensant esperer à l'aduenir,[a] ce

---

[a] A entendre probablement : *croyant pouvoir compter sur l'avenir.*

---

said. They requested me once more to give them a man, and I said that if there were any amongst us who would like to go, I should be very glad to send one.

They told me that there was a trader called Bouvier, captain of a patache, who had asked them to take a youth, but that they had been unwilling to do so, until they heard from me, whether I should agree ; for they were uncertain whether we were friends, although he had come in my company to barter with them. They said that they were not under any obligation whatsoever to him, but that he was offering to make them large presents.

I replied that we were not enemies and that often they had seen us talking together ; but so far as trade was concerned, each did what he could, and that Bouvier perhaps wished to send this youth, as I had sent mine, hoping for

que ie pouuois aussi pretendre d'eux: Toutesfois qu'ils auoient à iuger auquel ils auoient le plus d'obligation, & de qui ils deuoient plus esperer.

Ils me dirēt qu'il n'y auoit point de comparaison des obligations de l'vn à l'autre, tant des assistāces que ie leur auois faites en leurs guerres contre leurs ennemis, que de l'offre que ie leur faisois de ma personne pour l'aduenir, où tousiours ils m'auoient trouué veritable, & que le tout despendoit de ma volonté: & que ce qui leur en faisoit parler estoit lesdicts presens qu'il leur auoit offert: & que quand bien ledit garçon iroit auec eux, que cela ne les pouuoit obliger enuers ledit Bouuier comme ils estoient enuers moy, & que cela n'importeroit de rien à l'aduenir, veu que ce n'estoit que pour auoir lesdicts presens dudit Bouuier. p. 306.

Ie leur fis response qu'il m'estoit indifferent qu'ils le prinssent ou non, & qu'à la verité s'ils le prenoient auec peu

---

future advantage, much as I also might expect from them. Still it was their duty to decide to whom they owed most and from whom they should expect most.

They told me there was no comparison between what they owed to each of us; for I had given them much assistance in their wars with their enemies, and had offered them my personal help for the future. And since they had always found me truthful in such matters, everything now depended upon my good pleasure. They said that what had made them speak of the matter was the gifts that he had offered them, and that even if this lad should go with them, that fact could lay them under no obligation to Bouvier, comparable to their indebtedness to me, and moreover could make no difference in the future, seeing they only took him in order to have Bouvier's presents.

I replied that it was a matter of indifference to me whether they took this lad with them or not, and that if they took

de chose, que i'en serois fasché, mais en leur faisant de bons presens que i'en serois comptant, pourueu qu'il demourast auec Yroquet : ce qu'ils me promirent. Et aprés m'auoir fait entendre leur volonté pour la derniere fois, & moy à eux la mienne, il y eut vn sauuage qui auoit esté prisonnier par trois fois des Yroquois, & s'estoit sauué fort heureusement, qui resolut d'aller à la guerre luy dixiesme, pour se venger des cruautez que ses ennemis luy auoient fait souffrir. Tous les Capitaines me prierent de l'en destourner si ie pouuois d'autant qu'il estoit fort vaillant, & craignoiēt qu'il ne s'engageast si auāt parmy les ennemis auec si petite trouppe, qu'il n'en reuint iamais. Ie le fis pour les contenter, par toutes les raisons que ie luy peus alleguer, lesquelles luy seruirent peu, me monstrant vne partie de ses doigts couppez, & de grādes taillades & bruslures qu'il auoit sur le corps, comme ils l'auoient tourmanté, & qu'il luy estoit impossible de viure, s'il ne faisoit mourir de ses ennemis, & n'en auoit

---

him indeed with small recompense, I should be sorry ; but if Bouvier made them good presents, I should be glad, provided the lad stayed with Iroquet, as they promised me he would. When, for the last time, they had told me their desires and I had told them mine, there was an Indian who had been three times a prisoner of the Iroquois, but who had very luckily escaped, who resolved to go with nine others on the war-path, in order to avenge himself for the cruelties his enemies had inflicted upon him. All the chiefs begged of me to dissuade him if I could ; for he was very brave and they feared lest he and his little band might become so deeply involved with the enemy, that he would never return. To satisfy the chiefs I spoke to him, setting forth all the reasons I could think of ; but they were of little use ; for showing me his hacked-off fingers, as well as the great cuts and burns on his body, where they had tortured him, he replied that it was impossible for him to live unless he killed

vengeance, & que son cœur luy disoit qu'il failloit qu'il partist au plustost qu'il luy seroit possible : ce qu'il fit fort deliberé de bien faire.

Aprés auoir fait auec eux, ie les priay de me ramener p. 307. en nostre pattache : pour ce faire ils equipperent 8. canots pour passer ledit saut & se despouillerent tous nuds, & me firent mettre en chemise : car souuant il arriue que d'aucuns se perdent en le passant, partant se tiennent les vns prés des autres pour se secourir promptement si quelque canot arriuoit à renuerser. Ils me disoient si par malheur le tien venoit à tourner, ne sachant point nager, ne l'abandonne en aucune façon, & te tiens bien à de petits bastōs qui y sont par le milieu, car nous te sauuerons aysement : Ie vous asseure que ceux qui n'ont pas veu ny passé ledit endroit en des petits batteaux comme ils ont, ne le pouroient pas sans grande apprehension mesmes le plus asseuré du monde. Mais ces nations sont si addextres à passer les

---

some of his enemies, and took vengeance upon them. He said that his heart told him that he must set off as soon as possible, and he did go, firmly resolved to fight bravely.

Having finished with them, I asked them to bring me back to our patache. To do this, they made ready eight canoes, with which to run the rapids, and they stripped naked, but left me in my shirt ; for it often happens that some are lost in running the rapids. Consequently they keep close to one another, in order to give prompt help, if a canoe should happen to capsize. They told me that if unfortunately my canoe should upset, since I did not know how to swim, I ought under no circumstances to let go, but to keep hold of the small pieces of wood in the centre of the canoe ; for they would easily rescue me. I assure you that even the bravest people in the world who have not seen nor passed this place in small boats such as theirs, could not do so without great apprehension. But these tribes are so clever

sauts, que cela leur est facile : Ie le passay auec eux, ce que ie n'auois iamais fait, ny autre Chretien, horsmis mondit garçon[1] : & vinsmes à nos barques, où i'en logay vne bonne partie, & i'eus quelques paroles auec ledit Bouuier pour la crainte qu'il auoit que ie n'ẽpeschasse que son garçon n'allast auec lesdits sauuages, qui le lendemain s'en retournerent auec ledit garçõ, lequel cousta bon à son maistre, qui auoit l'esperance à mõ opiniõ, de recouurir la perte de son voyage p. 308. qu'il fit assés notable, comme firent plusieurs autres.

Il y eut vn ieune homme des nostres qui se delibera d'aller auec lesdicts sauuages, qui sont Charioquois[2] esloignez du saut de quelques cent cinquante lieues ; & fut auec le frere de Sauignon, qui estoit l'vn des Capitaines,[3] qui me promit luy faire voir tout ce qu'il pourroit : Et celuy de Bouuier fut auec ledit Yroquet Algoumequin, qui est à

at shooting rapids, that this is easy for them. I ran this one with them, a thing I had never done before, nor had any other Christian, except my young man of whom I have already spoken.[1] And we came to our pinnaces where I found quarters for a good many of them, and I had a discussion with Bouvier, who was afraid lest I might hinder his young lad from going off with the Indians. On the following day they set off for home with this youth, who cost his master dearly. I suppose he hoped to recover in this way the rather large losses which he, like many others, had suffered in this year's expedition.

There was a young man of our party who decided to go home with the Charioquois Indians,[2] who live about a hundred and fifty leagues from the rapids. He went with Savignon's brother, one of the chiefs,[3] who promised me to show him as much as he could. Bouvier's lad went home quelque quatrevingts lieues dudit saut. Ils s'en allerent fort contens & satisfaicts.

---

[1] See p. 181 *supra*. [2] Hurons. [3] Tregouaroti. See p. 186.

Aprés que les susdicts sauuages furent partis, nous attendimes encore les 300. autres que l'on nous auoit dit qui deuoiēt venir sur la promesse que ie leur auois faite. Voyant qu'ils ne venoient point, toutes les pattaches resolurent d'inciter quelques sauuages Algoumequins, qui estoient venus de Tadoussac, d'aller audeuant d'eux moyennant quelque chose qu'on leur donneroit quand ils seroyent de retour, qui deuoit estre au plus tard dans neuf iours, afin d'estre asseurés de leur venue ou nō, pour nous en retourner à Tadoussac : ce qu'ils accorderēt, & pour cest effect partit vn canot.

Le cinquiesme iour de Iuillet arriua vn canot des Algoumequins de ceux qui deuoient venir au nombre de trois cēs, qui nous dit que le canot qui estoit party d'auec p. 309. nous estoit arriué en leur pays, & que leurs cōpagnōs estans

---

with the Algonquin, Iroquet, who lives some eighty leagues from the rapid. They went off quite happy and contented.

After the departure of these Indians, we still waited for the three hundred others, who, we were informed, were to come, on the strength of the promise which I had made to them. Seeing that they did not arrive, the pataches all decided to induce some Algonquins who had come from Tadoussac, to set off to meet them, promising to give them something when they should get back, which was to be at the latest within nine days; for we wished to be sure whether the Algonquins were coming or not, in order to return to Tadoussac. This they agreed to do, and accordingly one canoe set off.

On the fifth of July arrived a canoe from the Algonquins who had promised to come to the number of three hundred. We learned from it that the canoe which had left us had reached their country, and that its occupants, being wearied

lassez du chemin qu'ils auoient fait se rafraischissoient, & qu'ils viendroient bien tost effectuer la promesse qu'ils auoient faite, & que pour le plus ils ne tarderoient pas plus de huit iours, mais qu'il n'y auroit que 24. canots : d'autant qu'il estoit mort vn de leurs Capitaines & beaucoup de leurs compagnons, d'vne fieure qui s'estoit mise parmy eux : & aussi qu'ils en auoyent enuoyé plusieurs à la guerre, & que c'estoit ce qui les auoit empeschez de venir. Nous resolusmes de les attendre.

Voyant que ce temps estoit passé, & qu'ils ne venoyent point : Pontgraué partit du saut le 11. iour dudit mois, pour mettre ordre à quelques affaires qu'il auoit à Thadoussac, & moy ie demeuray pour attendre lesdits sauuages.

Cedit iour arriua vne pattache, qui apporta du rafraichissemēt à beaucoup de barques que nous estiōs : Car il y auoit quelques iours que le pain, vin, viande & le citre nous estoiēt faillis, & n'auions recours qu'à la pesche du poisson, & à la

with the distance they had travelled, were resting. These men informed us that their tribe would soon come and redeem the promise they had made ; and would not be more than eight days late ; but that there would only be twenty-four canoes, inasmuch as one of their chiefs and many of their tribe had died of a fever which had broken out amongst them. Moreover, they had sent many braves on the war-path ; and this it was that had hindered them from coming. We decided to wait for them.

When this period had expired without their coming, Pont-Gravé left the rapid on the eleventh of the month to attend to some business at Tadoussac, and I remained to await the Indians.

On that same day there arrived a patache with provisions for the numerous pinnaces at the rapid ; for our bread, wine, meat, and cider had given out some days before, and our only recourse was to catch fish, to the good water of

belle eau de la riuiere, & à quelques racines qui sont au pays, qui ne nous mãquerent en aucunne façon que ce fust : & sans cela il nous en eust falu retourner. Ce mesme iour arriua vn canot Algoumequin qui nous assura que le lendemain lesdits vingtquatre canots deuoyent venir, dont il y en auoit douze pour la guerre. p. 310.

Le 12. dudit mois[1] arriuerent lesdits Algoumequins auec quelque peu de marchandise. Premier que traicter ils firent vn present à vn sauuage Mõtagnet, qui estoit fils d'Annadabigeau [2] dernier[a] mort, pour l'appaiser & defascher de la mort de sondit pere. Peu de temps apres ils se resolurẽt de faire quelques presents à tous les Capitaines des pattaches. Ils donnerent à chacun dix Castors : & en les donnant, ils dirent qu'ils estoyent bien marris de n'en auoir

[a] *Dernier*, comme le vieux mot *derrain*, avait quelquefois le sens de *récemment*.

---

the river, and to some native roots, which things did not fail us in any way. Had it not been for them we should have been obliged to return. That same day arrived an Algonquin canoe, which assured us that, on the following day, the twenty-four canoes would arrive, twelve of which were ready to go on the war-path.

On the twelfth day of the month[1] the Algonquins arrived with some few furs. Before beginning to barter they offered a present to a Montagnais Indian, the son of Annadabigeau,[2] recently deceased, in order to appease and comfort him upon his father's death. Shortly after this they decided to make gifts to all the captains of the pataches. To each they gave ten beaver-skins, and in giving these they said that they were sorry they had not more of them ;

[1] July.

[2] See Vol. I, p. 99, where the name is spelt Anadabijou.

beaucoup, mais que la guerre (ou la plus part alloyent) en estoit cause : toutesfois que l'on prist ce qu'ils offroyent de bon cœur, & qu'ils estoyent tous nos amis, & à moy qui estois assis aupres d'eux, par dessus tous les autres, qui ne leur vouloyent du bien que pour leurs Castors : ne faisant pas cōme moy qui les auois tousiours assistez, & ne m'auoiēt iamais trouué en deux parolles[a] comme les autres.

Ie leur fis response que tous ceux qu'ils voioyent assemblez estoyent de leurs amis, & que peust-estre que quand il se presenteroit quelque occasion, ils ne laisseroyent de faire p.311. leur deuoir, & que nous estions tous amis, & qu'ils continuassent à nous vouloir du bien, & que nous leur ferions des presens au reciprocque de ce qu'ils nous donnoyent, & qu'ils traitassent paisiblement : ce qu'ils firent, & chacun en emporta ce qu'il peut.

[a] "On dit qu'*Un homme est en deux paroles*, pour dire, qu'Il parle tantost d'une façon, tantost d'une autre, qu'il n'y a pas de fondement à faire sur ce qu'il dit."—*Dictionnaire de l'Acad. françoise.* (1694.)

---

but that the war to which the majority were on their way was the cause of the small number. Still they hoped that we should take what they offered in a kindly spirit ; for they were all friendly to us, and to me, who was sitting beside them, above all the others, who were well-disposed to them only on account of their beaver-skins. For they found that the others were not like me, who had always assisted them, and had never been double-tongued like the others.

I replied that all those whom they saw assembled were their friends, and that perhaps should an opportunity occur, they would not fail to do their duty ; that we were all friends and that they should continue to be well-disposed towards us ; for we would make them presents in exchange for what they gave us, and I hoped they would trade in peaceable fashion. They did so, and each one carried away what he could.

Le lendemain ils m'apporterent, comme en cachette quarante Castors, en m'asseurant de leur amitié, & qu'ils estoient tres-aises de la deliberation que i'auois prinse auec les sauuages qui s'en estoyent allez, & que l'on faisoit vne habitation au saut, ce que ie leur asseuray, & leur fis quelque present en eschange.

Aprés toutes choses passees, ils se delibererent d'aller querir le corps d'Outetoucos qui s'estoit noyé au saut, comme nous auons dit cy dessus.[1] Ils furent où il estoit, le desenterrerẽt & le porterent en l'isle sainte Helaine,[2] où ils firent leurs ceremonies accoustumees, qui est de chanter & danser sur la fosse, suiuies de festins & banquets. Ie leur demanday pourquoy ils desenterroyent ce corps : Ils me respondirent que si leurs ennemis auoyent trouué la fosse, qu'ils le feroyent, & le mettroit[a] en plusieurs pieces,

[a] A lire *mettroient.*

The next day they brought me secretly forty beaver-skins, assuring me of their friendship, and saying they were very glad of the decision I had taken with the Indians who had left for home, that we should make a settlement at the rapids. I reassured them on this point, and made them a present in return.

After this was done, they decided to go and get the body of Outetoucos, who was drowned at the rapid, as we have already related.[1] They proceeded to the spot where the body was, disinterred it and carried it to St. Helen's island,[2] where they performed their usual ceremonies of singing and dancing over the grave, with feasts and banquets afterwards. I asked them why they disinterred the body. They answered that if their enemies found the grave, they would do so, and would cut the body into several pieces,

[1] See p. 183.

[2] See pp. 178–79.

qu'ils pendroyent à des arbres pour leur faire du desplaisir ; & pour ce subiect ils le transportoyent en lieu escarté du chemin & le plus secrettement qu'ils pouuoyent.

p. 312. Le 15. iour du mois[1] arriuerent quatorze canots, dōt le chef s'appelloit Tecouehata. A leur arriuee tous les autres sauuages se mirent en armes, & firent quelques tours de limasson.[a] Apres auoir assez tourné & dansé, les autres qui estoyent en leurs canots commencerent aussi à danser en faisant plusieurs mouuemēs de leurs corps. Le chant fini, ils descendirent à terre auec quelque peu de fourrures, & firent de pareils presens que les autres auoyent faict. On leur en fit d'autres au reciproque selon la valeur. Le lendemain ils traitterent ce peu qu'ils auoyent, & me firent present encore particulie[re]ment de trente Castors, dont ie les recompensay. Ils me prierent que ie continuasse à leur vouloir du bien, ce que ie leur promis. Ils me dis-

[a] *Cf.* Vol. I, p. 179.

---

which they would hang upon trees to insult them. For this reason they said that they carried the body to a spot away from the trail, and as secretly as they could.

On the fifteenth of the month [1] arrived fourteen canoes whose leader was called Tecouehata. On their arrival all the other Indians took up their arms and went through drill movements. Having turned about and danced enough, the others who were in their canoes began also to dance, at the same time making various movements with their body. The singing over, they landed with a few furs and made presents like those the others had given. We in return made them similar presents of equal value. The next day they bartered the little they had, and made me especially a present of thirty beaver-skins, for which I recompensed them. They begged me to continue to be friendly to them, and this I promised to do. They discussed with me very

[1] July.

coururent fort particulierement sur quelques descouuertures du costé du Nord, qui pouuoyent apporter de l'vtilité : Et sur ce subiect ils me dirent que s'il y auoit quelqu'vn de mes cōpagnons qui voulut aller auec eux, qu'ils luy feroyent voir chose qui m'apporteroit du contentement, & qu'ils le traiteroyent comme vn de leurs enfans. Ie leur promis de leur donner vn ieune garçon, dont ils furent fort contens. Quand il prit congé de moy pour aller auec eux, ie luy baillay vn memoire fort particulier des choses qu'il deuoit obseruer estant parmi eux. Apres qu'ils eurēt traicté tout le peu p. 313. qu'ils auoyent, ils se separerent en trois : les vns pour la guerre, les autres par ledit grand saut,[1] & les autres par vne petitte riuiere qui va rendre en celle dudit grand saut : & partirent le dixhuictiesme iour dudit mois,[2] & nous aussi le mesme iour.

Cedit iour fismes trente lieues qu'il y a dudit saut aux

---

particularly about some explorations in the north which might prove advantageous. And on this subject, they said to me that if any of my companions would go with them, they would show him something which would please me; and that they would treat him like one of their own children. I promised to give them a young lad, whereat they were much pleased. When he said good-bye to me to set off with them, I gave him a very particular memorandum of the things he should observe. After they had bartered the small quantity of goods they had, they separated into three parties : one to go on the war-path, another to go by way of the Great Rapid,[1] and another to go by way of a small river which empties into that of the Great Rapid. They set off on the eighteenth of the month,[2] and we also on the same day.

That day we made thirty leagues, the distance from the

[1] The Lachine rapids.

[2] July.

trois riuieres, & le dixneufiesme arriuasmes à Quebec, où il y a aussi trente lieues desdittes trois riuieres. Ie disposay la plus part d'vn chacun [a] à demeurer en laditte habitation, puis y fis faire quelques reparations & planter des rosiers, & fis charger du chesne de fente pour faire l'espreuué en France, tant pour le marrin lambris [b] que fenestrages : Et le landemain 20. dudit mois de Iuillet en partis. Le 23. i'arriuay à Tadoussac, où estant ie me resoulus de reuenir en Frãce, auec l'aduis de Pont-graué. Apres auoir mis ordre à ce qui despandoit de nostre habitation, suiuãt la charge que ledit sieur de Monts m'auoit donnee, ie m'enbarquay dedans le vaisseau du capitaine Tibaut de la Rochelle, l'onziesme d'Aoust. Sur nostre trauerse nous ne manquasme[s] de poisson, comme d'Orades, Grãde-oreille, & de Pilotes qui sont comme harangs, qui se mettent autour de certains

[a] A entendre : *la plupart de tout le monde.*

[b] *Marrin* (de nos jours écrit *mairain* et *merrain*) voulait dire *bois de construction.* Voir p. 345 *infra.*

---

rapid to Three Rivers, and on the nineteenth we reached Quebec, which is also thirty leagues from Three Rivers. I induced nearly everyone to remain at this settlement, then had some repairs made and some rose-bushes planted. I had some split oak put on board, to be tested in France both for wainscoting and for window-frames. On the following day, the twentieth of July, I set out thence and on the twenty-third arrived at Tadoussac, where, with the approval of Pont-Gravé, I made up my mind to return to France. Having given directions about the things at our settlement, according to the charge given to me by the Sieur de Monts, on the eleventh of August I embarked in the ship of Captain Tibaut, of La Rochelle. During the voyage we had plenty of fish, such as dorados, tunnies, and pilot-fish. The last resemble herrings, and gather about certain planks

aix chargez de poulse-pied,[a] qui est vne sorte de coquillage qui s'y attache, & y croist par succession de temps. Il y a p. 314. quelquesfois vne si grande quantité de ces petits poissons, que c'est chose estrange à voir. Nous prismes aussi des marsouins & autres especes. Nous eusmes asses beau temps iusques à Belle-isle,[1] où les brumes nous prirent, qui durerent 3. ou 4. iours: puis le temps venant beau, nous eusmes cognoissance d'Aluert,[2] & arriuasmes à la Rochelle le dixsiesme Septembre. 1611.

[a] Le *pousse-pieds* (ou plutôt *pouce-pied*), ainsi nommé à cause de son pédoncle en forme de pouce.

---

covered with barnacles, which is a sort of shell-fish, which attach themselves thereto, and increase with the lapse of time. Sometimes there is such a quantity of these small fish, that it is wonderful to see. We caught also porpoises and other varieties of fish. We had fairly good weather as far as Belle-Isle,[1] where we were caught in a fog which lasted three or four days. Then the weather turning fine, we sighted Alvert [2] and arrived at La Rochelle on the tenth of September, 1611.

[1] Belle-Isle, in Brittany, or Belle-Isle-en-Mer.

[2] Pointe d'Arvert, twenty-seven miles south of La Rochelle. (Grant.)

Arriuée à la Rochelle. Association rompue entre le sieur de Mons & ses associez, les sieurs Colier & le Gendre de Rouen. Enuie des François touchant les nouuelles descouuertures de la nouuelle France.

CHAP. IIII.

ESTANS arriués à la Rochelle ie fus trouuer le sieur de Mons à Pont en Xintōge,[1] pour luy donner aduis de tout ce qui c'estoit passé au voyage, & de la promesse que les sauuages Ochateguins[2] & Algoumequins m'auoiēt faitte, pourueu qu'on les assistast en leurs guerres, cōme ie leur auois promis. Le sieur de Mons ayāt le tout entendu, se delibera d'aller en Cour pour mettre ordre à ceste affaire. Ie prins le deuāt pour y aller aussi : mais en chemain ie fus arresté par vn mal'heureux cheual p. 315. qui tomba sur moy & me pensa tuer. Ceste cheute me retarda beaucoup : mais aussi tost que ie me trouuay en

---

Arrival at La Rochelle. Partnership dissolved between the Sieur de Monts and his associates, the Sieurs Colier and Le Gendre of Rouen. Jealousy of the French regarding the new explorations in New France.

CHAPTER IV

UPON my arrival at La Rochelle, I went to see the Sieur de Monts at Pont in Saintonge,[1] to inform him of all that had happened during my expedition, and of the promise made to me by the Ochateguins[2] and Algonquins upon the conditions which I accepted to assist them in their wars. The Sieur de Monts, after hearing the whole story, decided to go to Court, to get the matter settled. I started off ahead to go there as well, but on the way was held up by a wretched horse which fell upon me and nearly killed me. This fall delayed me a long time; but as soon

---

[1] Pons, of which de Monts was Governor.

[2] Hurons.

asses bonne disposition, ie me mis en chemin, pour parfaire mō voyage & aller trouuer ledit sieur de Mons à Fontainebleau,[1] lequel estant retourné à Paris parla à ses associez, qui ne voulurent plus continuer en l'association pour n'auoir point de cōmission qui peut empescher vn chacun d'aller en nos nouuelles descouuertures negotier auec les habitās du pays. Ce que voyant ledit sieur de Mons, il conuint auec eux de ce qui restoit en l'habitatiō de Quebec, moyennant vne somme de deniers qui leur donna[a] pour la part qu'ils y auoyent : & enuoya quelques hommes pour conseruer ladite habitation, sur l'esperance d'obtenir vne commissiō de sa Majesté. Mais comme il estoit en ceste poursuitte, quelques affaires de consequence luy suruindrent, qui la luy firent quitter, & me laissa la charge d'en rechercher les moyens : Et ainsi que i'estois apres[b] à y mettre ordre,

[a] Il faut probablement lire *qu'il leur donna*.

[b] *Cf.* l'expression populaire : *se mettre après quelque chose* = s'en occuper.

---

as I was in a fit condition, I set out to complete my journey, and to meet the Sieur de Monts at Fontainebleau.[1] The latter, on his return to Paris, had an interview with his partners ; but these were unwilling to continue the partnership any longer, since they had no mandate to exclude anyone from our new discoveries and from bartering with the inhabitants of the region. When the Sieur de Monts saw this, he came to terms with his partners for what remained in the settlement of Quebec, paying them a sum of money for their share in the business. He sent out a few men to protect the settlement, hoping still to receive a monopoly from His Majesty. While he was occupied in this pursuit, unexpected and important business forced him to abandon it, and to me he left the task of finding ways and means.

Whilst I was in the midst of this business, the vessels

[1] See p. 109, note 3.

les vesseaux arriuerent de la nouuelle France, & par mesme moyen des gens de nostre habitation, de ceux que i'auois enuoyé dans les terres auec les sauuages, qui m'aporterent d'assez bonnes nouuelles, disans que plus de deux cents sauuages estoiēt venus, pensans me trouuer au grand saut p. 316. S. Louys,[1] où ie leur auois donné le rende-vous, en intention de les assister en ce qu'ils m'auoient supplié : mais voyans que ie n'auois pas tenu ma promesse, cela les fascha fort : toutesfois nos gens leur firent quelques excuses qu'ils prirent pour argent content,[a] les assurant pour l'annee suiuante ou bien iamais, & qu'ils ne menquassent point de venir : ce qu'il[s] promirent de leur part. Mais plusieurs autres qui auoiēt quitté Tadoussac, traffic encien,[b] vindrent audit saut auec quātité de petites barques, pour voir s'ils y pourroient faire leurs affaires auec ces peuples, qu[']ils asseuroient de ma

[a] Voir ci-dessus, p. 193.

[b] A suppléer quelque chose comme *et leur*.

---

arrived from New France, and in them some of those people from our settlement whom I had sent with the natives into the interior. They brought me rather good news, to the effect that more than two hundred Indians had come down in the expectation of finding me at the great rapid of St. Louis,[1] where with the intention of giving them the assistance for which they had asked, I had agreed to meet them. When they saw that I had not kept my promise, they were much annoyed. However, apologies, which they accepted as real, were made by our men, who assured them that in the following year I should certainly come, and that they also must not fail to appear. They promised that they would not; but several others, who had forsaken their former traffic at Tadoussac, came to the rapids with a number of small pinnaces, to see whether they could carry on barter with these tribes, to whom they affirmed that I was dead, what-

[1] The Lachine rapids.

mort, quoy que peussent dire nos gens, qui affermoyent le contraire. Voila comme l'enuie se glisse dans les mauuais naturels contre les choses vertueuses ; & ne leur faudroit que des gens qui se hasardassent en mille dangers pour descouurir des peuples & terres, afin qu'ils en eussẽt la depouille, & les autres la peine. Il n'est pas raisonnable qu'ayant pris la brebis, les autres ayent la toison. S'ils vouloient participer en nos descouuertures, employer de leurs moyens, & hasarder leurs personnes, ils monstreroyent auoir de l'honneur & de la gloire : mais au contraire ils monstrent euidemment qu'ils sont poussez d'vne pure malice de vouloir esgalement iouir du fruict de nos labeurs. Ce suiect me fera encore dire quelque chose pour monstrer p. 317. comme plusieurs taschent a destourner de louables dessins, comme ceux de sainct Maslo & d'autres, qui disent, que la iouyssance de ses[a] descouuertures leur appartiẽt, pource que Iaques Quartier estoit de leur ville, qui fut le premier

[a] Lire plutôt *ces*.

---

ever our men might say to the contrary. Thus does jealousy steal into bad natures in opposition to worthy objects. They only want people to run a thousand risks in discovering nations and countries in order that they may keep the profits and the others the hardships. It is unreasonable when one has caught the sheep for another to have the fleece. Had they been willing to share our explorations, use their resources, and risk their persons, they would have shown that they possessed honour and a love of renown ; but, on the contrary, they clearly show that they are driven by pure malice to seek to enjoy equally with us the fruits of our labours.

This topic prompts me again to say something to show how some try to turn men aside from worthy enterprises, like the people of St. Malo and others, who say that the profit from these discoveries belongs to them, because

audit pays de Canada & aux isles de Terre-neufue : comme si la ville auoit contribué aux frais des dittes descouuertures de Iaques Quartier, qui y fut par cōmendement, & aux despens du Roy François premier és annee[s] 1534. & 1535. descouurir ces terres auiourd'huy appelees nouuelle France ? Si donc ledit Quartier a descouuert quelque chose aux despens de sa Majesté, tous ses suiets peuuent y auoir autant de droit & de liberté que ceux de S. Maslo, qui ne peuuent empescher que si aucuns descouurent autre chose à leurs despens, comme l'on fait paroistre par les descouuertures cy dessus descriptes, qu'ils n'en iouissent paisiblement : Donc ils ne doiuent pas s'attribuer aucun droict, si eux mesmes ne cōtribuent. Leurs raisons sont foibles & debiles, de ce costé. Et pour mōstrer encore a ceux qui voudroiēt soustenir ceste cause, qu'ils sont mal fondez, posons le cas qu'vn Espagnol ou autre estranger ait descouuert quelques terres

---

Jacques Cartier, who first visited Canada and the islands of Newfoundland, came from their town ; as if that town had contributed to the expenses of the said discoveries of Jacques Cartier, who went there by the command, and at the expense, of King Francis I, in the years 1534 and 1535, to explore these lands now called New France. If then Cartier made these discoveries at the expense of His Majesty, all his subjects are entitled to the same rights and liberties therein as the people of St. Malo, and these cannot prevent any who have made discoveries at their own expense, as has been shown to be the case in regard to the discoveries described above, from the peaceable enjoyment thereof ; wherefore they should not claim a right to anything to which they themselves have not contributed ; and their reasons in this respect are poor and weak.

And to show more fully to those who would maintain this plea, that they have no ground to stand on, let us take the case of a Spaniard or other foreigner having discovered

& richesses aux despẽs du Roy de Frãce, scauoir si les Espagnols ou autres estrangers s'attribueroiẽt les descouuertures & richesses pour estre l'entrepreneur Espagnol ou estranger : non, il n'y a pas de raison, elles seroient tousiours de Frãce : de sorte que ceux de S. Maslo ne peuuẽt se l'attribuer, ainsi que dit est, pour estre ledit Quartier de leur ville : mais seulemẽt a cause qu'il en est sorty, ils en doiuẽt faire estat, & luy donner la louange qui lui est deue. Dauantage ledit Quartier au voyage qu'il a fait ne passa iamais ledit grand saut S. Louys,[1] & ne descouurit rien Nort ny Su, dans les terres du fleuue S. Laurẽs : ses relations n'ẽ donnent aucun tesmoignage, & n'y est parlé que de la riuiere du Saquenay, des trois riuieres[2] & sainte Croix,[3] où il hyuerna en vn fort proche de nostre habitatiõ : car il ne l'eust obmis nõ plus que ce qu'il a descrit, qui monstre qu'il p. 318.

lands and treasures at the expense of the king of France ; would the Spaniards or other foreigners lay claim to these discoveries and treasures, because the discoverer was a Spaniard or other foreigner ? No, there is no ground for this ; the discoveries would certainly belong to France, so that the people of St. Malo cannot claim these, as we have shown, because Cartier came from their town ; but all they can do, because he came from their city, is to esteem him, and to give him the praise which is his due.

Moreover, Cartier on his voyage never passed beyond the great rapid of St. Louis,[1] and did not make explorations, either to the north or south of the river St. Lawrence. His narratives give no evidence of this, and in them he speaks only of the river Saguenay, of Three Rivers[2] and of the Ste. Croix,[3] where he wintered in a fort near our settlement. For had he made other explorations, he would not have omitted to speak of them as he has done of what he did describe ; which shows that he left out all the upper part

---

[1] The Lachine rapids. [2] The St. Maurice. [3] The St. Charles.

a laissé tout le haut du fleuue S. Laurens, depuis Tadoussac iusques au grand saut, difficile a descouurir les terres, & qu'il ne s'est voulu hasarder n'y laiser ses barques pour s'i aduēturer : de sorte que cela est tousiours demeuré inutile, sinō depuis quatre ans que nous y auons fait nostre habitation de Quebec, où apres l'auoir faite edifier, ie me mis au hazard de passer ledit saut pour assister les sauuages en leurs guerres, y enuoyer des hommes pour cognoistre les p. 319. peuples, leurs façon[s] de viure(s) & que c'est que de leurs terres. Nous y estans si bien employez, n'est-il pas raison que nous iouissiōs du fruit de nos labeurs, sa Majesté[1] n'ayant donné aucun moyen pour assister les entrepreneurs de ces dessins iusques a present ? I'espere, que Dieu luy fera la grace vn iour de faire tant pour le seruice de Dieu, de sa grandeur & bien de ses subiets, que d'amener plusieurs pauures peuples à la cognoissance de nostre foy, pour iouir vn iour du Royaume celeste.

---

of the river St. Lawrence, from Tadoussac to the Great Rapid, where it is difficult to explore territory, and where he was unwilling to run risks or to leave his pinnaces and adventure himself. Thus his work has remained without results, until within the last four years, when we built our settlement at Quebec, and having completed the building, I ventured to pass the rapid, in order to assist the Indians in their wars, and to send men there to become acquainted with the tribes, their manner of life and to see what their territory is like. Having spent our time to this good purpose, is it not right that we should enjoy the fruits of our labours, since His Majesty,[1] up to the present, has not provided the funds for assisting those who undertake such projects ?

I hope that some day, for the service of God, for his own glory, and for the good of his subjects, His Majesty may by God's grace succeed in bringing many poor tribes to the knowledge of our faith, in order that later on they may enjoy the heavenly kingdom.

[1] Louis XIII.

INTELLIGENCE DES DEVX cartes Geograffiques de la nouuelle France.[1]

p. 320.

IL m'a semblé bon de traicter aussi quelque chose touchāt les deux cartes Geografiques, pour en donner l'intelligence : car bien que l'vne represente l'autre, en ce qui est des ports, bayes, caps, promontoires, & riuieres qui entrent dans les terres, elles sont toutesfois differentes en ce qui est des situations. La plus petite est en son vray meridien,[2] suiuant ce que le sieur de Castelfranc le demonstre en son liure de la mecometrie de la guide-aymant,[3] où i'en ay obserué plusieurs declinaisons, qui m'ont beaucoup serui, comme il se verra en ladite carte, auec toutes les

---

EXPLANATION OF THE TWO Maps of New France.[1]

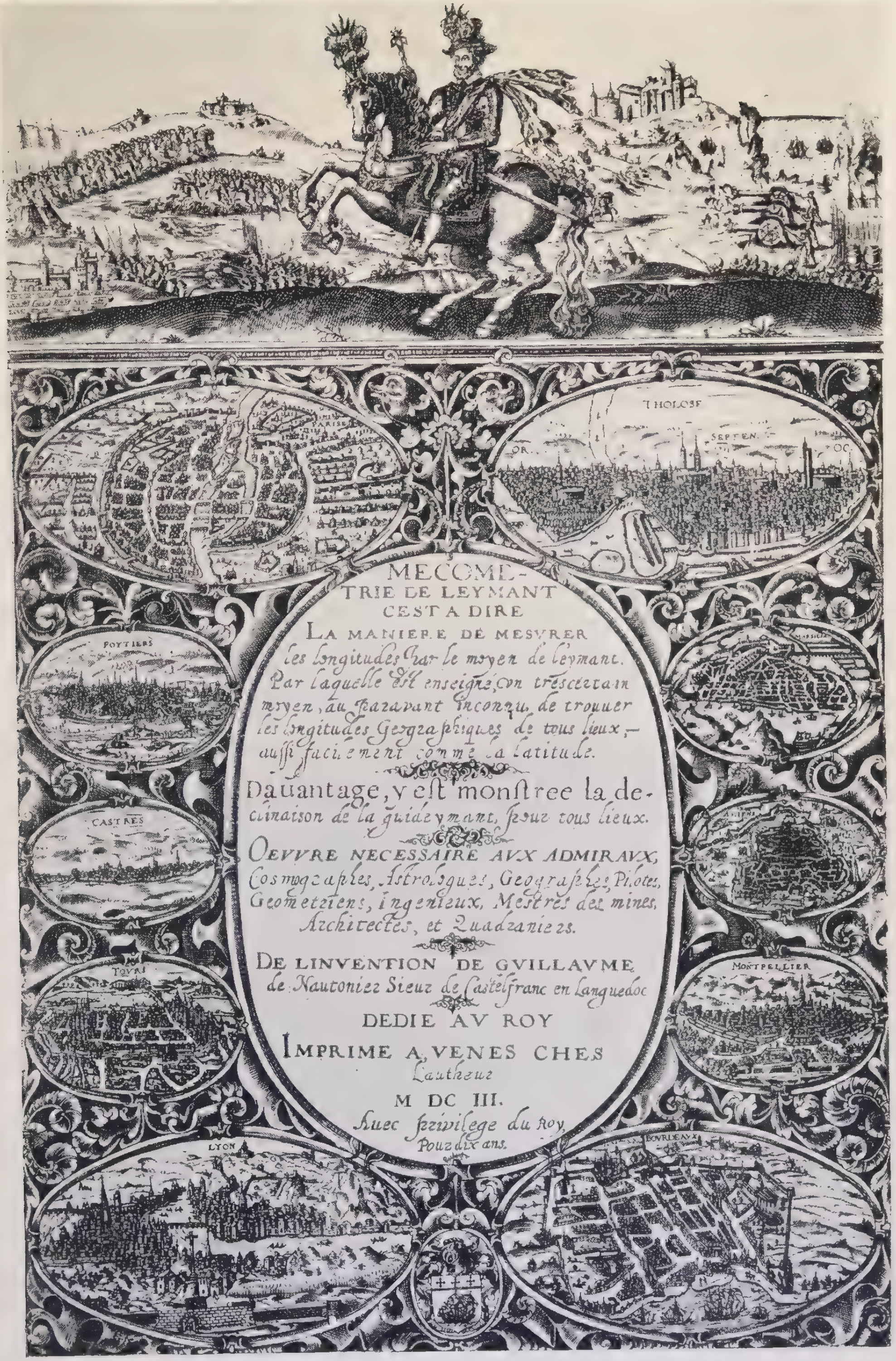
IT has seemed to me a good thing to write something also regarding the two maps, in order to explain these; for although one is the counterpart of the other, as far as the harbours, bays, capes, headlands, and courses of the rivers are concerned, they differ with respect to their orientations. The smaller one is in its true meridian [2] according to what the Sieur de Castelfranc shows this to be in his book on the *Mecometry of the Compass*,[3] wherein I have taken note of several variations which have been of great service to me, as will be seen on the said map, along

---

[1] A good translation of this *Explanation* by the late Dr. S. E. Dawson is printed in *Transactions of the Royal Society*, 1st ser., XII, ii. 93–95, 1895.

[2] See Plate I, p. 1.

[3] Guillaume de Nautonier, sieur de Castelfranc in Languedoc, whose work is entitled *Mécométrie de l'eymant, c'est à dire la manière de mesurer les longitudes par le moyen de l'eymant*, etc. Venes ches l'autheur, 1603. See Plate VIII, p. 222.



MECOME-
TRIE DE LEYMANT
CEST A DIRE
LA MANIERE DE MESVRER
les longitudes par le moyen de leymant.
Par laquelle eſt enſeigné vn treſcertain
moyen, au parauant inconnu, de trouuer
les longitudes Geographiques de tous lieux,
auſſi facilement comme la latitude.

Dauantage, y eſt monſtree la de-
clinaison de la guideymant, pour tous lieux.

OEVVRE NECESSAIRE AVX ADMIRAVX,
Cosmographes, Astrologues, Geographes, Pilotes,
Geometriens, Ingenieux, Mestres des mines,
Architectes, et Quadraniers.

DE LINVENTION DE GVILLAVME
de Nautonier Sieur de Castelfranc en Languedoc

DEDIE AV ROY

IMPRIME A VENES CHES
Lautheur

M DC III.
Auec priuilege du Roy
Pour dix ans.

Title-page of Nautonier's *Mécométrie.*

hauteurs, latitudes & longitudes, depuis le quarante vniesme degré de latitude, iusques au cinquante vniesme, tirant au pole artique, qui sont les confins de Canada ou grande Baye,[1] où se faict le plus souuent la pesche de balaine, par les Basques & Espagnols. Ie l'ay aussi obserué en certains endroits dans le grand fleuue de S. Laurens sous la hauteur de quarante cinq degrez de latitude iusques à vingt vng degré de declinaison de la guide-aymant, qui est la plus grande que iaye veue : & de ceste petite carte, l'on se pourra fort p. 321. bien seruir à la nauigation, pourueu qu'ō scache appliquer l'aiguille à la rose des vents[2] du compas : Comme par exemple, ie desire m'en seruir, il est donc de besoin, pour plus de facilité, de prendre vne rose, où les trentedeux vents soyent marquez egalement, & faire mettre la pointe de la guideaymant à 12. 15. ou 16. degrez de la fleur de lis,[3] du costé du nortouest, qui est prés d'vn quart & demy de vent.

with all the altitudes, latitudes and longitudes from the forty-first as far as the fifty-first degree of latitude north. These constitute the limits of Canada, or Grand Bay,[1] where the Basques and Spaniards usually carry on their whale fishing. I have also noted the variation at certain places on the great river St. Lawrence in latitude 45°, where it reaches as much as 21°, which is the greatest that I have observed. And this little map can very well be used for navigation, provided one knows how to adjust the needle to the compass-card.[2] If, for example, I wish to use this, it is necessary for greater facility to take a compass-card on which the thirty-two points are equally marked, and to place the needle twelve, fifteen, or sixteen degrees toward the north-west,[3] which is about a point and a half, or a little more

---

[1] That part of the gulf of St. Lawrence inside the strait of Belle Isle. See Plate X, p. 257.

[2] This compass-card or wind-rose is the figure on which are indicated the thirty-two 'winds' or points of the compass.

[3] North on the compass is indicated by a *fleur-de-lis.*

comme au Nort vn quart du norouest, ou vn peu plus de la fleur de lis de laditte rose des vents, & appliquer la roze dans le compas, quand l'on sera sur le grand banc, où se fait la pesche du poisson vert, par ce moyen l'on pourra aller cercher fort asseurement toutes les hauteurs des caps, ports & riuieres. Ie scay qu'il y en aura beaucoup qui ne s'en voudront seruir, & courront plustost à la grande,[1] d[']autant qu'elle est fabriquee sur le compas de France, où la guide-aymant nordeste, d[']autant qu'ils ont si bien prins ceste routine, qu'il est mal aisé de leur faire chãger. C'est pourquoy i'ay dressé la grãde carte en ceste façõ, pour le soulagement de la plus-part des pilotes & nauigateurs des parties de la nouuelle France, craignant que si ie ne l'eusse ainsi fait, ils m'eussent attribué vne faute, qu'ils n[']eussent sceu dire d'ou elle procedoit. Car les petits cartrõs ou cartes des terres neufues, pour la pluspart sont presque toutes diuerses en tous les gisemens & hauteurs des terres. Et p. 322.

---

than north by west, and to place the card in the compass when you are on the Grand Bank, where the green fishery is carried on. By this means you can with great certainty find your way to all capes, harbours and rivers. I know there will be many who will be unwilling to make use of it, and will rather have recourse to the larger one,[1] since it is drawn according to the compass of France, where the needle points north-east, and they have learned this method so well that it is difficult to make them change. That is why I have drawn the large map in this way, for the satisfaction of the majority of the pilots and navigators to the coasts of New France, fearing lest, had I not made it so, they would have charged me with an error they would not have been able to explain. For nearly all of the small charts or maps of Newfoundland differ in the positions and altitudes of the coast. And if there are a few who possess some small

[1] See Plate LXXXI in the portfolio.

s'il y en a quelques vns qui ayent quelques petits eschantillons assez bons, ils les tiennent si precieux qu'ils n'en donnent l'intelligence à leur patrie, qui en pourroit tirer de l'vtilité. Or la fabrique des cartaux[a] est d'vne telle façon, qu'ils font du Nor-nordest leur ligne meridienne, & de l'Ouest-norouest, l'Ouest, chose contraire au vray meridien de ce lieu, de l'appeler Nort-nordest pour le Nort : Car au lieu que l'aiguille doit norouester elle nordeste, cōme si c'estoit en France. Qui a fait que l'erreur s'en est ensuiuy & s'ensuiura, dautant qu'ils ont ceste vieille coustume d'ancienneté, qu'ils retiennent, encores qu'ils tombent en de grands erreurs. Ils se seruēt aussi d'vn compas touché Nort & Su, qui est mettre la poincte de la guide-aymant droit sous la fleur de lis.[1] Sur ce cōpas beaucoup forment leurs petites cartes, ce qui me semble le meilleur, & approcher plus pres du vray meridien de la Nouuelle France, que non pas les cōpas de

[a] *Cartau* = carte marine (*Dict. de l'Acad.* 1694).

---

specimens that are pretty correct, they consider them so valuable that they give no information about them to their own countrymen, who might derive some advantage from them. Now the small maps are made in such a way that their meridian line runs north-north-east, and their west-north-west becomes west, a thing contrary to the true meridian of this region, to call north-north-east, the north. For instead of the needle being taken to point north-west, it is taken to point north-east, as if we were in France. This has caused the error which has resulted and which will continue, since they hold this old custom from ancient times, and retain it, although they fall thereby into gross errors. They also use a compass set north and south, that is to say with the point of the needle under the *fleur-de-lis*.[1] It is by this compass that many draw their small maps which seems to me the best method, and to approach nearer to the

[1] See p. 223, note 3.

la Frāce Orientale qui nordestent. Il s'est doncques ensuiuy en ceste façon, que les premiers nauigateurs qui ont nauigué aux parties de la nouuelle France Occidātale croioyent n'engendrer non plus d'erreur d'aller en ces parties que d'aller aux Essores,[a] ou autres lieux proches de France, où l'erreur est presque insensible en la nauigatiō, dont les pilotes p. 323. n'ōt autres compas que ceux de France, qui nordestent, & representēt le vray meridien. Et nauiguant tousiours à l'Ouest, voulāt aller trouuer vne hauteur certaine, faisoient la routte droit à l'Ouest de leur compas, pensant marcher sur vne paralelle où ils vouloiēt aller. Et allāt tousiours droictement en plat, & non circulairement, comme sont toutes les paralelles sur le globe de la terre, apres auoir faict vne quantité de chemin, pres de venir à la veüe de la terre, ils se trouuoiēt quelquesfois trois, quatre ou cinq degrés plus Su qu'il n'estoit de besoing : & par ainsi se trouuoiēt

[a] Açores.

---

true meridian of New France than do the compasses of eastern France which point north-east. It happened then in this way that the early navigators to western New France thought they would not be any more astray in going to those parts than in going to the Azores or to other places near to France, where the error in navigation is almost imperceptible, and where the pilots have no other compasses than those of France, which point north-east and show the true meridian. And sailing constantly towards the west, wishing to reach a certain point, they steered due west by their compass, thinking they were sailing along a parallel to the place they wished to reach. And sailing continuously in a straight line on the flat, and not on a circle, as all the parallels on the terrestrial globe run, having gone a long distance, and when nearly within sight of land, they sometimes found themselves three, four, or five degrees farther south than need be,

desceus de leur hauteur & estime. Toutesfois il est bien vray que quand le beau temps paroissoit, & que le soleil estoit beau, ils se redressoient de leur hauteur : mais ce n'estoit sans s'estonner d'où procedoit que la routte estoit fausse ; qui estoit qu'au lieu d'aller circulairement selon ladicte paralelle, ils alloiēt droictement en plat ; & que changeant de meridien, ils changeoiēt aussi d'airs[a] de vent du cōpas : & par ainsi de routte. C'est donc vne chose fort necessaire de scauoir le meridien & declinaison de la guide-aymant : car cela peut seruir pour tous pilotes qui voyagēt par le mōde, d'autant que ne la sachant point, & p. 324. principalement au Nort & au Su où il se fait de plus grandes variations de la guide-aymant : aussi que les cercles de longitude sont plus petits, & par ainsi l'erreur seroit plus grand à faute de ne sçauoir ladicte declinaison de la guide-aymant. C'est donques pourquoy ladite erreur s'est

---

[a] Lire plutôt *aires*. Ces deux mots ne sont pas toujours distingués au XVII^{e} siècle.

---

and consequently were out in their latitude and reckoning. However, it is quite true that when fine weather came, and the sun appeared, they used to correct the error in their latitude, but not without wondering why their course was wrong, which was due to the fact that instead of sailing on a circle like the said parallel, they sailed in a straight line as on a flat surface, and that as the meridian changed, the points of the compass also changed, and consequently their course. It is therefore most necessary to know the meridian and the variation of the needle ; for this may be of use to all pilots who sail about the world ; for should they be ignorant of it, particularly in the northern and southern latitudes, where the variations of the needle are greater, and moreover the circles of longitude shorter, the error would be greater through ignorance of the variation of the magnetic needle. That is how this error has arisen, and travellers

ensuiuie, que les voyageurs ne l'ayant voulu ou ne le sçachant corriger, ils l'ont laissé en la façon que maintenant elle est : de sorte qu'il est mal aisé d'oster ceste dicte façon accoustumée de nauiguer en cesdits lieux de la nouuelle France. C'est ce qui m'a fait faire ceste grande carte,[1] tant pour estre plus particuliere que la petite,[2] que pour le contentement des nauiguans qui pourront nauiguer, comme si c'estoit sur leurs petits cartrōs ou cartes : & m'excuseront si ie ne les ay mieux faites & particularisees, dautant que l'aage d'vn hōme ne pourroit suffire à recognoistre si exactement les choses, qu'à la fin du tēps il ne se trouuast quelque chose d'obmis, qui fera que toutes personnes curieuses & laborieuses pourrōt remarquer en voyageant, des choses qui ne seront en ladicte carte & les y adapter : tellemēt qu'auec le tēps on ne doutera d'aucunes choses de cesdicts lieux. Pour le moins il me semble que i'ay fait mon deuoir en ce que i'ay peu, où ie n'ay oublié rien de ce que i'ay veu a mettre en

---

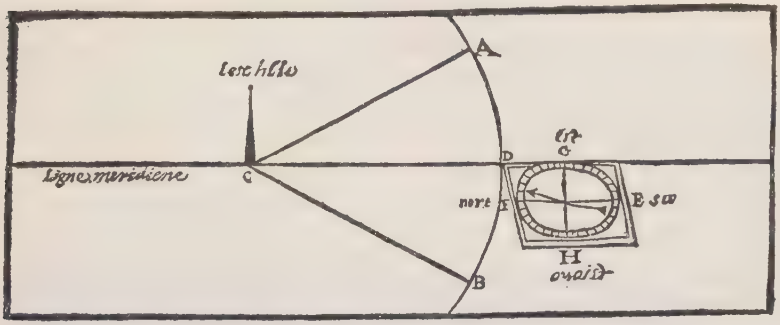
not wishing or not knowing how to correct it, have left it as it now is, wherefore it is difficult to get rid of this common method of navigating in these said parts of New France. This is what led me to make this large map,[1] both to give more detail than in the small one,[2] as well as for the satisfaction of sailors who will be able to navigate as if it were by their own small maps or charts. And they will pardon me if I have not made them better and in greater detail; for the life of a man would not suffice to observe things so carefully that after the lapse of time some omission should not be found. The result will be that every observant and diligent person will be able when travelling to note things which are not marked on the map and to place them upon it. So much so, that in time no one will have any uncertainty about those parts. At least it seems to me that I have done my duty so far as I have been able, in not omitting to put

[1] See Plate LXXXI in the portfolio.

[2] See Plate I, p. 1.

p. 325. madicte carte, & donner vne cognoissance particuliere au public, qui n'auoit iamais esté descripte, ny descouuerte si particulieremēt comme i'ay fait, bien que quelque autre par le passé en ayt escript, mais c'estoit bien peu de chose au respect de ce que nous auons descouuert depuis dix ans en ça.

Moyen de prendre la ligne Meridienne.



Prenez vne planchette fort vnie, & au milieu posez vne esguille C, de trois pousses de haut, qui soit droictement à plomb, & le posez au Soleil deuant Midy, à 8. ou 9. heures,[a] où l'ombre de l'esguille C, arriuera,

[a] Il manque évidemment plusieurs mots. Il faudrait lire quelque chose comme : *et que le point où*, etc.

---

into my map anything I have seen, nor to give the public detailed information upon what had never been discovered, or described in such detail as I have given. Although others in the past may have written about them, still it was very little compared with what we have discovered during the last ten years.

Method of taking the Meridian Line.

Take a very smooth piece of board and in the middle place a needle C, three inches high, which is to be exactly plumb, and place it in the sun, before noon, at eight or nine o'clock. At the point where the shadow

soit marqué auec vn compas, lequel sera ouuert, sçauoir vne poincte sur C, & l'autre sur l'ombre B, & puis trasserez vn demy cercle A, B, laissant le tout iusqu'apres midy, qu'y verrez l'ombre paruenir sur le bort du demy cercle A. Puis partirez le demy cercle A. B. par la moitié, & aussi tost prendrez vne reigle que poserez sur le poinct C. & l'autre sur le poinct D. & trasserez vne ligne tant qu'elle pourra courir le long de ladicte planchette, qu'il ne faut bouger que l'obseruation ne soit faicte, & la ligne sera la Meridienne du lieu où vous serez.

Et pour sçauoir la declinaison du lieu où vous serez sur la ligne Meridienne, posez vn quadran qui soit quarré, comme demonstre la figure cy dessus le long de la ligne Meridienne, & au fonds dudit quadran y aura vn cercle diuisé en 360. degrez, & partissez ledit cercle par entredeux lignes diametrales, dont l'vne est representée pour le septentrion, & l'autre pour le midy, comme monstrera E. F. & l'autre ligne represente l'Orient & l'Occident, comme monstre G. H. & alors regardez l'aiguille de la guide-aymant, qui est au fonds du quadran, sur le piuot, laquelle verrez où elle decline de la ligne Meridienne fixe, qui est au fonds du quadran, & combien de degrez elle Nordeste ou Noroueste.[1]

---

of C will reach, make a mark with open dividers, with one leg at C and the other at the shadow B. Then trace a semi-circle AB, and leave the whole until the afternoon, when you see the shadow reach the limit of the semi-circle A. Then divide the semi-circle AB in the middle, and immediately take a ruler, placing one end at the point C and the other at the point D, and draw a line the whole length of the board, which must not be moved until the observation is finished. This line will be the meridian of the place where you are.

And in order to know the compass variation of the place where you are from the meridian line, place along the meridian line a square dial as the above figure shows, and within this dial make a circle divided into 360 degrees and divide this circle by two lines passing through the centre, one of which, EF, represents north and south, and the other line, GH, represents east and west. Then look at the needle of the compass which is in the bottom of the dial, on the pivot, and you will see how much it deviates from the fixed meridian at the bottom of the dial, and how many degrees it points north-east or north-west.[1]

[1] This diagram will only hold for the southern hemisphere. For the northern hemisphere it would have to be reversed.

TABLE DES MATIERES.

A

ALgoumequins 308

Almouchiquois n'adorent aucune chose. 87. Ont des superstitions. 87. Leur naturel 87. ont vn langage different à celuy des Souriquois & Etechemins 66. vont tous nuds, hommes & femmes hormis leur nature. 125 portent quelquesfois des robbes faictes d'herbes 86. ne font prouision de pelleterie que pour se vestir 67. sont bien proportionnez de leurs corps 125 ont le tein oliuastre 125. comment portent leurs cheueux 67. 87. se parent de plumes, de patenostres de porcelines & autres ioliuetez 125. se peindent de noir rouge & iaune 87. s'arrachent le poil de la barbe 87. leurs logemens 87.126. ont grande quantité de puces, mesmes parmy les champs 127. comment se comportent quand ils ont quelque mauuais dessein 129. 130. leurs armes 126. n'ont point de police, gouuernement, ny creance. 126. font entreprise sur les François. 129.voyez François.Amateurs du labourage 125. comment labourent les terres. 84. ont autant de terre qu'il est necessaire pour leur nourriture. 82. comment font leurs bleds d'Inde. 68. comment ils en conseruent leur prouision pour l'hyuer. 125. comment l'accommodent pour le manger.87. cultiuent de certaines racines 83. sont fort vistes 132. voyez Sauuages.

Aneda herbe recommandée par Iaques Quartier. 65.

Aubry Prestre esgaré dixsept iours dans des bois. 19. 20.

B

BAlaines comment se peschent 266. 267. 268.

Basques pris faisant traitte de pelleterie. 36.

Basques traitent la force en la main & leur violence contre le vaisseau de Pont-graué. 166. 167. 168.

Barque eschouée sur vne roche miraculeusement sauuée. 76.

Baye Françoise. 24. 27.

Baye sainct Laurens. 25.

Baye saincte Marie. 18. 20.

Baye de toutes isles. 156.

Bedabedec, pointe ainsi appelée des sauuages. 43. 44.

C

CAp de la Héue. 7. & 8.

Cap Negre. 11.

Cap de Sable. 11.

Cap Fourchu. 13.

Cap des deux Bayes. 24.

Cap aux isles. 73.

Cap sainct Louys. 76.

Cap Blanc. 81.

Cap Breton. 201.

Cap Batturier. 123.
Cap Dauphin. 173.
Cap de l'Aigle. 173.
Cap. de tourmente. 174.
Campseau. 158.
Canada. 190.
Canadiens ne font point de prouuision pour l'hyuer. 201.
Canots des sauuages. 74. 75. 168. 169.
Champdoré pilote. 106. emmenoté, liberé. 109.
Champ semé de bled d'Inde. 83.
Chanure. 78.
Charioquois. 308.
Chasse des sauuages. 56. 57.
Chouacoet. 150.
Chouassarou poisson. 224. 225.
Citrouilles. 83.
Commission du sieur de Mons. 163.
Conspiration contre ma personne. 177. descouuerte 178. conspirateurs pris 179. Procedures en leur procés. 181, 182. 183.
Corde faite d'escorce d'arbre. 78.
Coste de Norembegue 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51.
Coste des Almouchiquois. 58.
Croix fort ancienne marque de Chrestiens. 152.
Cul de sac où il y a plusieurs isles & beaucoup d'endrois pour mettre nombre de vaisseaux. 31.

D

DAnger proche de naufrage 41. autre 102. autre 104. autre. 108.
premiere Defaite des Yroquois. 230. 231.
seconde Defaite des Yroquois. 254.

E

ESpouuante des Montagnets à la riuiere des Yroquois. 235.
Equille poisson. 21.
Etechemins n'ont point de demeure arrestée. 46. habitent quelquefois la riuiere de Quinibequi. 49.

F

LEs Femmes sont vn peu plus long habillées que les hommes 87. font tous les vestemens 56. surpassent en cruauté les hōmes. 258.
François assistent les sauuages leurs alliés à la guerre contre leurs ennemis. 230. 231. 246. iusques à 254. Surpris par les Almouchiquois. 85. 86. 131. s'en vengent. 136.

G

GAspé. 201.
Gelées fort grandes. 55
Grande-oreille, poisson qui porte des égrettes. 269.

H

HAbitation de l'isle saincte Croix. 35. 36.
Habitation du port Royal. 98.
Habitation de Quebec. 184.
Harangue de Mantoumermer sauuage. 61.
Hyuer fort court. 243.

I

IAques Quartier, & de son Hyuernement. 185. iusques à 191.
Isle de sable. 7.
Isle aux Cormorans. 11.
Isles aux oyseaux. 12. 18.
Isles fort dangereuses. 12.

Isles aux Loups-marins. 13.
Isle Longue. 13. 14.
Isle Haute. 24. 43.
Isle aux Margots. 31.
Isle appelée des sauuages Menane 31. 58. 59.
Isle saincte Croix. 32. 33. 113. 191. appelée autrefois des sauuages Achelacy. 19.
Isles rangées. 40. 41. 156.
Isles des monts-deserts. 43.
Isles aux Corneilles. 59.
Isle de la tortue. 59. 60.
Isle de Bacchus. 66.
Isles Martyres. 155.
Isle Percée. 158.
Isle du cap Breton. 158. 159.
Isle aux coudres. 173.188.189. plusieurs Isles fort agreables enuironnées de rochers & basses fort dangereuses. 174.
Isle d'Orleans. 174.175. ainsi appelée par Iaques Quartier. 190.
Isle sainct Esloy. 208.
Isle aux Herons. 289.

L

LAc de trois à quatre lieues de long. 62.
Lac sainct Pierre. 213.
Lac des Yroquois. 224.
Lac de Champlain. 232.
Lac. 170.

M

MAl de la terre, voyés Scurbut.
Mauues oyseaux. 152.
Maslouuins appelez Mistigoches par les Sauuages 245.
Mine d'argent. 14.
Mines de cuiure. 24. 25. 39. 100.
Mines de fer. 14. 15. 28. 29.
Montagnets vont demy nuds 192. l'hyuer se couurent de bonnes fourrures. 192. sont bien proportionnez & les femmes aussi, qui se frottent de peinture, qui les rend basannées. 192. quand peschent les anguilles qu'il font secher pour l'hyuer191.quand vont à la chasse aux castors 192. vont à la chasse aux eslans & autres bestes sauuages, lors que leurs anguilles leur manquent. 192. ont quelquefois de grãdes famines, mangent leurs chiens & les peaux de quoy ils se couurent 192. pressez d'vne extresme necessité197. iusques à 201. ne font point de prouisions. 260.
Mõtagnets croyẽt l'immortalité de l'ame 195. Disent qu'aprés leur mort ils se vont resiouir en d'autres païs 195.croyent que tous les songes qu'ils font sont veritables 192. n'ont point ny foy, ny loy 193. sont fort meschans, grands menteurs, & vindicatifs.193.n'ẽtreprennent rien sans consulter leur Pilotois 193. leurs ceremonies quand ils arriuent à leur pays au retour de la guerre 236. 255. leurs mariages194. leurs enterremens 195 dansent trois fois l'année sur la fosse de leurs amis 195. sont fort craintifs & redoutent fort leurs ennemis 196. miraculeusement sauuez d'vn naufrage 198. ont bon iugement. 192.
Mouches fort fascheuses. 35

N

NOrmands appelés Mistigoches par les ſauuages. 245.

O

ORdre de bon temps. 149.
Outarde oyſeau. 91.
Oyſeau qui à le bec en façon de lancette. 90.
Oyſeaux cõme coqs d'Indes. 91.92.
Oyſeaux incarnats. 239.

P

PIerres à faire de la chaux. 152.
Pilotois deuineurs de bonne & mauuaiſe fortune. 193. leurs diableries & ſimagrees. 121. 122.
Place Royale. 285. 286. 287.
Pointe ſainct Mathieu, autrement aux Allouettes. 165. 166.
Pointe de tous les Diables. 166.
Poiſſon auec trois rangs de dens. 239
Port au Mouton. 10.
Port ſaincte Marguerite. 15.16.
Port Royal. 20. 31.
Port aux mines. 24. 25.
Port aux iſles. 71. 72.
Port du cap ſainct Louys. 79.
Port de Malebarre. 82. 83.
beau Port. 116. 117. 118.
Port aux huiſtres. 121.
Port fortuné. 124.
Port ſainct Helaine. 155. 156.
Port de Saualette. 157.
Port aux Anglois 159.
Port Niganis. 159.

Q

QVebecq. 201. 203. 204. 175. 176. 313.

R

RAcines que les ſauuages cultiuent. 83.
Rencontre des Yroquois à qui nous allions faire la guerre. 228.
Riuiere du Boulay. 14.
Riuiere de l'Equille. 21. 22.
Riuiere ſainct Antoine. 22.
Riuiere ſainct Iean appelée des ſauuages Ouygoudy. 28. 29.
Riuiere des Etechemins. 33.
Riuiere de Pimptegouet appelée de pluſieurs pilotes & hiſtoriens Norembegue. 42. 43. 44. 49. 50.
Riuiere de Quinibequi. 59. 63.
Riuiere de la tortue. 59. 60.
Riuiere de Chouacoet. 71.
Riuiere ſaincte Marguerite. 155.
Riuiere de l'iſle verte. 156.
Riuiere de Saguenay. 169.170.171.
Riuiere aux ſaumons. 173.
grande Riuiere de ſainct Laurens. 201. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210.
Riuiere ſaincte Marie. 208.
les trois Riuieres. 212.
Riuiere des Vroquois 223. 224.

S

SAincte croix, nom transferé de lieu à autre. 181. 186. 188. 189.
Saincte Suſanne du cap blanc. 81.
Sault d'eau. 45.
grand Sault. 313.
Sauuages quand ſont mal diſpoſez, ſe tirent du ſang auec les dents, d'vn poiſſon appelé Couaſſarou. 225. Leur dueil. 146. Leurs ceremonies aux enterremens. 146. en

leurs harangues. 47. Quand ils veulent deliberer de quelque affaire,font leurs assemblees la nuit 299. Comment ils content les temps. 209. Leur façon de viure en hyuer. 57. en hyuer ne peuuent chasser, si les neiges ne sont grādes. 56. attachent des raquettes soubs leurs pieds, quand ils vont chasser en temps de neige,56.194 comment peschent le poisson.78 viuent de coquillage, quand ils ne peuuent chasser.56. comment desfrichent les terres.118. Danssent & monstrent signes de resiouissance, quand ils voyent arriuer des vaisseaux de France.65. Font de grandes admiratiōs quād ils voyēt premierement des Chrestiens. 258. Ont des gens parmi eux qui disent la bonne auanture ausquels ils adioustent foy. 126. voyez Pilotois. Croyent les songes veritables. 227,228. Quand ils entendent des coups de canon se couchent contre terre. 133.

Sauuages quand vont à la guerre separēt leurs troupes en trois,pour la chasse en auantcoureurs & le gros.220. Font des marques,par où ils passent,par lesquelles ceux qui viennent apres reconoissent si ce sont amis ou ennemis qui ont passé.220.Leurs chasseurs ne chassent iamais de l'auāt du gras.[a] 220. Enuoyent descouurir si on n'aperceura point d'ennemis.219 Toute la nuict se reposent sur la reueue des auantcoureurs. 219. Aprochans des terres de leurs ennemis ne cheminent plus que la nuict.227. Leurs retranchemens. 219. Ont des chefs à qui ils obeissent, en ce qui est du faict de la guerre seulement. 226. Commēt les chefs monstrent à leurs gens le rang & l'ordre qu'ils doiuent tenir au combat. 223. Executent leurs desseins la nuict & non le iour.131. Quand sont poursuiuis se sauuent dans les bois. 135. Escorchent la teſte de leurs ennemis tuez pour trophee de leur victoire.255. comment traittent leurs prisonniers. 232. 233. 234. 256. 257. 258.

Sauuages alliez vont à la guerre cōtre les Yroquois leurs ennemis. 246.iusques à 254.voyez Algoumequins & Montagnets.

Scurbut, ou maladie de la terre.53. 101. 149. 202. Sa cause. 202. 243. plusieurs regions en sont frappees. 204.

Siguenoc. 90.

Superstition des Sauuages. 61.

T

TAdoussac. 165. 201.

Temperature fort differente, pour 120.lieues. 201.

Terres desertées où le sieur de Mōs fit semer du froment.33. autres terres defrichees. 79.

Terre ensemencee par le sieur de Poitrincour. 111.

---

[a] Au lieu de *gras* lire *gros*.

Terres bonnes & fertiles. 113.
Terres couuertes la plus part de l'ānee. 171.
Terres couuertes de neiges iusques à la fin de May. 201.
Terre neufue. 201.
Traitte de pelleterie defendue. 166.

V

VIgnes qui portent de tresbons raisins. 66.

Y

YRoquois. 226. desfaicts en guerre. 230. 231.

FIN.

QVATRIESME

VOYAGE DV Sr DE CHAMPLAIN

CAPITAINE ORDINAIRE POVR
LE ROY EN LA MARINE, ET
Lieutenant de Monseigneur le Prince
de Condé en la Nouuelle France,
fait en l'annee 1613.

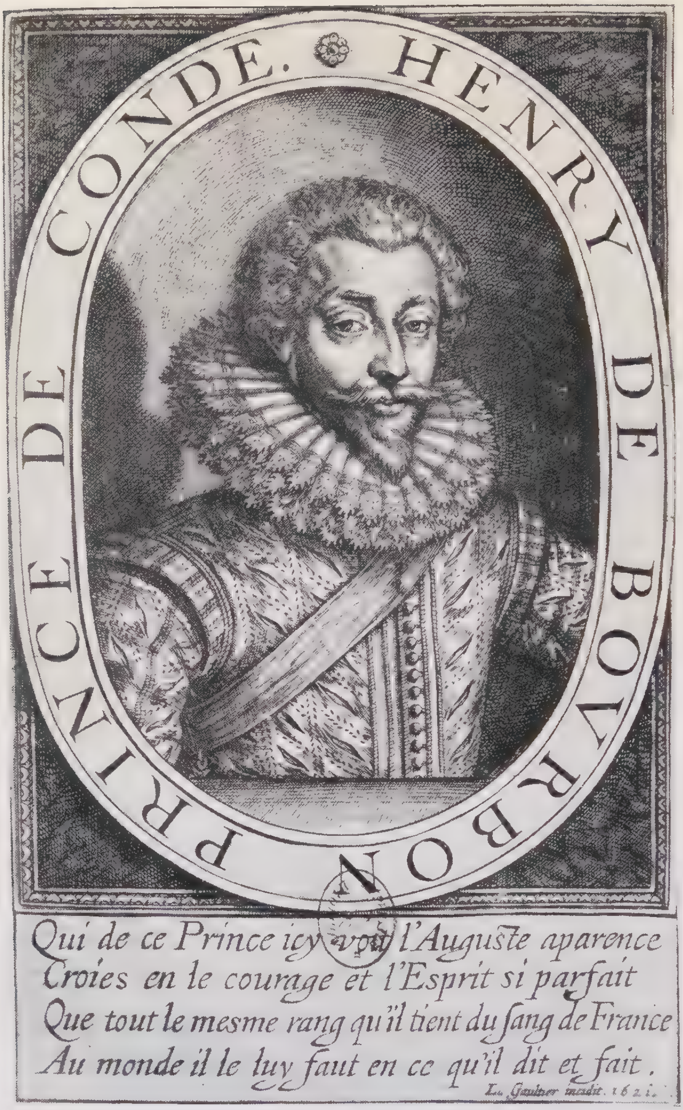
⁂

FOURTH

VOYAGE OF THE Sr DE CHAMPLAIN

CAPTAIN IN ORDINARY TO
THE KING IN THE NAVY, AND
Lieutenant of My Lord the Prince
of Condé in New France,
made in the year 1613.

⁂


HENRY DE BOVRBON PRINCE DE CONDE.
Qui de ce Prince icy voit l'Auguste aparence
Croies en le courage et l'Esprit si parfait
Que tout le mesme rang qu'il tient du ſang de France
Au monde il le luy faut en ce qu'il dit et fait.
L. Gaultier incidit. 1621.

Henri II. de Bourbon, Prince de Condé 1588–1646.

To face p. 239.

p. 3[a].

A TRES-HAVT,

TRES-PVISSANT ET TRES-
EXCELLENT HENRY DE BOVRBON

Prince de Condé, premier Prince du sang, premier Pair de France, Gouuerneur & Lieutenant de sa Majesté en Guyenne.

MONSEIGNEVR

L'honneur que i'ay reçeu de vostre grandeur en la charge des descouuertures de la nouuelle France, m'a augmenté l'affection de poursuiure auec plus de soing & diligence que iamais, la recherche de la mer du Nord. Pour cet effect en ceste année 1613. *i'y ay fait vn voyage sur le rapport d'vn*

---

[a] Le Quatrième Voyage a une pagination à part, à commencer par le feuillet du titre.

TO THE VERY HIGH,

MIGHTY AND EXCELLENT
HENRY DE BOURBON,

Prince de Condé, First Prince of the Blood,
First Peer of France, His Majesty's Governor
and Lieutenant in Guyenne.

MY LORD

The honour I received from your Highness in being entrusted with the explorations in New France has increased my desire to prosecute with more care and diligence than ever the search for the northern sea. To this end, I journeyed thither in this year, 1613, *trusting to the report of a man whom*

homme que i'y auois enuoyé, lequel m'asseuroit l'auoir veuë, ainsi que vous pourrez voir en ce petit discours, que i'ose offrir à vostre excellence, où toutes les peines & trauaux que i'y ay eus sont particulierement d'escrits[a] *; desquels il ne me reste que le regret d'auoir perdu ceste annee, mais non pas l'esperance au premier voiage d'en auoir des nouuelles plus asseurées par le moyen des Sauuages qui m'ont fait relation de plusieurs lacs &* p. 4 *riuieres tirant vers le Nord, par lesquelles, outre l'asseurance qu'ils me dõnent d'auoir la cognoissance de ceste mer, il me semble qu'on peut aisémẽt tirer coniecture des cartes, qu'elle ne doit pas estre loing des dernieres descouuertures que i'ay cy deuant faites. En attendant le temps propre & la commodité de continuer ces desseins, ie prieray le Createur qu'il vous conserue, Prince bien-heureux, en toutes sortes de felicités, où se terminent les vœux que ie fais à vostre grandeur, en qualité de son*

Tres-humble & tres-affectionné seruiteur

SAMVEL DE CHAMPLAIN.

[a] *Sic.*

I had sent there, who assured me that he had seen it, as you will be able to read in this brief account, which I make bold to offer to your Excellency, wherein all the difficulties and labours experienced by me are set forth in detail. Of these there remain only the regret at the loss of this year, but I still hope that on my next voyage thither I may obtain more certain news of this sea by the aid of the savages, who have described to me various lakes and rivers which lie towards the north. From all this it seems to me that, in addition to the assurance they give me of knowing this sea, one may easily conclude from the maps that it does not lie far from the last explorations I have made in that region. Awaiting a suitable time and opportunity for carrying out these plans, I shall pray the Creator to keep you, most happy Prince, in all felicity, wherein are summed up the vows I make for your Highness, in my quality of your most humble and very loving servant,

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN.

p. 5.

QVATRIESME VOYAGE DV SIEVR DE CHAMPLAIN, CAPITAINE ORDINAIRE POVR le Roy en la marine, & Lieutenant de Monseigneur le Prince de Condé en la Nouuelle France, fait en l'an 1613.

Ce qui m'a occasionné de recercher vn reglement. Commission obtenue. Oppositions à l'encontre. En fin la publication par tous les ports de France.

CHAP. I.

LE desir que i'ay tousiours eu de faire nouuelles descouuertures en la Nouuelle France, au bien, vtilité & gloire du nom François : ensemble d'amener ces pauures peuples à la cognoissance de Dieu, m'a fait chercher de plus en plus la facilité de ceste entreprise, qui ne peut estre que par le moyen d'vn bon reglement :

FOURTH VOYAGE OF THE SIEUR DE CHAMPLAIN, CAPTAIN IN ORDINARY TO the King in the Navy, and Lieutenant of my Lord the Prince de Condé in New France, made in the year 1613.

What led me to seek for regulations. My Commission granted. Opposition thereto. Its ultimate publication in all the ports of France.

CHAPTER I

THE desire I have always entertained of making new discoveries in New France for the welfare, advantage, and glory of the French name, as well as of bringing these poor peoples to the knowledge of God, has led me more and more to try to find facilities for this undertaking, which can be brought about only by proper regulations.

d'autant que chacun voulant cueillir les fruits de mon labeur, sans contribuer aux frais & grandes despences qu'il cõuient faire à l'entretien des habitations necessaires pour amener ces desseins à vne bonne fin, ruine ce commerce par l'auidité de gaigner, qui est si grãde, qu'elle fait partir les marchans p. 6. deuant la saison, & se precipiter non seulement dans les glaces, en esperance d'arriuer des premiers en ce païs ; mais aussi dans leur propre ruine : car traictans auec les sauuages à la desrobee, & donnant à l'enuie l'vn de l'autre de la marchandise plus qu'il n'est requis, sur-achetent les danrees ; & par ainsi pensant tromper leurs compagnons se trompent le plus souuent eux mesmes.

C'est pourquoy estant de retour en France le 10. Septembre 1611. i'en parlay à monsieur de Monts, qui trouua bõ ce que ie luy en dis : mais ses affaires ne luy permettant d'en faire la poursuitte en Cour, m'en laissa toute la charge.[1]

So long as everyone wishes to gather the fruits of my labour without contributing to the cost and to the large outlay necessary for the maintenance of the settlements which are required in order to bring these projects to a successful end, will this trade be ruined through the greed of gain, which is so great that it prompts merchants to set sail before the proper season, and to rush not only into the ice, but also to their own ruin, in order to arrive first in this country. For, when they trade secretly with the natives, and, vying with one another, give more merchandise than is necessary, they buy the Indians' commodities too dearly, and so, whilst thinking to deceive their associates, more often deceive themselves.

That is why, on my return to France on September 10, 1611, I spoke of this matter to the Sieur de Monts, who approved of what I said regarding it; but his affairs not permitting him to prosecute the matter at court, he laid upon me the whole responsibility for this.[1]

[1] See *supra*, pp. 215 *et seq.*

Deslors i'en dressay des memoires, que ie monstray à Monsieur le President Ieannin,[1] lequel (comme il est desireux de voir fructifier les bonnes entreprises) loüa mon dessein, & m'encouragea à la poursuitte d'iceluy.

Et m'asseurant que ceux qui ayment à pescher en eau trouble trouueroient ce reglement fascheux, & rechercheroyent les moyens de l'empescher, il me sembla à propos de me ietter entre les bras de quelque grand, l'authorité duquel peust seruir contre leur enuie.

Or cognoissant Monseigneur le Comte de Soissons [2] Prince pieux & affectionné en toutes sainctes entreprises; p. 7. par l'entremise du sieur de Beaulieu, Conseiller & aumosnier ordinaire du Roy, ie m'adressay à luy, & luy remonstray l'importãce de l'affaire, les moyens de la regler, le mal que

---

Thereupon I drew up some memoranda which I showed to Chief Justice Jeannin,[1] who, being a man desirous of seeing good enterprises prosper, approved of my project and encouraged me in its prosecution.

But feeling certain that those who like to fish in troubled waters would find such regulations irksome, and would seek ways of thwarting them, it seemed to me advisable to place myself under the protection of some great man whose authority might be useful against their envy.

And knowing that Monseigneur the Count de Soissons [2] was a devout prince and kindly disposed towards all godly enterprises, I approached him through the Sieur de Beaulieu, councillor and chaplain in ordinary to the king, and pointed out to him the importance of the matter, and showed him

[1] The president, Pierre Jeannin (1540–1622 ?), important jurist, administrator and diplomat of the reigns of Henri III, Henri IV, and Louis XIII. Lescarbot dedicated to him his *Histoire de la Nouvelle France*, 1609.

[2] Charles de Bourbon, Comte de Soissons (1566–1612), prince of the blood, Governor of Normandy, Dauphiné and Canada, who is represented by some as a vain, fickle person, very ambitious, and of mediocre intelligence.

le desordre auoit par cy deuant apporté, & la ruine totale dont elle estoit menacee, au grand des-honneur du nom François, si Dieu ne suscitoit quelqu'vn qui la voulust releuer, & qui donnast esperance de faire vn iour reüssir ce que l'on a peu esperer d'elle. Comme il fut instruict de toutes les particularités de la chose, & qu'il eust veu la Carte du pays que i'auois faicte, il me promit, sous le bon plaisir du Roy, d'en prendre la protection.

Aussi tost apres ie presentay à sa Majesté, & à Nosseigneurs de son Conseil vne requeste auec des articles, tendans à ce qu'il luy pleust vouloir apporter vn reglement en cet [a] affaire, sans lequel, ainsi que i'ay dict, elle s'en alloit perduë ; & pource sa Majesté en donna la direction & gouuernement à mondit Seigneur le Comte, lequel deslors m'honora de sa Lieutenance.[1]

[a] Voir p. 24, note [a].

---

the way to regulate it, as well as the harm which confusion had already produced, and the complete ruin with which it was threatened, to the great dishonour of the French name, unless God stirred up someone who would set it on foot again and would give some hope of accomplishing some day the result expected from it. When he was informed of all the details of the matter and had seen a map of the country which I had made, he promised me, subject to the king's good pleasure, to take the enterprise under his patronage.

Immediately afterwards I presented to His Majesty and to the lords of his Council, a petition, with articles, praying that it would please him to issue regulations for the control of this matter, without which, as I have said, it would go to pieces. Accordingly His Majesty gave the direction and control of it to the said Monseigneur the Count, who immediately honoured me by appointing me his Lieutenant.[1]

[1] The Commission appointing the Comte de Soissons governor was dated October 8, 1612, and that naming Champlain his lieutenant, October 15, 1612.

Or comme ie me preparois à faire publier la Commissiō du Roy par tous les ports & haures de France, la maladie de Mōseigneur le Comte arriua, & sa mort[1] tant regrettee, qui recula vn peu ceste affaire : Mais sa Majesté aussi tost en p. 8. remit la direction à Mōseigneur le Prince,[2] qui la remit dessus : & mondit Seigneur m'ayant honoré pareillement de sa Lieutenance, feit que ie poursuiuis la publication de ladite commission[3]; qui ne fut si tost faicte, que quelques brouillons, qui n'auoyent aucun interest en l'affaire, l'importunerent de la faire casser, luy faisant entendre le pretēdu interest de tous les marchans de France, qui n'auoient aucun subiect de se plaindre, attendu qu'vn chacun estoit reçeu en l'association, & par ainsi aucun ne pouuoit iustement s'offencer : c'est pourquoy leur malice estant recogneuë furent reiettees, auec permission seulement d'entrer en l'association.

But as I was preparing to have the king's commission published in all the ports and harbours of France, there occurred the Count's sickness and greatly regretted death,[1] which caused a certain delay in this affair. His Majesty, however, at once entrusted the direction of it to my Lord the Prince,[2] who set it going again, and this nobleman having likewise honoured me by appointing me his Lieutenant, the result was that I proceeded with the publication of the said commission.[3] But no sooner was this done than some mischief-makers who had no interest in the matter urged him to have it cancelled, representing to him what they claimed were the interests of all the merchants of France, who, however, had no real cause of complaint, since everyone could join the association, and thus no one could justly take offence. Wherefore, their ill-will being admitted, their objections were set aside, with permission to each to enter the association.

[1] The Comte de Soissons died on November 1, 1612.

[2] Henri de Bourbon, second of the name, to whom the author dedicates this Fourth Voyage. See Plate IX, p. 239.

[3] Dated November 22, 1612.

Pendant ces altercations, il me fut impossible de rien faire pour l'habitation de Quebeq, dans laquelle ie desirois mettre des ouuriers pour la reparer & augmenter, d'autant que le temps de partir nous pressoit fort. Ainsi se fallut contēter pour cette annee d'y aller sans autre association, auec les passeports de Monseigneur le Prince, qui furent donnés pour quatre vaisseaux, lesquels estoient ia[a] preparés pour faire le voyage ; sçauoir trois de Rouën & vn de la Rochelle, à condition que chacun fourniroit quatre hommes pour m'assister, tant en mes descouuertures qu'à la guerre, à cause que ie voulois tenir la promesse que i'auois faicte aux sauuages Ochataiguins [1] en l'annee 1611. de les assister p. 9. en leurs guerres au premier voiage.

Et ainsi que ie me preparois pour partir, ie fus aduerti que la Cour de Parlement de Rouën [2] n'auoit voulu permettre

[a] Mot vieilli qui subsiste toujours dans son équivalent *déjà*, ainsi que dans *jadis*, *jamais*.

During these disputes it was not possible for me to do anything for the settlement at Quebec, where I wished to set men to work to make repairs and enlargements, and moreover the time of departure was drawing near. Thus, we had to be content to go out that year without any other articles of association, than the passports of my Lord the Prince, which were issued for four ships, already equipped for the voyage, namely, three from Rouen, and one from La Rochelle. They each agreed to furnish me with four men to assist me, both in my explorations and in making war, because I wished to keep the promise I had made to the Ochataiguin Indians [1] in the year 1611, that on my return I would help them in their wars.

Whilst I was thus preparing to depart, I was notified that the *Parlement* of Rouen [2] was unwilling to permit the publicaqu'ō publiast la Commission du Roy, à cause que sa Majesté se reseruoit, & à son Conseil la seule cognoissance des differents qui pourroient suruenir en cet affaire : ioint aussi que les marchans de S. Maslo s'y opposerent ; ce qui me trauersa fort, & me contraignit de faire trois voyages à Roüen, auec Iussions[a] de sa Majesté, en faueur desquelles la Cour se deporta de ses empeschemens, & debouta les opposans de leurs pretentions : & fut la Commission publiée par tous les ports de Normandie.

---

[1] The Hurons, see p. 68.

[2] The *parlements* were courts which, in the time of Champlain, administered sovereign justice in France, and they united with this function

[a] Injonction adressée par une autorité supérieure (*Dictionn. Général*).

---

tion of the King's Commission because His Majesty reserved to himself and to his Council the sole cognisance of the disputes which might arise in this matter. In addition to this, the merchants of St. Malo were also opposed to it. These things hindered me greatly and forced me to make three journeys to Rouen with orders from His Majesty by virtue of which the *Parlement* of Rouen dropped its opposition, and nonsuited my opponents. And so the Commission was published in all the ports of Normandy.

political and police authority, which gave them great importance. In addition to the *parlement de Paris,* which was the chief of these courts, there were at this time the *parlements* of Toulouse, Grenoble, Bordeaux, Dijon, Rouen, Aix and Rennes. The *parlements* were abolished in the period of the Revolution.

Partement de France : et ce qui se passa iusques à nostre arriuee au Saut.

CHAP. II.

IE partis de Rouën le 5. Mars pour aller à Honfleur, & le sieur l'Ange auec moy, pour m'assister aux descouuertures, & à la guerre si l'occasion s'en presentoit.

Le lendemain 6. du moys nous nous embarquasmes dãs le vaisseau du sieur de Pont-graué, où aussi tost nous mismes p. 10. les voiles au vent, qui estoit lors assés fauorable.

Le 10. Auril nous eusmes cognoissance du grand Banc, où l'on mit plusieurs fois les lignes hors sans rien prendre.

Le 15. nous eusmes vn grand coup de vent, accompagné de pluye & gresle, suiui d'vn autre, qui dura 48. heures, si impetueux, qu'il fit perir plusieurs vaisseaux à l'isle du cap Breton.

Departure from France, and what took place until our arrival at the Rapids.

CHAPTER II

I LEFT Rouen on March 5 for Honfleur along with the Sieur L'Ange who was to assist me in my explorations and, should such an emergency arise, in war as well.

On the following day, the sixth of the month, we embarked in the Sieur de Pont-Gravé's ship, which immediately set sail, with a fairly favourable wind.

On April 10 we sighted the Grand Bank, where we several times cast our lines, but without catching anything.

On the fifteenth we had a great gale accompanied by rain and hail, followed by another which lasted forty-eight hours and was so violent that it wrecked several ships on Cape Breton island.

Le 21. nous eusmes cognoissance de l'isle[1] & Cap de Raye.[2]

Le 29. les Sauuages Montagnais de la pointe de tous les Diables[3] nous aperceuans, se ietterēt dans leurs canots, & vindrent au deuant de nous, si maigres & hideux, que ie les mescognoissois. A l'abord ils commencerent à crier du pain, disans, qu'ils mouroient de faim. Cela nous fit iuger que l'hyuer n'auoit pas esté grād,[a] & par consequent, la chasse mauuaise: de cecy nous en auons parlé aux voyages precedens.[4]

Quand ils furent dans nostre vaisseau ils regardoient chacun au visage, & comme ie ne paroissois point, ils demanderēt où estoit monsieur de Champlain, on leur fit response que i'estois demeuré en France: ce que ne croyans du tout, il y eut vn vieillard qui vint à moy en vn coin, où ie me promenois, ne desirāt encor estre cognu, & me prenant

[a] C'est-à-dire, rigoureux.

On the twenty-first we sighted that island[1] and cape Ray.[2]

On the twenty-ninth, the Montagnais Indians of All Devils' point,[3] on catching sight of us, ran to their canoes and came to meet us, being so thin and ghastly that I did not recognise them. As they approached, they began to cry out for bread, saying they were famished. This made us conclude that the winter had not been severe, and consequently the hunting poor, but of this we have spoken in the previous voyages.[4]

As soon as they came on board our ship they peered into each one's face, and as I was not in sight, they asked where was Monsieur de Champlain, and were told that I had remained in France. This they in no wise believed, and one old Indian came to the corner where I was walking up and down, not wishing as yet to be recognized, and taking me by

---

[1] Cape Breton island.

[2] The south-western extremity of Newfoundland. See pp. 164 and 170.

[3] La pointe aux Vaches near Tadoussac. See Vol. I, 97, note 5.

[4] See *supra*, pp. 44 *et seq.*

l'oreille (car ils se doutoyent qui i'estois) vid la cicatrice du p. 11 coup de fleche que ie reçeus à la deffaicte des Yroquois : alors il s'escria, & tous les autres apres luy, auec grandes demonstrations de ioye, disans, Tes gens sont au port de Tadoussac qui t'attendent.

Ce mesme iour bien que nous fussions partis des derniers nous arriuasmes pourtant les premiers audit Tadoussac, & de la mesme maree le sieur Boyer de Roüen.[1] Par là l'on cognoist que partir auant la saison, ne sert qu'a se precipiter dans les glaces. Ayans moüillé l'ancre nos gens nous vindrēt trouuer, & apres nous auoir declaré comme tout ce[a] portoit en l'habitation, se mirent à habiller trois outardes & deux lapins,[2] qu'ils auoient apportés, & en ietterent les tripailles à bort, sur lesquelles se ruerēt ces pauures sauuages, & ainsi que bestes affamees les deuorerent sans les vuider, & racloient

[a] Lire *se*.

---

the ear (for they suspected who I was), saw the scar of the arrow-shot which I received at the defeat of the Iroquois. Then he cried out, and all the rest after him, with great demonstrations of joy, saying 'Your men are waiting for you in Tadoussac harbour.'

That same day we reached Tadoussac, and although we had started last we arrived first. The Sieur Boyer of Rouen[1] came in by the same tide. From this one can see that starting before the season served merely to throw one into the ice. When we had cast anchor, our men came out to us and after telling us how everyone was getting on at the settlement, they began to dress three wild geese and two rabbits[2] which they had brought. They threw the entrails on deck, which those poor natives seized, and like hungry beasts devoured them, contents and all; and scraping off with their nails auec les ongles la graisse dōt on auoit suiué[a] nostre vaisseau, & la mangeoient gloutonnement comme s'ils y eussent trouué quelque grand goust.

---

[1] *Cf.* pp. 201 *et seq.*

[2] In reality 'hares.' See Ganong's paper in *Transactions of the Royal Society of Canada*, 3rd ser. III, ii., 222, 1909.

Le lendemain[1] arriuerent deux vaisseaux de S. Malo qui estoient partis auant que les oppositions fussent vuidees, & que la Commission fut publiée en Normandie. Ie fus à bort d'eux, accompagné de l'Ange : Les sieurs de la Moinerie p. 12. & la Tremblaye y commandoient, ausquels ie fis lecture de la Commission du Roy, & des deffences d'y contreuenir sur les peines portees par icelles. Ils firent response qu'ils estoient subiects & fidelles seruiteurs de sa Majesté, & qu'ils obeïroient à ses commādemens ; & deslors ie fis attacher sur le port à vn poteau, les armes & Commissions de sa Majesté, afin qu'on n'en pretendist cause d'ignorance.

Le 2. May voyant deux chalouppes equippees pour aller au Saut,[2] ie m'embarquay auec ledict l'Ange dans l'vne.

[a] *Suiver*, vieille forme remplacée par *suiffer* = enduire de suif.

---

the tallow with which our ship had been greased, they devoured it as greedily as if they found it very tasty.

On the following day[1] arrived two ships from St. Malo which had sailed before the disputes were settled and before the Commission had been published in Normandy. I went aboard these ships accompanied by L'Ange. The Sieurs de La Mainerie and La Tremblaye were the masters, to whom I read the King's Commission and the injunction against violating it with the penalties therein set forth. They replied that being subjects and loyal servants of His Majesty they would obey his commands. After that I had His Majesty's arms and commissions publicly posted up in the harbour, so that no one might allege cause of ignorance.

On May 2, seeing two shallops equipped to go to the Rapids,[2] I embarked in one of them with the said L'Ange.

[1] April 30.

[2] The Lachine rapids.

Nous fusmes contrariés de fort mauuais temps, en sorte que le mats[a] de nostre chalouppe se rompit, & si Dieu ne nous eust preserués, nous nous fussions perdus, comme fit deuant nos yeux vne chalouppe de S. Maslo qui alloit à l'isle d'Orleans,[1] de laquelle les hommes se sauuerent.

Le 7. nous arriuasmes à Quebec, où trouuasmes ceux qui y auoient hyuerné en bonne disposition, sans auoir esté malades, lesquels nous dirent que l'hyuer n'auoit point esté grand, & que la riuiere n'auoit point gelé. Les arbres commençoient aussi à se reuestir de feuilles, & les champs à s'esmailler de fleurs.

Le 13. nous partismes de Quebec pour aller au Saut S. Louys,[2] où nous arriuasmes le 21. & y trouuasmes l'vne de nos barques qui estoit partie depuis nous de Tadoussac, p. 13. laquelle auoit traicté quelque peu de marchandises, auec vne petite troupe d'Algoumequins, qui venoyent de la guerre des

[a] Pour *mast* = mât.

We were delayed by such bad weather that the shallop's mast was broken, and had not God saved us, we should all have been lost, as happened before our eyes to a shallop of St. Malo, on its way to the island of Orleans,[1] the crew of which escaped.

On the seventh we arrived at Quebec, where we found those who had wintered there in good health, having been in no wise indisposed. They told us that the winter had not been severe and that the river had not frozen. The trees also were beginning to put forth their leaves again, and the fields to become bright with flowers.

On the thirteenth we set out from Quebec for the St. Louis rapid,[2] where we arrived on the twenty-first, and there we found one of our pinnaces which had left Tadoussac after we did. It had bartered some goods with a small band of Algonquins, who were returning from an expedition against

[1] See pp. 22–23.

[2] The Lachine rapids. See *supra*, p. 181.

Yroquois, & auoient auec eux deux prisonniers. Ceux de la barque leur firent entēdre que i'estois venu auec nombre d'hommes pour les assister en leurs guerres, suiuant la promesse que ie leur auois faite les annees precedentes; & de plus, que ie desirois aller en leur pays, & faire amitié auec tous leurs amis; dequoy ils furent fort ioyeux: Et d'autant qu'ils vouloient retourner en leur pays pour asseurer leurs amis de leur victoire, voir leurs femmes, & faire mourir leurs prisonniers en vne solemnelle Tabagie.[1] Pour gages de leur retour, qu'ils promettoient estre auāt le milieu de la premiere lune (ainsi qu'ils content) ils laisserent leurs rondaches, faictes de bois & de cuir d'Elland, & partie de leurs arcs & flesches. Ce me fut vn grand desplaisir de ne m'estre trouué à propos pour m'en aller auec eux en leur pays.

Trois iours apres arriuerēt trois canots d'Algoumequins qui venoient du dedans des terres, chargés de quelque peu de marchandises, qu'ils traicterent, lesquels me dirēt que

---

the Iroquois, with two prisoners they had taken. The men in this pinnace told them that I had arrived with a number of people to help them in their wars, according to my previous promise to them, and further that I wished to visit their country, and to enter into friendly relations with all their friends. At this they were very joyful, the more so that they purposed to return to their country in order to tell their friends of their victory, to see their wives, and to put their prisoners to death at a solemn feast.[1] As a pledge of their return, which they promised would be before the middle of the first moon (as they reckon time), they left their shields, made of wood and moose hide, and some of their bows and arrows. I was very sorry I had not arrived in time to accompany them to their country.

Three days later arrived from the interior three canoes of Algonquins with a few furs of which they disposed. They

[1] See Vol. I, 99.

le mauuais traictement qu'auoient reçeus les Sauuages l'annee precedente, les auoit degoutés de venir plus, & qu'ils ne croyoient pas que ie deusse retourner iamais en leurs pays, p. 14. pour les mauuaises impressions que mes enuieux leur auoient donnees de moy ; & pource 1200. hommes estoyent allez à la guerre, n'ayans plus d'esperance aux François, lesquels ils ne croyoient pas vouloir plus retourner en leur pays.

Ces nouuelles attristerent fort les marchans, car ils auoient fait grãde emplette de marchandises, sous esperãce que les sauuages viendroiẽt comme ils auoient accoustumé : ce qui me fit resoudre en faisant mes descouuertures, de passer en leur pays, pour encourager ceux qui estoyent restés, du bon traictement qu'ils receuroyent, & de la quantité de bonnes marchandises qui estoyent au Saut,[1] & pareillement de l'affection que i'auois de les assister à la guerre : Et pour ce faire, ie leur fis demander trois canots & trois Sauuages pour

told me that the bad treatment the Indians had received in the previous summer had given them a disinclination to come down any more, and that from the wrong impression my rivals had given them of me, they did not think I should ever return to their country. For this reason, twelve hundred men had gone on the war-path, having no longer any hope of help from the French, who, they thought, would no more return to their country.

This intelligence saddened the merchants greatly; for they had made large purchases of goods in the hope that the Indians would come down as usual. This made me resolve in carrying out my explorations, to make my way into their country in order to encourage those who had stayed at home, with an assurance of the good treatment they would receive and of the quantity of fine wares that were at the Rapids,[1] as well as of my desire to help them in their wars. And in order to carry this out, I asked them for three canoes and three

[1] The Lachine rapids.

nous guider, & auec beaucoup de peine i'en obtins deux & vn sauuage seulement, & ce moyennant quelques presens qui leur furent faits.

Partement pour descouurir la mer du Nort, sur le rapport qui m'en auoit esté faict. Description de plusieurs riuieres, lacs, isles, du Saut de la chaudiere, & autres Sauts.

CHAP. III.

OR n'ayant que deux Canots, ie ne pouuois mener auec moy que quatre hommes, entre lesquels p. 15. estoit vn nōmé Nicolas de Vignau le plus impudent menteur qui se soit veu de long temps, comme la suitte de ce discours le fera voir, lequel autresfois auoit hyuerné auec les Sauuages, & que i'auois enuoyé aux descouuertures les annees precedentes. Il me r'apporta à son retour à Paris en l'annee 1612. qu'il auoit veu la Mer du Nort,

---

Indians to guide us. With much difficulty I obtained two canoes, but only one Indian, and that by means of presents which were made to them.

Departure to explore the northern sea, trusting to a report which had been made to me respecting it. Description of several rivers, lakes, islands, of the Chaudière falls and other rapids.

CHAPTER III

HAVING then but two canoes, I was able to take with me only four men, among whom was one named Nicolas de Vignau, the most impudent liar that has been seen for a long time, as the continuation of this story will show. He had some time before this wintered with the Indians and I had sent him on explorations in previous years. On returning to Paris in the year 1612 he had reported to me that he had seen the northern sea; that the river of the

que la riuiere des Algoumequins[1] sortoit d'vn lac qui s'y deschargeoit, & qu'en 17. iournees l'on pouuoit aller & venir du Saut S. Louys[2] à ladite mer: qu'il auoit veu le bris & fracas d'vn vaisseau Anglois qui s'estoit perdu à la coste, où il y auoit 80. hommes qui s'estoient sauués à terre, que les Sauuages tuerent à cause que lesdits Anglois leur vouloyent prendre leurs bleds d'Inde & autres viures par force, & qu'il en auoit veu les testes qu'iceux Sauuages auoient escorchés (selon leur coustume) lesquelles ils me vouloiēt faire voir, ensemble me donner vn ieune garçon Anglois qu'ils m'auoient gardé. Ceste nouuelle m'auoit fort resiouy, pensant auoir trouué bien pres ce que ie cherchois bien loing: ainsi ie le coniuray de me dire la verité, afin d'en aduertir le Roy, & luy remonstray que s'il donnoit quelque mensonge à entendre, il se mettoit la corde au col, aussi que si sa relation estoit vraye, il se pouuoit asseurer d'estre bien recompensé: Il me l'asseura encor auec sermens plus grands que iamais. Et p. 16.

Algonquins[1] came from a lake which emptied into it; and that in seventeen days one could go from the St. Louis rapids[2] to this sea and back again. He said also that he had seen pieces of the wreck of an English ship which had been lost on that coast, on which were eighty men who had escaped to land. These the Indians killed because these Englishmen tried to take from them by force their Indian corn and other supplies. He said too that he had seen the scalps of these men which these Indians according to their custom had cut off. These they would show me, and would also give me an English boy whom they were keeping for me. This intelligence had pleased me greatly; for I thought I had found close at hand what I was searching for a long way off. Thus I besought him to tell me the truth, so that I might inform the king, and warned him that if he were telling a lie, he was putting a rope about his neck, but that if his story were true, he could count upon being well rewarded. He again asserted the

[1] The Ottawa.

[2] The Lachine rapids.

pour mieux ioüer son roole, il me bailla vne relation du païs qu'il disoit auoir faicte, au mieux qu'il luy auoit esté possible. L'asseurance donc que ie voyois en luy, la simplicité de laquelle ie le iugeois plain, la relation qu'il auoit dressée, le bris & fracas du vaisseau, & les choses cy deuant dictes, auoyent grande apparence, auec le voyage des Anglois vers Labrador, en l'année 1612. où ils ont trouué vn destroit qu'ils ont couru iusques par le 63^e. degré de latitude, & 290. de longitude,[1] & ont hyuerné par le 53^e. degré, & perdu quelques vaisseaux, comme leur relation en faict foy. Ces choses me faisant croire son dire veritable, i'en fis deslors rapport à Monsieur le Chancelier [2]; & le fis voir à Messieurs le Mareschal de Brissac,[3] & President Ieannin,[4] & autres

truth of it with greater oaths than ever. And in order the better to play his part he presented me with an account of the country which he said he had drawn up to the best of his ability. His self-assurance, the honesty of which I judged him to be possessed, the account he had drawn up, the broken fragments of the ship and the points already mentioned, had great show of truth, coupled with the voyage of the English towards Labrador in 1612, where they found a strait into which they sailed as far as the sixty-third degree of latitude and the two hundred and ninetieth of longitude.[1] They spent the winter near the fifty-third degree and lost some ships as their account shows. These things leading me to believe his story, I thereupon made a report of it to the Chancellor,[2] which I also showed to the Maréchal de Brissac [3] and to Chief Justice Jeannin [4] as well as to other Lords of the

---

[1] See *Descriptio ac delineatio Geographica Detectionis Freti sive Transitus ad Occasum supra terras Americanas, in Chinam, atq: Iaponem ducturi Recens investigati ab M. Henrico Hudsono Anglo, etc., etc.* Amsterodami: 1612. The map is reproduced on Plate X, p. 257.

[2] Nicolas Brûlart de Sillery. See his portrait by Dumonstier in R. Pinset et J. d'Auriac, *Histoire du portrait en France*, 50. Paris, 1884.

[3] Charles II de Cossé, whom Henry IV on receiving Paris at his hands in 1594 made a Maréchal de France.

[4] See p. 243, note 1.

Seigneurs de la Cour, lesquels me dirent qu'il me falloit voir la chose en personne. Cela fut cause que ie priay le sieur Georges, marchant de la Rochelle,[1] de luy donner passage dans son vaisseau, ce qu'il feit volontiers; où estant l'interrogea pourquoy il faisoit ce voyage: & d'autant qu'il luy estoit inutile, luy demanda s'il esperoit quelque salaire, lequel feit response que non, & qu'il n'en pretendoit d'autre que du Roy, & qu'il n'entreprenoit le voyage que pour me monstrer la mer du Nord, qu'il auoit veuë, & luy en fit à la p. 17. Rochelle vne declaration par deuant deux Notaires.

Or comme ie prenois cōgé de tous les Chefs, le iour de la Pentecoste,[2] aux prieres desquels ie me recommandois, & de tous en general, ie luy dis en leur presēce, que si ce qu'il auoit cy deuāt dict n'estoit vray, qu'il ne me donnast la peine d'entreprendre le voyage, pour lequel faire il falloit

---

Court who told me that I ought to see the thing for myself. For this reason I asked the Sieur Georges, a La Rochelle merchant,[1] to give Vignau a passage in his ship, which he willingly did. On board the ship, Georges questioned him as to why he was making the trip, and since it was of no profit to him, he asked him whether he expected any wages. De Vignau answered that he did not, nor did he look for anything from anyone but the king, and that he was undertaking the journey solely for the purpose of showing me the northern sea which he had visited. And at La Rochelle he made a solemn declaration in the matter to the Sieur Georges before two notaries.

Now when on Whitsunday[2] I was taking leave of everybody and particularly of all the chief men to whose prayers I commended myself, I said to Vignau in their presence that if what he had previously stated was not true, he should spare me the trouble of undertaking this journey, which would

[1] See Grant's *Lescarbot*, II, 268, 288 and 320.

[2] May 26, 1613.

courir plusieurs dangers. Il asseura encore derechef tout ce qu'il auoit dict au peril de sa vie.

Ainsi nos Canots chargés de quelques viures, de nos armes & marchandises pour faire presens aux Sauuages, ie partis le lundy 27. May de l'isle saincte Helaine [1] auec 4. François & vn Sauuage, & me fut donné vn adieu auec quelques coups de petites pieces, & ne fusmes ce iour qu'au Saut S. Louys,[2] qui n'est qu'vne lieuë au dessus, à cause du mauuais temps qui ne nous permit de passer plus outre.

Le 29. nous le passasmes, partie par terre, partie par eau, où il nous fallut porter nos Canots, hardes, viures & armes sur nos espaules, qui n'est pas petite peine à ceux qui n'y sont accoustumés : & apres l'auoir esloigné deux lieuës, nous entrasmes dans vn lac [3] qui a de circuit enuiron 12. lieuës, où se deschargēt trois riuieres, l'vne venant de l'ouest,[4] du

---

inevitably involve many risks. He reasserted, on peril of his life, all he had previously stated.

Accordingly, our canoes being laden with provisions, with our arms, and with goods with which to make presents to the Indians, I set out on Monday, May 27, from St. Helen's island [1] with four Frenchmen and an Indian, a farewell salute being given me with a few rounds from small pieces. That day we went only as far as the St. Louis rapids [2] which is but a league farther up, on account of the bad weather which prevented us from going any farther.

On the twenty-ninth we passed the rapid partly by portage, partly by tracking, and were forced to carry our canoes, clothes, provisions, and arms on our shoulders, which is no small labour for those who are not used to it. Having left it two leagues behind, we entered a lake [3] some twelve leagues in circumference into which empty three rivers, one coming from the west,[4] from the direction of the Ocha-

[1] Opposite Montreal. See p. 178 and Vol. I, 147. [2] The Lachine rapids.

[3] Lake St. Louis.

[4] The St. Lawrence. This was the shortest route to the Huron country.

costé des Ochataiguins[1] esloignés du grand Saut de 150. ou 200. lieuës; l'autre du Sud[2] pays des Yroquois, de pareille distance; & l'autre vers le Nord,[3] qui vient des Algoumequins, & Nebicerini,[4] aussi à peu pres de sēblable distãce. Cette riuiere du Nord, suiuant le rapport des Sauuages, vient de plus loing, & passe par des peuples qui leur sont incogneus, distans enuiron de 300. lieues d'eux. p. 18.

Ce lac est rempli de belles & grãdes isles, qui ne sont que prairies, où il y a plaisir de chasser, la venaison & le gibier y estans en abondance, aussi bien que le poisson. Le païs qui l'enuironne est rempli de grandes forests. Nous fusmes coucher à l'entree dudict lac, & fismes des barricades, à cause des Yroquois qui rodent par ces lieux pour surprendre leurs ennemis; & m'asseure que s'il nous tenoient, ils nous feroient

taiguins,[1] who are distant one hundred and fifty or two hundred leagues from the Great Rapids; another from the south,[2] which is the country of the Iroquois, a like distance away; and the third from the North,[3] where the Algonquins and the Nebicerini[4] live, about the same distance away. This northern river, according to the report of the Indians, comes from a greater distance and some three hundred leagues away passes through tribes unknown to them.

This lake is filled with fine large islands, which are like meadows, where it is a pleasure to hunt, venison being found there in abundance, as well as wildfowl and fish. The surrounding country is filled with great forests. We went to pass the night at the entrance to this lake, and made barricades against the Iroquois who prowl about those parts to surprise their enemies. And it is certain that if they caught us they

---

[1] The Hurons. See p. 68.

[2] The Chateauguay.

[3] The Ottawa; see p. 256.

[4] The Algonquin name of the nation of Wizards who dwelt at lake Nipissing.

aussi bonne chere qu'a eux, & pource toute la nuict fismes bō quart. Le lendemain ie prins la hauteur de ce lieu, qui est par les 45. degrez 18. minutes de latitude.[1] Sur les trois heures du soir nous entrasmes dans la riuiere qui vient du Nord,[2] & passasmes vn petit Saut[3] par terre pour soulager nos canots, & fusmes à vne isle le reste de la nuict en attendant le iour.

Le dernier May nous passasmes par vn autre lac[4] qui
p. 19. a 7. ou 8. lieuës de long, & trois de large, où il y a quelques isles : Le païs d'alētour est fort vni, horsmis en quelques endroits, où il y a des costaux couuerts de pins. Nous passasmes vn Saut qui est appelé de ceux du païs Quenechouan qui est rempli de pierres & rochers, où l'eau y court de grād vistesse:[5] il nous falut mettre en l'eau & traisner

---

would give us as warm a welcome as their enemies, on which account we kept good watch all night long. The next day I took the latitude of this place, which is about 45° 18′.[1] About three o'clock in the afternoon we entered the river which flows from the north,[2] and passed a small rapid[3] by portage to relieve our canoes and went to an island for the rest of the night, awaiting daylight.

On the last day of May we passed through another lake[4] which is seven or eight leagues long and three wide in which are a few islands. The country round about is very flat except in some places where there are slopes covered with pines. We passed a rapid which is called by the people of the region Quenechouan, full of stones and rocks, and here the water runs very swiftly.[5] We had to get into the water and drag

[1] The end of the lake St. Louis is about 45° 25′.

[2] The Ottawa.

[3] This rapid appears to be the one which separates Perrot island from Montreal island. It is called on some maps Brussi rapid.

[4] The lake of Two Mountains, which on his map of 1632 the author calls *lac de Soissons.*

[5] The first of the Long Sault rapids, called Carillon rapid.

nos Canots bort à bort de terre auec vne corde : à demi lieuë de là nous en passasmes vn autre petit à force d'auirons, ce qui ne se faict sans suer, & y a vne grande dexterité à passer ces Sauts pour éuiter les bouillons & brisants qui les trauersent ; ce que les Sauuages font d'vne telle adresse, qu'il est impossible de plus, cherchans les destours & lieux plus aysés qu'ils cognoissent à l'œil.

Le samedy 1. de Iuin nous passasmes encor deux autres Sauts : le premier contenant demie lieuë de long, & le second vne lieuë,[1] où nous eusmes bien de la peine ; car la rapidité du courant est si grãde, qu'elle faict vn bruict effroyable, & descendant de degré en degré, faict vne escume si blanche par tout, que l'eau ne paroist aucunement : ce Saut est parsemé de rochers & quelques isles qui sont çà & là, couuertes de pins & cedres blancs : Ce fut là, où nous eusmes de la peine : car ne pouuans porter nos Canots par terre à cause de l'espaisseur du bois, il nous les failloit tirer dans

---

our canoes close to the shore with a rope. Half a league thence we passed another small rapid by hard paddling which is not done without much sweating. Great dexterity is needed to pass these rapids, in order to avoid the eddies and shoals which occur in them. This the Indians do with the very greatest skill, seeking by-ways and safe places which they recognize at a glance.

On Saturday, June 1, we passed two more rapids, the first being half a league long, and the second a league.[1] Here we had much labour ; for so great is the swiftness of the current that it makes a dreadful noise, and, falling from level to level, produces everywhere such a white foam that no water at all is seen. This rapid is strewn with rocks and in it here and there are some islands covered with pines and white cedars. It was here we had such difficulty, for being unable to portage our canoes on account of the thickness

[1] Probably the Long Sault and the Chute au Blondeau.

p. 20. l'eau auec des cordes, & en tirant le mien, ie me pensay perdre, à cause qu'il trauersa dans vn des bouillons ; & si ie ne fusse tombé fauorablement entre deux rochers, le Canot m'entraisnoit ; d'autant que ie ne peus d'effaire[a] assez à temps la corde qui estoit entortillee à l'entour de ma main, qui me l'offença fort, & me la pensa coupper. En ce danger ie m'escriay à Dieu, & commençay à tirer mon Canot, qui me fut renuoyé par le remouil de l'eau qui se faict en ces Sauts, & lors estant eschappé ie loüay Dieu, le priant nous preseruer. Nostre Sauuage vint apres pour me secourir, mais i'estois hors de danger ; & ne se faut estonner si i'estois curieux de[b] conseruer nostre Canot : car s'il eut esté perdu, il falloit faire estat de demeurer, ou attendre que quelques Sauuages passassent par là, qui est vne pauure attente à ceux qui n'ont de quoy disner, & qui ne sont accoustumés à telle fatigue. Pour nos François ils n'en eurent pas meilleur

[a] A corriger : *deffaire*.

[b] Si je tenais beaucoup à. (*Curieux* = lat. curiosus.)

---

of the woods, we had to track them, and in pulling mine I nearly lost my life, because the canoe turned broadside into a whirlpool, and had I not luckily fallen between two rocks, the canoe would have dragged me in, since I could not quickly enough loosen the rope which was twisted round my hand, which hurt me very much, and nearly cut it off. In this danger I cried aloud to God and began to pull my canoe towards me, which was sent back to me by an eddy such as occurs in these rapids. Having escaped, I gave praise to God, beseeching Him to preserve us. Later on our Indian came to my help, but I was out of danger. One must not be surprised that I was anxious to preserve our canoe ; for had it been lost, we must have prepared to remain there or to wait until some Indians should come along, which was a poor prospect for those who have nothing to eat, and are not used to such fatigue. As for our Frenchmen, they did not fare

marché, & par plusieurs fois pensoient estre perdus : mais la Diuine bonté nous preserua tous. Le reste de la iournee nous nous reposasmes, ayans assés trauaillé.

Nous rencontrasmes le lendemain 15. Canots de Sauuages appellés Quenongebin[1] dans vne riuiere, ayant passé vn petit lac[2] long de 4. lieuës, & large de 2. lesquels auoient esté aduertis de ma venue par ceux qui auoient passé au p. 21. Saut S. Louys[3] venans de la guerre des Yroquois : Ie fus fort aise de leur rencontre, & eux aussi, qui s'estonnoient de me voir auec si peu de gens en ce païs, & auec vn seul Sauuage. Ainsi apres nous estre salués à la mode du païs, ie les priay de ne passer outre pour leur declarer ma volonté, ce qu'ils firent, & fusmes cabaner dans vne isle.

Le lendemain ie leur fis entendre que i'estois allé en leur(s) pays pour les voir, & pour m'acquitter de la promesse

---

any better, and several times were nearly lost. But God's mercy preserved us all. The remainder of the day we rested, having toiled enough.

On the following day in a river, after we had passed a small lake four leagues long and two wide,[2] we met with fifteen canoes of Indians called Quenongebin,[1] who had been informed of my coming by the Indians who had passed by the St. Louis rapids [3] on their return from warring with the Iroquois. I was very glad to meet them, and they me, and they were astonished to see me in that country with so few Frenchmen, and with only one Indian. Hence, having saluted each other after the manner of the country, I requested them not to pass on until I had declared my wishes to them. To this they agreed and we went and camped on an island.

The next day I explained to them that I had gone into their country to see them and to keep the promise I had

[1] Or Kinounchepirini, an Algonquin nation, whose country was situated to the south of Allumette island. (Lav.) See Plate I, p. 1.

[2] Probably the extension of the Ottawa at L'Orignal.

[3] The Lachine rapids. See p. 252.

que ie leur auois par cy deuant faicte ; & que s'ils estoient resolus d'aller à la guerre, cela m'agreroit fort, d'autant que i'auois amené des gens à ceste intẽtion, dequoy ils furent fort satisfaits : & leur ayant dict que ie voulois passer outre pour aduertir les autres peuples, ils m'en voulurent destourner, disans, qu'il y auoit vn meschant chemin, & que nous n'auions rien veu iusques alors ; & pource ie les priay de me donner vn de leurs gens pour gouuerner nostre deuxiesme Canot, & aussi pour nous guider, car nos conducteurs n'y cognoissoient plus rien : ils le firent volontiers, & en recompense ie leur fis vn present, & leur baillay vn de nos François, le moins necessaire, lequel ie renuoyois au Saut[1] auec vne feuille de tablette,[a] dans laquelle, à faute de papier, ie faisois scauoir de mes nouuelles.

p. 22. Ainsi nous nous separasmes : & continuant nostre route à mont ladicte riuiere, en trouuasmes vne autre fort belle

[a] Cette *feuille de tablette* est vraisemblablement un des feuillets (de parchemin, d'ivoire, etc.) attachés ensemble pour former les *tablettes* qui servaient à prendre des notes.

---

previously made to them. I told them that if they were resolved to go to war, I should be much pleased, since I had brought men for that purpose, at which they expressed much satisfaction ; but when I informed them that I wished to go on farther to warn the other tribes, they tried to dissuade me, declaring that the way was bad and that we had hitherto seen nothing like it. On this account, I begged them to give me one of their men to steer our second canoe, and also to act as guide ; for our guides were no longer acquainted with the country. They did so readily, and as a reward I made them a present, and lent them one of our Frenchmen whom we least needed. Him I sent back to the Rapids,[1] with a leaf out of a note-book, whereon, for lack of paper, I sent them news of what I was doing.

Thus we separated ; and continuing our journey up

[1] The Lachine rapids.

& spatieuse, qui vient d'vne nation appelée Ouescharini,[1] lesquels se tiennent au Nord d'icelle, & à 4. iournees de l'entree. Ceste riuiere est fort plaisante, à cause des belles isles qu'elle contient, & des terres garnies de beaux bois clairs qui la bordent ; la terre est bonne pour le labourage.

Le quatriesme nous passasmes proche d'vne autre riuiere qui vient du Nord,[2] où se tiennent des peuples appellés Algoumequins, laquelle va tomber dans le grand fleuue sainct Laurens 3. lieuës aual le Saut S. Louys, qui faict vne grãde isle cõtenant prés de 40. lieuës,[3] laquelle n'est pas large, mais remplie d'vn nombre infini de Sauts, qui sont fort difficiles

---

the said river, we came upon another, very beautiful and wide, which flows from a nation called Ouescharini,[1] who live to the north of it and four days' journey from its mouth. This river is very attractive, on account of the beautiful islands in it, and of the lands along its banks covered with fine open woods. This land is suitable for tillage.

On the fourth we passed near another river which comes from the north [2] where live tribes called Algonquins. This river falls into the great river St. Lawrence, three leagues below the St. Louis rapids, forming in this way a large island some forty leagues in circumference.[3] This river is not wide, but has in it a large number of rapids which are

[1] The Algonquin name of those who were called, some years later, the Little Nation of the Algonquins. This explains why the river is still called Petite Nation river. (Lav.) See Plate I, p. 1. [2] The Gatineau.

[3] The geographical difficulty involved in this passage is thus explained by Laverdière: 'Champlain meant to say: "laquelle (La Gatineau) va joindre dans les terres une autre rivière (le Saint-Maurice), qui va tomber 30 lieues (et non pas 3) aval le saut S. Louys." If the phrase is restored in this way, everything becomes clear or at least explicable. In the first place the Gatineau and the St. Maurice encircle along with the St. Lawrence a stretch of land which forms, as it were, a large island of forty leagues or a little more. In the second place, the Indians, by following this route, really avoided meeting with their enemies.' See Laverdière, *Œuvres*, III, 299, and H. M. Ami, *Canada and Newfoundland*, 359–60. London, 1915.

à passer : Et quelquesfois ces peuples passent par ceste riuiere pour éuiter les rencontres de leurs ennemis, sçachans qu'ils ne les recherchent en lieux de si difficile accés.

A l'emboucheure d'icelle[1] il y en a vne autre qui viēt du Sud,[2] où à son entree il y a vne cheute d'eau admirable : car elle tombe d'vne telle impetuosité de 20. ou 25. brasses de haut, qu'elle faict vne arcade, ayant de largeur pres de 400. pas. Les sauuages passent dessous par plaisir, sans se p. 23. mouiller que du poudrin que fait ladite eau. Il y a vne isle au milieu de ladicte riuiere,[3] qui est comme tout le terroir d'alentour, remplie de pins & cedres blancs : Quand les Sauuages veulent entrer dans la riuiere, ils montent la montagne en portant leurs Canots, & font demye lieuë par terre.[4] Les terres des enuirōs sont remplies de toute sorte de chasse, qui faict que les Sauuages s'y arrestent plus tost ;

---

difficult to pass. Sometimes these tribes go by way of this river to avoid meeting with their enemies, knowing that these will not seek for them in places so difficult of access.

Near the mouth of this river[1] is another coming from the south,[2] and at its mouth there is a wonderful waterfall ; for, from a height of twenty or twenty-five fathoms, it falls with such impetuosity that it forms an archway nearly four hundred yards in width. The Indians, for the fun of it, pass underneath this without getting wet, except for the spray made by the falling water. There is an island in the middle of this river,[3] which like all the land round about is covered with pines and white cedars. When the Indians wish to enter this river, they go up the mountain, bearing their canoes, and carry half a league.[4] The surrounding region is filled with all sorts of game, so that the Indians

[1] The Gatineau.

[2] The Rideau river.

[3] Green island in the Rideau.

[4] Perhaps where the Rideau locks are now built beside Parliament Hill.

les Yroquois y viennent aussi quelquesfois les surprendre au passage.

Nous passasmes vn Saut à vne lieuë de là, qui est large de demie lieue, & descend de 6. à 7. brasses de haut.[1] Il y a quantité de petites isles qui ne sont que rochers aspres & difficiles, couuerts de meschans petits bois. L'eau tombe à vn endroit de telle impetuosité sur vn rocher, qu'il s'y est caué par succession de temps vn large & profond bassin : si bien que l'eau courant la dedans circulairement, & au milieu y faisant de gros bouillons, a faict que les Sauuages l'appellent Asticou, qui veut dire chaudiere.[2] Ceste cheute d'eau meine vn tel bruit dans ce bassin, que l'on l'entend de plus de deux lieuës. Les Sauuages passants par là, font vne ceremonie que nous dirõs en son lieu.[3] Nous eusmes beaucoup de peine à monter contre vn grand courant, à force de

---

like to make a halt here. The Iroquois also come here sometimes and surprise them as they pass.

A league thence we passed a rapid which is half a league wide and has a descent of six or seven fathoms.[1] Here are many small islands which are nothing more than rough, steep rocks, covered with poor, scrubby wood. At one place the water falls with such force upon a rock that with the lapse of time it has hollowed out a wide, deep basin. Herein the water whirls around to such an extent, and in the middle sends up such big swirls, that the Indians call it *Asticou*, which means 'boiler.'[2] This waterfall makes such a noise in this basin that it can be heard for more than two leagues away. The Indians who pass by this spot perform a ceremony which we shall describe in its proper place.[3] We had much difficulty in paddling up against a strong current in order to reach the foot of the rapid, where

[1] The Chaudière falls.

[2] Hence the name *Chaudière*.

[3] See p. 301.

rames, pour paruenir au pied dudict Saut, où les Sauuages p. 24. prirent les Canots, & nos François & moy, nos armes, viures & autres commodités pour passer par l'aspreté des rochers enuiron vn quart de lieuë que contient le Saut, & aussi tost nous fallut embarquer, puis derechef mettre pied à terre pour passer par des taillis enuiron 300. pas, apres se mettre en l'eau pour faire passer nos Canots par dessus les rochers aigus, auec autant de peine que l'on sçauroit s'imaginer. Ie prins la hauteur du lieu & trouuay 45. degrés 38. minutes, de latitude.[1]

Apres midy nous entrasmes dans vn lac[2] ayant 5. lieuës de long, & 2. de large, où il y a de fort belles isles remplies de vignes, noyers & autres arbres aggreables, 10. ou 12. lieuës de là amont la riuiere nous passasmes par quelques isles remplies de Pins ; La terre est sablonneuse, & si[a] trouue vne racine qui teint en couleur cramoysie, de laquelle les Sauuages

[a] Lire *s'y*.

---

the Indians took up the canoes, and our Frenchmen and myself our arms, provisions, and other articles, to carry them over the rough rocks for about a quarter of a league, which is the length of the fall. Then we had to get into our canoes, and then land again to walk for about three hundred yards through some underbrush. Then we had to enter the water, to drag our canoes over the sharp rocks, with every difficulty one can imagine. I took the latitude of this place and found it to be 45° 38′.[1]

In the afternoon we entered a lake,[2] five leagues long and two broad, where there are very fine islands covered with vines, butternuts and other pleasant trees. Ten or twelve leagues farther up the river we passed among some islands covered with pines. The soil is sandy, and there is a root which dyes a crimson colour, wherewith the Indians

[1] The Chaudière falls lie in 45° 25′ 33″.

[2] Lake Deschenes, twenty-one miles long, in which are Aylmer and Mohr islands.

se peindent le visage, & de petits affiquets à leur vsage. Il y a aussi vne coste de montagnes du long de ceste riuiere, & le païs des enuirons semble assés fascheux.[1] Le reste du iour nous le passasmes dans vne isle fort aggreable.[2]

Le lendemain nous cōtinuasmes nostre chemin iusques à vn grand Saut, qui contient prés de 3. lieuës de large, où l'eau descend comme de 10. ou 12. brasses de haut en talus, & faict vn merueilleux bruit.[3] Il est rempli d'vne infinité d'isles, couuertes de Pins & de Cedres : & pour le passer il p. 25. nous fallut resoudre de quitter nostre Maïs ou bled d'Inde, & peu d'autres viures que nous auions, auec les hardes moins necessaires, reseruans seulement nos armes & filets, pour nous dōner à viure selō les lieux & l'heur de la chasse. Ainsi allegés nous passasmes tant à l'auiron, que par terre, en

paint their faces and their little trinkets, according to the custom in use among them. Along this river there is also a range of mountains, and the surrounding country seems rather unpleasant.[1] The rest of the day we spent upon a very pleasant island.[2]

On the following day we continued our journey as far as a large rapid, which is nearly three leagues wide where the water descends a slope some ten or twelve fathoms high and makes a wonderful noise.[3] It is full of a great number of islands, covered with pines and cedars. In order to pass it we had to bring ourselves to abandon our maize or Indian corn and our small quantity of other provisions and the less necessary wearing apparel, keeping only our firearms and nets to supply us with food, according as opportunity and the luck of the chase might provide. Thus lightened, we passed this rapid, partly by paddling and partly by portage, carrying

---

[1] Probably the Eardley hills on the north and the sandy shores of Constance bay on the south.

[2] Possibly Mohr island.

[3] Chats falls, at the head of lake Deschenes.

portant nos Canots & armes par ledict Saut, qui a vne lieuë & demie de long, où nos Sauuages qui sont infatigables à ce trauail, & accoustumés à endurer telles necessités, nous soulagerent beaucoup.

Poursuiuãs nostre route nous passasmes deux autres Sauts, l'vn par terre, l'autre à la rame & auec des perches [1] en deboutant,[a] puis entrasmes dans vn lac [2] ayant 6. ou 7. lieuës de long, où se descharge vne riuiere venant du Sud,[3] où à cinq iournees de l'autre riuiere[4] il y a des peuples qui y habitẽt appelés Matou-oüescarini.[5] Les terres d'enuiron ledit lac sont sablonneuses, & couuertes de pins, qui ont esté presque tous bruslés par les sauuages. Il y a quelques isles, dans l'vne desquelles nous reposames,[6] & vismes plusieurs

[a] En poussant contre le fond, en les appuyant sur les rochers.

---

our canoes and our arms. These rapids are a league and a half long, and here our Indians, who are indefatigable at this work and accustomed to endure such hardships, helped us very much.

Continuing our journey, we passed two other rapids, the one by portage and the other by paddling and poling.[1] Then we entered a lake [2] six or seven leagues in length into which empties a river flowing from the south.[3] Here, five days' journey from the other river,[4] lives a nation called the Matou-oüescarini.[5] The region about this lake is sandy and covered with pines, which have been almost all burned down by the Indians. There are some islands here, on one of which we rested.[6] Here we saw a number of fine red

[1] The upper rapids of the Chat.

[2] Lac des Chats, which is about eighteen miles long.

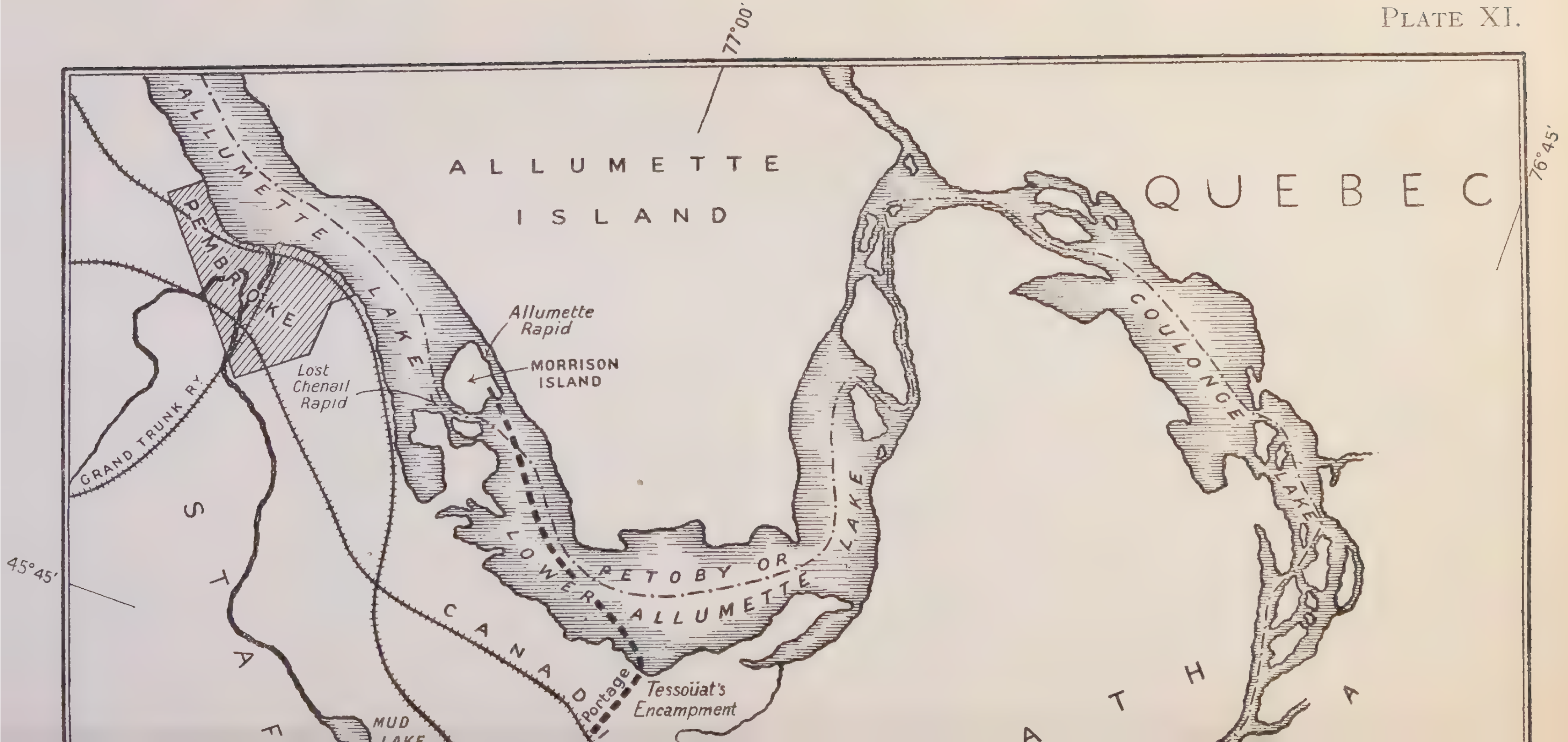
[3] The Madawaska. The Mississippi and Bonnechere also enter this lake from the south, but as the portage over the Chat falls was on the south side, Champlain probably saw the Madawaska.

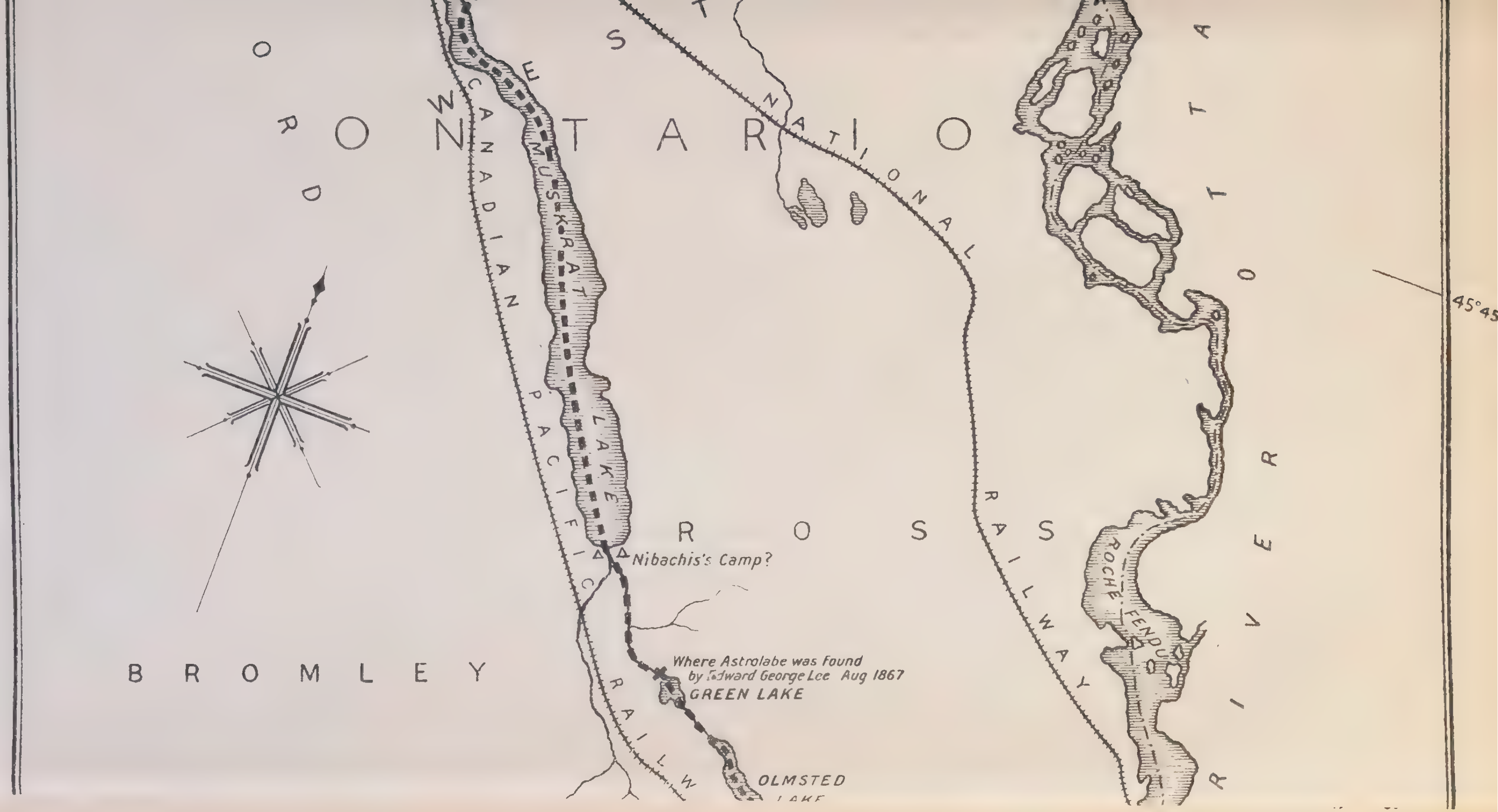
[4] St. Lawrence.

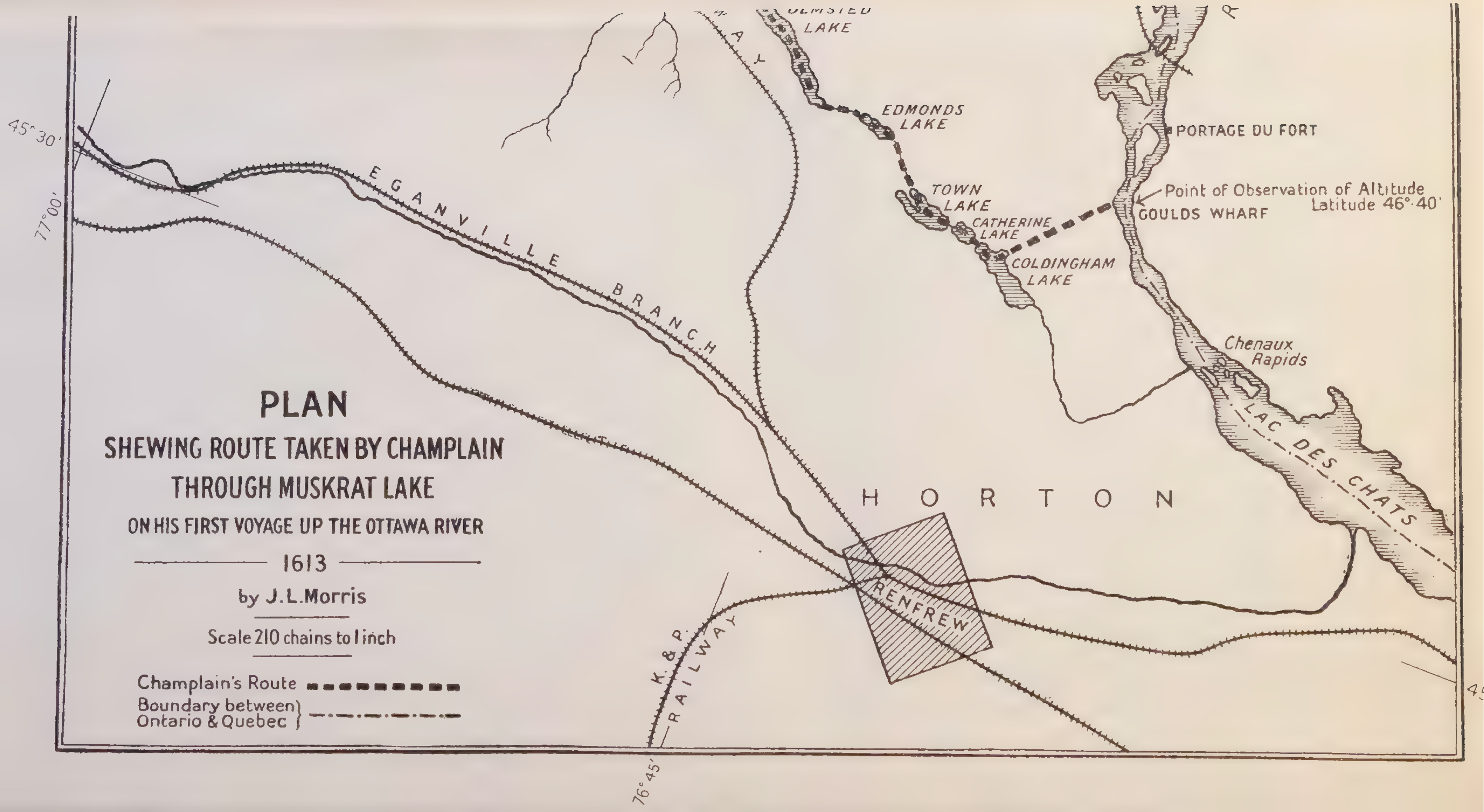
[5] See Plate I, p. 1.

[6] Probably on one of the islands opposite Braeside, but these have no names.

PLATE XI.


77°00'
76°45'
45°45'
QUEBEC
ALLUMETTE ISLAND
ALLUMETTE LAKE
PEMBROKE
Allumette Rapid
MORRISON ISLAND
Lost Chenail Rapid
GRAND TRUNK RY.
LOWER ALLUMETTE LAKE
PETOBY OR
COULONGE LAKE
Portage
Tessoüat's Encampment
MUD LAKE
CANAD
STAF
ATH A


ONTARIO
WEST
ORD
BROMLEY
ROSS
CANADIAN PACIFIC RAILW
NATIONAL RAILWAY
MUSKRAT LAKE
Nibachis's Camp?
Where Astrolabe was found
by Edward George Lee Aug 1867
GREEN LAKE
OLMSTED
LAKE
ROCHE FENDU
OTTAWA
RIVER
45°45



PLAN

SHEWING ROUTE TAKEN BY CHAMPLAIN THROUGH MUSKRAT LAKE

ON HIS FIRST VOYAGE UP THE OTTAWA RIVER

1613

by J.L.Morris

Scale 210 chains to 1 inch

Nos sauuages luy disoient tu es lassé de viure ; & à moy, que ie ne le deuois croire, & qu'il ne disoit pas verité. Ainsi ayant remarqué plusieurs fois qu'il n'auoit aucune cognoissance desdits lieux, ie suiuis l'aduis des sauuages, dont bien il m'en prit, car il cherchoit des difficultez pour me perdre, ou pour me degouter de l'entreprise, comme il a confessé depuis (dequoy sera parlé cy apres.) Nous trauersames donc à l'ouest la riuiere qui couroit au Nord, & pris la hauteur de ce lieu qui estoit par $46\frac{2}{3}$ de latitude.[1] Nous eusmes beaucoup de peine à faire ce chemin par terre, estāt chargé seulement pour ma part de trois arquebuses, autant d'auirons, de
p. 27. mon capot,[a] & quelques petites bagatelles ; i'encourageois nos gēs qui estoient quelque peu plus chargés, & plus greués[b]

[a] Espèce de manteau avec un capuchon.

[b] *Greués* = embarrassés, incommodés.

---

living,' and to me that I should not believe him and that he was not speaking the truth. Having observed several times in this way that he had no knowledge of these places, I followed the advice of the Indians; and it was lucky I did so; for he was on the look-out for difficult places in which to work my destruction, or to disgust me with the undertaking, as he afterwards confessed, whereof mention will be made farther on. We crossed to the west of the river, which flowed towards the north, and took the latitude of this place, which was 46° 40′.[1] We had much trouble in taking this route overland, being laden for my part alone with three arquebuses, an equal number of paddles, my cloak, and some small articles. I encouraged our men, who were somewhat more heavily laden, but who

---

[1] Gould's Landing, where Champlain left the Ottawa, lies in 45° 34′. See A. J. Russell, *On Champlain's Astrolabe, passim*, Montreal, 1879; and Charles Macnamara, *Champlain's Astrolabe*, in *The Canadian Field-Naturalist*, XXXIII, No. 6, 103–109, December 1919. My best thanks are due to Mrs. J. B. Simpson, formerly secretary of the Historic Landmarks Association, who kindly drew my attention to this article. *Cf.* Plate XI, p. 273.

des mousquites que de leur charge. Ainsi apres auoir passé 4. petits estangs,[1] & cheminé deux lieuës & demie, nous estions tāt fatigués qu'il nous estoit impossible de passer outre, à cause qu'il y auoit prés de 24. heures que n'auiōs māgé qu'vn peu de poissō rosti, sans autre sauce, car nous auiōs laissé nos viures, cōme i'ay dit cy dessus. Ainsi nous posasmes sur le bort d'vn estang, qui estoit assez aggreable,[2] & fismes du feu pour chasser les Mousquites qui nous molestoient fort, l'importunité desquelles est si estrange qu'il est impossible d'en pouuoir faire la description. Nous tendismes nos filets pour prendre quelques poissons.

Le lendemain nous passasmes cet estang qui pouuoit contenir vne lieuë de long, & puis par terre cheminasmes 3. lieuës par des païs difficiles plus que n'auions encor veu, à cause que les vents auoient abatu des pins, les vns sur les autres, qui n'est pas petite incommodité, car il faut passer

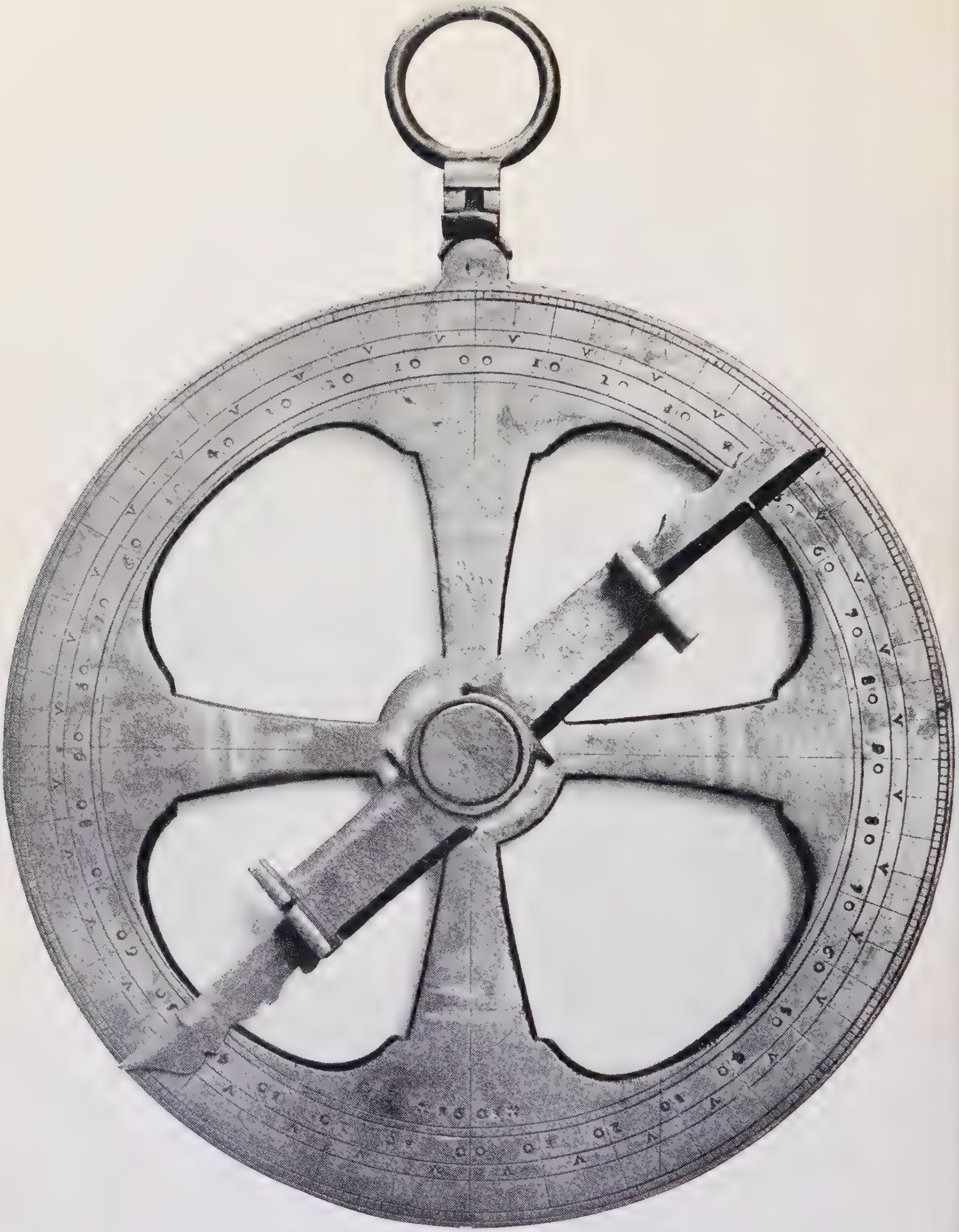
suffered more from mosquitoes than from their loads. Thus, after passing four small ponds [1] and walking two leagues and a half, we were so tired that it was impossible for us to go farther; for it was nearly twenty-four hours since we had eaten anything but a little broiled fish, without any other dish; for we had left our provisions behind as I have stated above. Therefore, we rested on the bank of a pond which was quite pleasant [2]; and we made a smudge to drive away the mosquitoes which annoyed us greatly. Their pertinacity is so great that it is impossible to give any description of it. We set our nets to catch some fish.

The next day we passed along this pond, which may have been a league in length, and then made our way by land for three leagues through more difficult country than we had yet seen, on account of the wind having blown down pine-trees one on top of the other, which is no small inconvenience; for one must go now over, and now under, these

---

[1] Coldingham, Catherine, Town and Edmonds lakes.

[2] Olmsted lake.



Champlain's Astrolabe, dated 1603, lost in 1613 and recovered in 1867.

To face p. 275.

tantost dessus & tantost dessous ces arbres,[1] ainsi nous paruinsmes à vn lac, ayant 6. lieuës de long, & 2. de large,[2] fort abondant en poisson, aussi les peuples des enuirons y font leur pescherie. Prés de ce lac y a vne habitation de p. 28. Sauuages qui cultiuent la terre, & recuillent du Maïs : le chef se nomme Nibachis, lequel nous vint voir auec sa troupe, esmerueillé comment nous auions peu passer les Sauts & mauuais chemins qu'il y auoit pour paruenir à eux. Et apres nous auoir presenté du petun selō leur mode, il commença à haranguer ses compagnons, leur disant, Qu'il falloit que fussiōs tombés des nues, ne sachant comment nous auions peu passer, & qu'eux demeurās au païs auoient beaucoup de peine à trauerser ces mauuais passages, leur faisant entendre que ie venois à bout de tout ce que mon esprit

trees.[1] Thus we reached a lake, six leagues long and two wide,[2] so abundant in fish that the surrounding tribes do their fishing here. Near this lake is a settlement of Indians who till the land and reap the maize. Their chief, whose name is Nibachis, came with his men to see us, and was astonished that we had been able to pass the rapids and bad trails on the way to their country. And having, according to their custom, offered us tobacco, he began to address his companions, saying that we must have fallen from the clouds ; for he did not know how we had been able to get through, when those who live in the country had great difficulty in coming along such difficult trails, giving them to understand that I carried out all I set my mind upon. In short, that he

---

[1] It was probably while getting through these fallen trees that Champlain lost his astrolabe, which was found at this spot in August 1867 by E. G. Lee, then a boy of fourteen. A photograph of the spot and Mr. Lee's account of how he discovered the astrolabe are given in Charles Macnamara's paper, cited on p. 273, note 1. The distance from Olmsted lake to Muskrat lake is three miles, not three leagues. See Plate XII, p. 275. The photograph for this was kindly supplied by the present owner, Mr. S. V. Hoffman of Morristown, N.J.

[2] Muskrat lake, which is only ten miles long. Farther on Champlain says it was ' nearly seven leagues long.'

vouloit : bref qu'il croyoit de moy ce que les autres sauuages luy en auoient dict. Et scachans que nous auions faim, ils nous donnerent du poisson, que nous mangeasmes, & apres disné ie leur fis entendre par Thomas mon truchement, l'aise que i'auois de les auoir rencontrés ; que i'estois en ce pays pour les assister en leurs guerres, & que ie desirois aller plus auant voir quelques autres capitaines pour mesme effect, dequoy ils furent ioyeux, & me promirent assistance. Ils me mōstrerēt leurs iardinages & champs, où il y auoit du Maïs. Leur terroir est sablonneux, & pource s'adonnent plus à la chasse qu'au labeur, au contraire des Ochataiguins.[1] Quand ils veulent rendre vn terroir labourable, ils bruslent les arbres, & ce fort aysémēt, car ce ne sont que pins chargés p. 29. de resine. Le bois bruslé ils remuent vn peu la terre, & plantent leur Maïs grain à grain, comme ceux de la Floride : il n'auoit pour lors que 4. doigts de haut.[2]

---

believed I was everything the other Indians had told him. And knowing we were hungry, they gave us some fish, which we ate ; and after the meal I expressed to them, through Thomas, my interpreter, the pleasure I felt at meeting them. I told them I was in this country to assist them in their wars, and that I wished to push on still farther to see other chiefs for the same purpose, at which they were glad, and promised to help me. They showed me their gardens and fields where maize was growing. Their soil is sandy, and on that account they are more given to hunting than to tilling the soil, contrary to the practice of the Ochataiguins.[1] When they wish to make a piece of ground fit for tillage, they burn the trees, and this very easily, since they are only pines full of resin. When the trees have been burned, they turn up the ground a little, and plant their maize, grain by grain, as do those of Florida. At that time the maize was only four finger-breadths high.[2]

[1] The Hurons. See pp. 68 and 186.

[2] According to Cotgrave's dictionary, 1611, *doigt* meant the sixteenth part of a foot. The height was therefore three inches.

Continuation. Arriuee vers Tessouat, & le bon accueil qu'il me feit. Façon de leurs cimetieres. Les Sauuages me promettent 4. Canots pour continuer mon chemin. Tost apres me les refusent. Harangue des sauuages pour me dissuader mon entreprise, me remonstrant les difficultés. Response à ces difficultés. Tessoüat argue mon conducteur de mensonge, & n'auoir esté où il disoit. Il leur maintient son dire veritable. Ie les presse de me donner des Canots. Plusieurs refus. Mon conducteur conuaincu de mensonge, & sa confession.

CHAP. IIII.

NIbachis feit equipper deux Canots pour me mener voir vn autre Capitaine nommé Tessoüat, qui demeuroit à 8. lieuës de luy, sur le bort d'vn grand lac,[1] par où passe la riuiere que nous auions laissee qui refuit au Nord ;[2] ainsi nous trauersasmes le lac[3] à l'Oüest Nort-ouest, pres de 7. lieuës, où ayans mis pied à

Continuation: Arrival at Tessoüat's village, and the kind welcome he gave me. Their cemeteries. The Indians promise me four canoes to continue my journey. Soon after they refuse them. Speech of the Indians to dissuade me from my purpose, pointing out the difficulties. My reply to these difficulties. Tessoüat charges my guide with falsehood and with not having been where he had said. He maintains that he has told the truth. I urge them to give me canoes. Several refusals. My guide convicted of falsehood and his confession.

CHAPTER IV

NIBACHIS had two canoes fitted out to take me to see another chief named Tessoüat, who lived eight leagues from him on the shore of a large lake,[1] through which passes the river we had left, which leads northward.[2] Thus we crossed the lake[3] in a west-northwesterly direction nearly seven leagues, where having landed

[1] Lower Allumette or Petoby lake. See Plate XI, p. 273.

[2] The Ottawa, which after leaving Allumette lake and flowing north then curves round through Coulonge lake and down past Calumet island to the lac des Chats, where Champlain had left it.

[3] Muskrat lake. They must have left this lake near Meath, whence the Stocqua portage led northward to Lower Allumette lake.

terre fismes vne lieuë au Nort-est parmy d’assés beaux païs, où il y a de petis sentiers battus, par lesquels on peut passer aysément, & arriuasmes sur le bort de ce lac, où estoit l’habitation de Tessoüat,[1] qui estoit auec vn autre chef sien voisin, tout estonné de me voir, & nous dit qu’il pensoit que ie fusse vn songe, & qu’il ne croyoit pas ce qu’il voyoit. De là nous passasmes en vne isle,[2] où leurs Cabanes sont p. 30. assez mal couuertes d[’]escorces d’arbres, qui est remplie de chesnes, pins & ormeaux, & n’est subiette aux innondations des eaux, comme sont les autres isles du lac.

Ceste isle est forte de situation : car aux deux bouts d’icelle, & à l’endroit où la riuiere se iette dans le lac, il y a des Sauts fascheux, & l’aspreté d’iceux la rendent forte ; & si [a] sont logés pour euiter les courses de leurs ennemis. Elle

[a] Lire *s’y*.

---

we went a league to the north-east, through a very beautiful region along narrow beaten trails where the going is easy, and we arrived at the shore of this lake where stood Tessoüat’s encampment.[1] He was with another neighbouring chief, and was much astonished at seeing me, telling us he thought I was a ghost, and that he could not believe his eyes. Thence we went over to an island where stood their badly-made bark wigwams.[2] This island is covered with oaks, pines, and elms, and is not liable to be flooded as are the other islands in the lake.

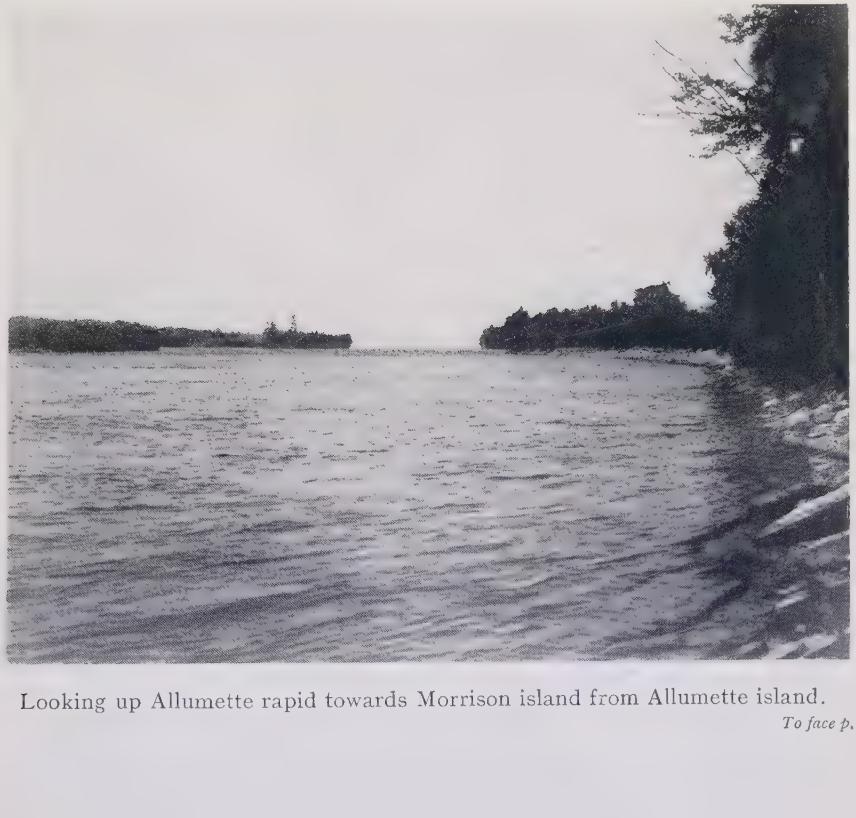
This island is strongly situated ; for at its two ends and where the river enters the lake are troublesome rapids, whose rugged character makes it strong. The Indians have made their encampment here in order to escape the incursions of

---

[1] On Lower Allumette lake, not far from Perretton.

[2] Morrison or Hawley island, between Upper and Lower Allumette lakes, about three-quarters of a mile long, and the same in width. It is protected on the north by Allumette rapids and on the south by those called Lost Chenail. The island, which comprises 400 acres, rises to sixty feet in height. See Plates XIII and XIV, pp. 278 and 280.

Allumette rapid as seen from the north side of Morrison island.



Looking up Allumette rapid towards Morrison island from Allumette island.

To face p. 278.

est par les 47.[1] degrés de latitude, comme est le lac, qui a 20. lieuës de long, & 3. ou 4. de large,[2] abondant en poisson, mais la chasse n'y est pas beaucoup bonne.

Ainsi comme ie visitois l'isle i'apperçeus leurs cimetieres, où ie fus raui en admiration, voyant des sepulchres de forme semblable aux chasses, fais de pieces de bois, croisees par en haut & fichees en terre, à la distance de 3. pieds ou enuiron : sur les croisees en haut ils y mettent vne grosse piece de bois, & au deuāt vne autre tout debout, dans laquelle est graué grossierement (comme il est bien croyable) la figure de celuy ou celle qui y est enterré. Si c'est vn homme ils y mettent vne rondache, vne espee amanchee à leur mode, vne masse, vn arc & des flesches ; S'il est Capitaine, il aura vn panache sur la teste, & quelque autre matachia [3] ou enjoliueure ; si p. 31. vn enfant, ils luy baillent vn arc & vne flesche ; si vne femme, ou fille, vne chaudiere, vn pot de terre, vne cueillier de bois

---

their enemies. The island is in latitude 47°,[1] as is also the lake, which is twenty leagues long and three or four wide.[2] It abounds in fish, but the hunting is not very good.

Now, as I looked about the island, I noticed their cemeteries, and was filled with wonder at the sight of the tombs, in the form of shrines, made of pieces of wood, crossed at the top, and fixed upright in the ground three feet apart or thereabouts. Above the cross-pieces they place a large piece of wood, and in front another standing upright, on which is carved rudely (as one might expect) the face of him or her who is there buried. If it is a man they put up a shield, a sword with a handle such as they use, a club, a bow and arrows ; if it is a chief, he will have a bunch of feathers [3] on his head and some other ornament or embellishment ; if a child, they give him a bow and arrow ; if a woman or girl,

---

[1] Morrison island stands in 45° 48′ ; its sides are far higher than those of the other islands. See Plate XIV, p. 280.

[2] Lower Allumette lake is about twelve miles long.

[3] See Vol. I, 108.

& vn auiron ; Tout le tombeau a de longueur 6. ou 7. pieds pour le plus grand, & de l'argeur 4. les autres moings. Ils sont peints de iaune & rouge, auec plusieurs ouurages aussi delicats que la sculpture. Le mort est enseueli dās sa robe de castor ou d'autres peaux, desquelles il se seruoit en sa vie, & luy mettent toutes ses richesses aupres de luy, cōme haches, couteaux, chaudieres & aleines,[1] affin que ces choses luy seruent au pays où il va : car ils croyent l'immortalité de l'ame, comme i'ay dict autre part.[2] Ces sepulchres graués ne se font qu'aux guerriers, car aux autres ils n'y mettent non plus qu'ils font aux femmes, comme gens inutiles, aussi s'en retrouue il peu entr'eux.

Apres auoir consideré la pauureté de ceste terre, ie leur demanday cōment ils s'amusoient à cultiuer vn si mauuais païs, veu qu'il y en auoit de beaucoup meilleur qu'ils laissoyent desert & abandonné, comme le Saut S. Louys.[3] Ils me

a kettle, an earthen pot, a wooden spoon, and a paddle. The largest tomb is six or seven feet long and four wide ; the others smaller. They are painted yellow and red, with various decorations as fine as the carving. The dead man is buried in his beaver or other skin, whereof he made use in his life ; and they place beside him all his valuables such as axes, knives, kettles and awls,[1] so that these things may be of use to him in the land whither he goes ; for they believe in the immortality of the soul as I have stated elsewhere.[2] These carved tombs are only made for warriors ; for other men they put no more on the tombs than for women, as being useless people. Hence but few of these tombs are found amongst them.

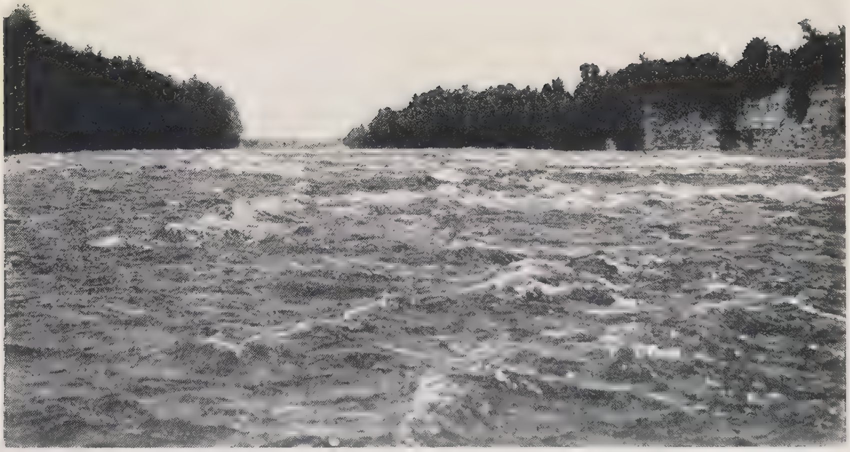
Having noted the poorness of the soil, I asked them how they could waste their time in cultivating such a poor region, seeing there was much better land which they left untilled and abandoned, as at the St. Louis rapids.[3] They replied

---

[1] Mr. J. L. Morris of Pembroke has a collection of axes, flints, awls, etc., found on Morrison island.

[2] See Vol. I, 120.

[3] The Lachine rapids.



Looking across Lost Chenail rapid towards the high south shore of Morrison island.

Champlain's landing-place at the eastern end of Morrison island.

To face p. 280.

respondirent qu'ils en estoient contraints, pour se mettre en seureté, & que l'aspreté des lieux leur seruoit de bouleuart cōtre leurs ennemis : Mais que si ie voulois faire vne habitation de François au Saut S. Louys, cōme i'auois promis, p. 32. qu'ils quiteroyent leur demeure pour se venir loger pres de nous, estans asseurés que leurs ennemis ne leur feroyēt point de mal pendāt que nous serions auec eux. Ie leur dis que ceste annee nous ferions les preparatifs de bois & pierres pour l'annee suiuante faire vn fort, & labourer ceste terre : Ce qu'ayant entendu ils firent vn grand cry en signe d'applaudissement. Ces propos finis, ie priay tous les Chefs & principaux d'entreux, de se trouuer le lendemain en la grand terre, en la cabane de Tessoüat, lequel me vouloit faire Tabagie,[1] & que là ie leur dirois mes intentions, ce qu'ils me promirent ; & deslors enuoyerent conuier leurs voisins pour si[a] trouuer.

[a] Lire *s'y*.

---

that they were forced to do so, in order to be safe, and that the roughness of the region served as a bulwark against their enemies ; but that if I would make a settlement of Frenchmen at the St. Louis rapids as I had promised, they would leave their abode to come and live near us, feeling assured that their enemies would do them no harm whilst we were with them. I told them that this year we should prepare wood and stone in order next year to build a fort and plough the land. When they heard this they gave a great shout in sign of approval. At the end of this conference I invited all the chiefs and head-men among them to meet me on the following day on the mainland at the wigwam of Tessoüat, who was going to give a feast[1] in my honour, and said that there I should announce to them my intentions. They promised they would come, and immediately sent an invitation to their neighbours to be present.

[1] See Vol. I, 99, note 2.

Le lendemain tous les conuiés vindrent auec chacun son escuelle de bois, & sa cueillier, lesquels sans ordre, ny ceremonie s'assirent contre terre dans la cabane de Tessoüat, qui leur distribuast vne maniere de boüillie, faite de Maïs, escrasé entre deux pierres, auec de la chair & du poisson, coupés par petits morceaux, le tout cuit ensemble sans sel. Ils auoyent aussi de la chair rostie sur les charbõs, & du poisson boüilli à part, qu'il distribua aussi. Et pour mon regard, d'autant que ie ne voulois point de leur boüillie, à cause qu'ils cuisinent fort salement, ie leur demãday du poisson & de la chair, pour l'accommoder à ma mode ; ils p. 33. m'en donnerent. Pour le boire nous auions de belle eau claire. Tessoüat qui faisoit la Tabagie nous entretenoit sans manger suiuant leur coustume.

La Tabagie faite, les ieunes hommes qui n'assistent pas aux harangues & cõseils, & qui aux Tabagies demeurẽt à la porte des cabanes, sortirent, & puis chacun de ceux qui

---

On the following day all the guests came, each with his wooden bowl and spoon, and sat down on the ground in Tessoüat's wigwam without observing any rank or ceremony. He served out to them a sort of hasty pudding, made of maize crushed between two stones, mixed with meat and fish, cut into little pieces, and all cooked together without salt. There was also meat roasted on coals and boiled fish separately, which he also distributed. As for myself, since I wished none of their hasty pudding, because they are very dirty in their cooking, I asked them for some fish and meat to prepare in my own way, and they gave me some. For drink we had fine clear water. Tessoüat, who gave the banquet, conversed with us without eating himself, as is their custom.

When the banquet was over, the young men, who are not present at the speeches and council-meetings, and who during banquets remain at the doors of the wigwams, left.

estoient demeurés commença à garnir son petunoir, & m'en presenterent les vns & les autres, & employasmes vne grande demie heure à cet exercice, sans dire vn seul mot, selon leur coustume.

Apres auoir parmi vn si long silence amplement petuné, ie leur fis entendre par mō Truchement que le subiect de mon voyage n'estoit autre que pour les asseurer de mon affection, & du desir que i'auois de les assister en leurs guerres, comme i'auois auparauant faict. Que ce qui m'auoit empesché l'annee derniere de venir, ainsi que ie leur auois promis, estoit que le Roy m'auoit occuppé en d'autres guerres, mais que maintenant il m'auoit commandé de les visiter, & les asseurer de ces choses, & que pour cet effect i'auois nombre d'hommes au Saut S. Louys,[1] & que ie m'estois venu promener p. 34. en leur païs pour recognoistre la fertilité de la terre, les lacs, riuieres, & mer qu'ils m'auoyent dict estre en leur pays : & que ie desirois voir vne nation distant de 6. iournees d'eux,

Then each of those who had stayed began to fill his pipe, and several offered me theirs, and we spent a full half-hour at this ceremony, without uttering a word, as is their custom.

After having smoked plentifully during such a long silence, I explained to them through my interpreter, that the object of my journey was none other than to assure them of my affection, and of my desire to aid them in their wars, as I had done previously : that what had hindered me from coming last year as I had promised, was that the king had employed me in other wars, but that he had now commanded me to visit them, and to reassure them regarding these things, and that for this purpose I had a number of men at the St. Louis rapids.[1] I told them I had come on a visit to their country to note the fertility of the soil, the lakes, rivers and sea, which they had told me were in their country, and that I desired to visit a nation, distant six

---

[1] The Lachine rapids.

nommee Nebicerini,[1] pour les conuier aussi à la guerre ; & pource ie les priay de me donner 4. Canots, auec huict sauuages pour me conduire esdictes terres. Et d'autant que les Algoumequins ne sont pas grands amis des Nebicerini, ils sembloyent m'escouter auec plus grande attention.

Mon discours acheué, ils commencerent derechef à petuner, & à deuiser tout bas ensemble, touchant mes propositions : puis Tessoüat pour tous prit la parole & dict, Qu'ils m'auoiēt tousiours recognu plus affectionné en leur endroit, qu'aucū autre François qu'ils eussent veu ; que les preuues qu'ils en auoient euës le passé, leur facilitoyent la creance pour l'aduenir ; de plus, que ie monstrois estre bien leur amy, en ce que i'auois passé tant de hazards pour les venir voir, & pour les conuier à la guerre, & que toutes ces choses les obligeoyent à me vouloir du bien, comme

days' march from them, called the Nebicerini,[1] in order to invite them also to go on the war-path, and that for this purpose I asked them to give me four canoes, with eight Indians to take me to that region. And since the Algonquins are not great friends of the Nebicerini, they seemed to listen to me with the greater attention.

My speech being finished, they began again to smoke and to converse together quietly about my proposals. Then Tessoüat, on behalf of all, began to speak, saying that they had always realized that I was more kindly disposed towards them than any other Frenchman they had seen, and that the proofs of it which they had experienced in the past, made it the more easy for them to believe in it for the future; that I had shown that I was indeed their friend by running so many risks to come and visit them, and to invite them to go on the war-path; and that all this forced them to bear as much good will towards me as to their own children.

---

[1] See p. 260, note 4.

à leurs enfans propres ; Que toutesfois l'annee derniere ie leur auois manqué de promesse, & que 2000. sauuages estoient venus au Saut en intention de me trouuer, pour aller à la guerre, & me faire des presens, & ne m'ayant trouué, furent fort attristez, croyant que ie fusse mort, comme quelques p. 35. vns leur auoyent dict : aussi que les François qui estoient au Saut ne les voulurent assister à leurs guerres, & qu'ils furent mal traictés par aucuns, de sorte qu'ils auoyent resolu entr'eux de ne plus venir au Saut, & que cela les auoit occasionnés (n'esperans plus me voir) d'aller à la guerre seuls, & de fait que 1200. des leur[s] y estoyent allés. Et d'autant que la pluspart des guerriers estoyent absens, ils me prioient de remettre la partie à l'annee suiuante, & qu'ils feroient sçauoir cela à tous ceux de la contree. Pour ce qui estoit des 4. Canots que ie demandois, ils me les accorderent, mais auec grandes difficultés, me disans qu'il leur desplaisoit fort de telle entreprise, pour les peines que i'y endurerois ; que ces

---

Nevertheless that last year I had failed to keep my promise and that two thousand Indians had come to the Rapids in the hope of finding me, in order to go on the war-path and to make me gifts ; that on not finding me they were much disappointed, thinking I was dead, as some had told them ; moreover, that the French who were at the Rapids were unwilling to assist them in their wars, and some had even treated them badly, so that they had resolved among themselves not to come to the Rapids any more. This had forced them, since they did not expect to see me again, to go on the war-path alone, and in fact twelve hundred of their men had done so. And since the greater part of their warriors were absent, they requested me to postpone the project until the following year, when they would make it known to all the tribes of that region. As for the four canoes for which I asked, they granted them to me, but with much hesitation, declaring that they viewed such an enterprise with considerable disfavour, on account of the toils

peuples estoiēt sorciers, & qu'ils auoiēt faict mourir beaucoup de leurs gens par sort & empoisonnemēs, & que pour cela ils n'estoient amis : au surplus que pour la guerre ie n'auois affaire d[']eux, d'autant qu'ils estoyent de petit cœur, me voulans destourner auec plusieurs autres propos sur ce subiect.

Moy d'autrepart qui n'auois autre desir que de voir ces peuples, & faire amitié auec eux, pour voir la mer du Nord, facilitois leurs difficultez, leur disant, qu'il n'y auoit pas loing iusques en leurs païs [1] ; que pour les mauuais passages, ils ne pouuoyent estre plus fascheux que ceux que i'auois p. 36. passé par cy deuant ; & pour le regard de leurs sortileges qu'ils n'auroient aucune puissance de me faire tort, & que mon Dieu m'en preserueroit ; que ie cognoissois aussi leurs herbes, & par ainsi ie me garderois d'en manger ; que ie les voulois rendre ensemble bons amis, & leur ferois des presens pour cet effect, m'asseurant qu'ils feroient quelque

---

I should undergo ; that these tribes were sorcerers and had killed many of Tessoüat's people by magic and poisoning, and consequently were not considered friendly ; moreover as regards war, I had no need of them, for they had small courage. With this and various other arguments they tried to dissuade me from my project.

I, on the other hand, whose one desire was to see these tribes, and to make friends with them, in order to view the northern sea, made light of their difficulties, saying that it was not far to that country [1]; that as for the bad portages, these could not be worse than those we had already passed, and that with respect to their spells, these would have no power to hurt me ; for my God would preserve me from them ; that I was also acquainted with their herbs, and should therefore take good care not to eat them ; that I wished to make them all good friends and would make presents to the other tribes for that purpose, feeling sure that they

[1] Of the Nebicerini, *cf:* p. 260.

chose pour moy. Auec ces raisons ils m'accorderēt, comme i'ay dict, ces 4. Canots, dequoy ie fus fort ioyeux, oubliant toutes les peines passées, sur l'esperance que i'auois de voir ceste mer tant desiree.

Pour passer le reste du iour, ie me fus promener par leurs iardins, qui n'estoiēt rēplis que de quelques citroüilles, phasioles, & de nos pois, qu'ils commencent à cultiuer, où Thomas mon truchement, qui entend fort bien la langue, me vint trouuer, pour m'aduertir que ces sauuages, apres que ie les eus quittés, auoient songé que si i'entreprenois ce voyage, que ie mourrois, & eux aussi, & qu'ils ne me pouuoient bailler ces Canots promis, d'autant qu'il n'y auoit aucun d'entreux qui me voulut conduire ; mais que ie remisse ce voyage à l'annee prochaine, & qu'ils m'y meneroient en bon equippage, pour se deffendre d'iceux, s'il[s] leur vouloient mal faire, pource qu'ils sont mauuais.

---

would do something for me. In response to these reasons they granted me the four canoes, as I have stated, whereat I was much pleased, and forgot all my past troubles in the hope of seeing that much-desired sea.

To while away the rest of the day I went for a walk in their gardens, which had in them only some pumpkins, beans, and peas like ours, which they are beginning to grow. Here Thomas my interpreter, who understands their language very well, came to tell me that the Indians, after I had left them, had imagined that if I should undertake this journey, I should die, and they as well, and that they could not give me the canoes as they had promised, inasmuch as no one among them was willing to be my guide. But they thought that I should postpone the journey till the following year, when they would take me along with them, with a good escort to protect ourselves against these tribes, who are wicked people, in case they wished to do us harm.

Ceste nouuelle m'affligea fort, & soudain m'ē allay les p. 37. trouuer, & leur dis, que ie les auois iusques à ce iour estimés hommes, & veritables, & que maintenant ils se monstroyent enfans, & mēsongers, & que s'ils ne vouloiēt effectuer leurs promesses, ils ne me feroient paroistre leur amitié ; toutesfois que s'ils se sentoient incommodés de 4. Canots, qu'ils ne m'en baillassent que 2. & 4. sauuages seulement.

Ils me representerent derechef la difficulté des passages, le nombre des Sauts, la meschanceté de ces peuples, & que s'estoit pour crainte qu'ils auoyent de me perdre qu'ils me faisoient ce refus.

Ie leur fis response, que i'estois fasché de ce qu'ils se monstroient si peu mes amis, & que ie ne l'eusse iamais creu ; que i'auois vn garçon, (leur monstrant mon imposteur) qui auoit esté dās leur pays, & n'auoit recognu toutes les difficultés qu'ils faisoient, ny trouué ces peuples si mauuais qu'ils disoient. Alors ils commencerent à le regarder, &

This news grieved me greatly, and at once I went off to find them, and told them that till then I had held them to be men and true to their word ; but that now they were showing themselves children and liars, and that if they did not wish to keep their promises, they should not pretend to be my friends ; however, if they felt inconvenienced by giving me four canoes, they could give me but two, and only four Indians.

They again represented to me the difficulties of the portages, the number of rapids, the wickedness of those tribes, and that it was on account of the fear they entertained of my destruction that they were refusing my request.

I replied to them that I was sorry they showed themselves so little my friends, and that I should never have believed it ; that I had a youth (pointing to my impostor) who had been in that country and had not noticed all the difficulties they represented, nor found those tribes as bad as they were saying. They then began to eye him, and

specialement Tessoüat vieux Capitaine, auec lequel il auoit hyuerné, & l'appelant par son nom, luy dict en son langage, Nicolas est il vray que tu as dit auoir esté aux Nebicerini ? Il fut long temps sans parler, puis il leur dict en leur langue, qu'il parle aucunemēt, Ouy i'y ay esté. Aussi tost ils le regarderent de trauers, & se iettans sur luy, comme s'ils p. 38. l'eussent voulu manger ou deschirer, firent de grands cris, & Tessoüat luy dict, tu es vn asseuré menteur, tu sçais bien que tous les soirs tu couchois à mes costés auec mes enfans, & tous les matins tu t'y leuois ; si tu as esté vers ces peuples, ça esté en dormant ; comment as tu esté si impudent d'auoir donné à entendre à ton chef des mēsonges, & si meschant de vouloir hazarder sa vie parmi tant de dangers ? tu es vn homme perdu, il te deuroit faire mourir plus cruellement que nous ne faisons nos ennemis : ie ne m'estonnois pas s'il nous importunoit tant sur l'asseurance de tes paroles.

---

particularly Tessoüat, the old chief, with whom he had wintered, who calling him by name, said to him in his language, ‘Nicholas, is it true that you have said you had been in the Nebicerini country ?’ For a long time he remained silent ; then he said to them in their language which he speaks a little, ‘Yes, I have been there.’ Immediately they regarded him with anger, and rushed upon him, as if they would have eaten him or torn him asunder, shouting very loudly. And Tessoüat said to him, ‘You are a brazen liar ; you know well that every night you slept alongside of me and my children, and rose every morning at that place. If you visited those tribes, it was in your sleep. Why have you been so shamefaced as to tell lies to your chief, and so wicked as to wish to jeopardize his life amid so many dangers ? You are a miserable wretch whom he ought to put to death more cruelly than we do our enemies. I am not surprised that he importuned us so much, having confidence in what

A l'heure[a] ie luy dis qu'il eust à respondre à ces peuples; & puis qu'il auoit esté en ces terres qu'il en donnast des enseignemens pour me le faire croire, & me tirer de la peine où il m'auoit mis ; mais il demeura muet & tout esperdu.

A l'heure[a] ie le tiray à l'escart des sauuages, & le coniuray de me declarer la verité du faict : que s'il auoit veu ceste mer, que ie luy ferois donner la recompense que ie luy auois promise, & s'il ne l'auoit veuë, qu'il eut à me le dire sans me donner d'auantage de peine : Derechef auec iuremens il afferma tout ce qu'il auoit par cy deuant dict, & qu'il me le feroit voir, si ces sauuages vouloient bailler des Canots.

Sur ces discours Thomas me vint aduertir que les sauuages p. 39. de l'isle[1] enuoyoient secrettement vn Canot aux Nebicerini pour les aduertir de mō arriuee. Et lors pour me seruir de l'occasion, ie fus trouuer lesdits sauuages, pour leur dire que i'auois songé ceste nuict qu'ils vouloyent enuoyer vn

[a] *A l'heure* paraît avoir ici sa vieille signification = alors.

---

you told him.' I at once said to him that he would have to make a reply to these people, and that since he had been in those parts, he must give evidence of this to convince me, and to get me out of the difficulty in which he had placed me ; but he remained silent and quite abashed.

I immediately drew him aside from the Indians, and begged him earnestly to tell me the truth ; and said that if he had seen this sea, I would have the promised reward given to him, and that if he had not seen it, he must tell me so, without giving me any more worry. Once more with oaths he affirmed all that he had before asserted, and said he would show me this if these Indians would give us the canoes.

After this talk Thomas came and told me that the Indians of the island[1] were secretly sending a canoe to the Nebicerini to warn them of my arrival. Thereupon, in order to profit by this opportunity, I went to these Indians to tell them that that night I had dreamed that they were going to send

[1] Morrison island.

Canot aux Nebicerini sans m'en aduertir, dequoy i'estois estōné, veu qu'ils sçauoyent que i'auois volonté d'y aller : à quoy ils me firent response, disans, que ie les offençois fort, en ce que ie me fiois plus à vn menteur, qui me vouloit faire mourir, qu'à tant de braues Capitaines qui estoiēt mes amys, & qui auoyent ma vie chere : ie leur repliquay, que mon hōme (parlant de nostre imposteur) auoit esté en ceste contree auec vn des parens de Tessoüat, & auoit veu la Mer, le bris & fracas d'vn vaisseau Anglois, ensēble 80. testes que les sauuages auoient, & vn ieune garçon Anglois qu'ils tenoient prisonnier, dequoy[a] ils me vouloient faire present.

Ils s'escrierent plus que deuant, entendant parler de la Mer, des vaisseaux, des testes des Anglois, & du prisonnier, qu'il estoit vn menteur, & ainsi le nommerent-ils depuis, cōme la plus grande iniure qu'ils luy eussent peu faire, disans tous ensemble qu'il le falloit faire mourir, ou qu'il dist celuy

[a] À remarquer cet emploi de *quoy*.

---

a canoe to the Nebicerini without letting me know, at which I was astonished, seeing that they knew that I wished to go there. To this they replied that I did them great wrong, in that I had more confidence in a liar, who wanted to kill me, than in so many honest chiefs, who were my friends, and held my life dear. I answered them that my man (speaking of our impostor) had been in that region with one of Tessoüat's relations and had seen the sea, and the broken fragments of an English ship, together with eighty scalps in the possession of the Indians, and an English youth whom they kept prisoner and these they wished to present to me.

On hearing this mention of the sea, the ships, the English scalps and the prisoner, they exclaimed more loudly than before that he was a liar, and such they have since called him as the greatest insult they could offer to him. With one voice they declared that he should be put to death, or that

auec lequel il y auoit esté, & qu'il declarast les lacs, riuieres p. 40. & chemins par lesquels il auoit passé ; à quoy il fit response asseurément qu'il auoit oublié le nom du sauuage, combien qu'il[a] me l'eust nommé plus de vingt fois, & mesme le iour de deuant. Pour les particularitez du païs, il les auoit descriptes dās vn papier qu'il m'auoit baillé. Alors ie presētay la carte, & la fis interpreter aux sauuages, qui l'interrogerent sur icelle, à quoy il ne fit response, ains[b] par son morne silence manifesta sa meschanceté.

Mon esprit vogant en incertitude, ie me retiray à part, & me representay les particularités du voyage des Anglois cy deuant dictes, & les discours de nostre menteur estre assés conformes, aussi qu'il y auoit peu d'apparence que ce garçon eust inuēté tout cela, & qu'il n'eust voulu entreprēdre le voyage, mais qu'il estoit plus croyable qu'il auoit veu ces choses, & que son ignorance ne luy permettoit de respondre

[a] *Combien que* = bien que.

[b] *Ains* = mais (au contraire).

---

he should name the person with whom he had gone there, and should state the lakes, rivers and trails by which he had passed. To this he replied without flinching that he had forgotten the name of this Indian, although he had mentioned his name to me more than twenty times, and even on the previous day. As for the particulars of the country, he had described them in a paper which he had given to me. Then I showed his map and had it interpreted to the Indians who questioned him regarding it. To this he made no reply, but by his sullen silence manifested his wickedness.

My mind being in doubt, I withdrew by myself and went over the particulars of the expedition of the English, already given, and found our impostor's statements to be quite in harmony with these. Moreover there was little likelihood of this youth having invented all this and of his not having made the journey. It was more likely that he had seen these things but that his ignorance did not allow him to reply

aux interrogations des sauuages : ioint aussi que si la relation des Anglois est veritable, il faut que la mer du Nord ne soit pas esloignee de ces terres de plus de 100. lieuës de latitude, car i'estois sous la hauteur de 47. degrés de latitude, & 296. de longitude [1] : mais il se peut faire que la difficulté de passer les Sauts, l'aspreté des mōtagnes remplies de neiges, p. 41. soit cause que ces peuples n'ont aucune cognoissance de ceste mer ; bien m'ont-ils tousiours dict, que du païs des Ochataiguins il n'y a que 35. ou 40. iournees iusques à la mer qu'ils voyent en 3. endroits : ce qu'ils m'ont encores asseuré ceste annee : mais aucun ne m'a parlé de ceste mer du Nord, que ce menteur, qui m'auoit fort resiouy à cause de la briefueté du chemin.

Or comme ce Canot s'apprestoit, ie le fis appeler deuant ses compagnons ; & en luy representant tout ce qui s'estoit

---

to the questions of the Indians. Furthermore, if the account of the English is true, this northern sea cannot be farther off than one hundred leagues of latitude ; for I was in latitude 47°, and in longitude 296°,[1] but it may be that the difficulty of passing the rapids, and the ruggedness of the mountains covered with snow, have prevented these tribes from having knowledge of this sea. Indeed, they have always told me that it is only thirty-five or forty days' journey from the country of the Ochataiguins to the ocean, which is in sight at three places. This they assured me again this year, but no one had spoken to me of this northern sea, save this impostor, who had greatly cheered me on account of the short distance to it.

Now while this canoe was being got ready, I sent for him to come before his companions ; and informing him of all that had taken place, I told him that the time for dissimu-

[1] The real latitude was 45° 46′ 30″, but Champlain having lost his astrolabe could not take any observations. The first meridian then started at Ferro, which would make the longitude about 297° 30′.

passé, ie luy dis qu'il n'estoit plus question de dissimuler, & qu'il falloit dire s'il auoit veu les choses dictes, ou non ; que ie voulois prēdre la commodité qui se presentoit ; que i'auois oublié tout ce qui s'estoit passé : Mais que si ie passois plus outre, ie le ferois pendre & estrangler sans luy faire autre merci. Aprés auoir songé à luy, il se ietta à genoux & me demanda pardon, disant, que tout ce qu'il auoit dict, tant en France qu'en ce païs, touchāt ceste mer, estoit faux ; qu'il ne l'auoit iamais veuë, & qu'il n'auoit pas esté plus auant que le village de Tessoüat ; qu'il auoit dict ces choses pour retourner en Canada. Ainsi transporté de cholere ie le fis retirer, ne le pouuant plus endurer deuant moy, donnant charge à Thomas de s'enquerir de tout particulierement ; auquel il poursuiuit de dire qu'il ne croyoit pas que ie deusse entreprendre le voyage, à cause des dangers, croyant p. 42. que quelque difficulté se pourroit presenter qui m'empescheroit de passer, comme celle de ces sauuages, qui ne

---

lation was past, and that he must tell me whether or not he had seen the things he had related ; I said that I wished to seize the opportunity that presented itself ; that I had forgotten all that had happened, but that if I had to proceed farther, I should have him hanged and strangled without any mercy. After some meditation he fell upon his knees and asked me for pardon, declaring that all he had stated regarding this sea both in France and in this country was false ; that he had never seen it, and had never been farther than Tessoüat's village ; and that he had related these things in order to return to Canada. In a transport of rage at this I had him removed, being no longer able to endure his presence, and I gave Thomas orders to inquire carefully into the whole affair. To Thomas he persisted in saying that he had had no idea I would undertake this expedition, on account of its dangers, hoping some difficulty might arise, which would prevent me from going farther, such as this with these

me vouloient bailler des Canots : ainsi que l'on remettroit le voyage à vne autre annee, & qu'estant en France, il auroit recompense pour sa descouuerture : & que si ie le voulois laisser en ce pays, qu'il yroit tant qu'il la trouueroit, quād il y deuroit mourir. Ce sont ses paroles, qui me furent rapportees par Thomas, & ne me contenterent pas beaucoup, estant esmerueillé de l'effronterie & meschanceté de ce menteur : & ne me puis imaginer comment il auoit forgé ceste imposture, sinon qu'il eust ouy parler du voyage des Anglois cy mentionné[1] ; & que sur l'esperance d'auoir quelque recompense, comme il a dict, il ait eu la temerité de mettre cela en auant.

Peu de temps apres ie fus aduertir les sauuages, à mon grand regret, de la malice de ce menteur, & qu'il m'auoit confessé la verité, dequoy ils furent ioyeux, me reprochant

---

Indians, who had refused to give me canoes. In this way he hoped the journey would be put off for another year, while he on reaching France would secure a reward for his discovery. Moreover that if I would leave him in this country he would go on until he had found this sea, even should he die in the attempt. These are his words as reported to me by Thomas, and they did not give me much satisfaction; for I was astonished at the effrontery and wickedness of this liar. And I cannot imagine how he invented this falsehood, except that he had heard of the expedition of the English, mentioned above,[1] and in the hope of having some reward, as he said, had been bold enough to put forward this story.

Shortly afterwards and very sorrowfully I went and informed the Indians of the deceit of this liar, telling them that he had confessed the truth to me. At this they were much pleased, but reproached me with having had so little

[1] See p. 256 and Plate X, p. 257.

le peu de confiance que i'auois en eux, qui estoyent Capitaines, mes amis, & qui parloiēt tousiours verité, & qu'il falloit faire mourir ce menteur qui estoit grandemēt malitieux, me disant, Ne vois-tu pas qu'il t'a voulu faire mourir ; donne le nous, & nous te promettons qu'il ne mentira plus. Et p. 43. à cause qu'ils estoient tous apres luy crians, & leurs enfans encores plus, ie leur deffendis de luy faire aucun mal, & aussi d'empescher leurs enfans de ce faire, d'autant que ie le voulois remener au Saut pour le faire voir à ces Messieurs, ausquels il deuoit porter de l'eauë salee ; & qu'estant là i'aduiserois à ce qu'on en feroit.

Mon voyage estant acheué par ceste voye, & sans aucune esperance de voir la mer de ce costé là, sinon par coniecture, le regret de n'auoir mieux employé le temps m'est demeuré, auec les peines & trauaux qu'il m'a fallu neantmoins tolerer patiemment. Si ie me fusse transporté d'vn autre costé,

---

confidence in them, who were chiefs, my friends, and men who always spoke the truth. 'This very wicked liar must die,' said they ; 'do you not see that he wanted to kill you ? Give him to us, and we promise you he will tell no more lies.' And because they were all howling to get at him, and their children still more loudly, I forbade them to do him any harm, and made them also keep their children from doing so, inasmuch as I wished to bring him back to the Rapids to show him to those gentlemen to whom he was to bring salt water ; and I said that when I got there, I should consider what was to be done with him.

My journey in this direction having ended, and without any hope of seeing the sea in those parts except by surmise, there remained to me nothing but the regret of not having made better use of my time, as also the troubles and fatigues which nevertheless I had to suffer patiently. Had I proceeded in a different direction, relying upon the reports of

suiuant la relation des sauuages, i'eusse esbauché vne affaire qu'il faut remettre à vne autre fois. N'ayant pour l'heure autre desir que de m'ē reuenir, ie cōuiay les sauuages de venir au Saut S. Louys,[1] où il y auoit quatre vaisseaux fournis de toutes sortes de marchādises, & où ils receuroiēt bon traitemēt ; ce qu'ils firent scauoir à tous leurs voisins. Et auant que partir, ie fis vne croix de cedre blāc, laquelle ie plantay sur le bort du lac [2] en vn lieu eminent, auec les armes de France, & priay les sauuages la vouloir conseruer, comme aussi celles qu'ils trouueroient du long des chemins p. 44. où nous auions passé [3]; & que s'ils les rompoiēt, que mal leur arriueroit ; & les conseruant, ils ne seroient assaillis de leurs ennemis. Ils me promirent ainsi le faire, & que ie les retrouuerois quand ie retournerois vers eux.

---

the Indians, I should then have made a beginning of an affair which must now be postponed until another time. Having for the nonce no other desire than to return, I invited the Indians to come to the St. Louis rapids [1] where lay four ships loaded with all sorts of merchandise, and where they would receive good treatment. This invitation they made known to all their neighbours. And before I left, I built a cross of white cedar, bearing the arms of France, which I set up in a prominent place on the shore of the lake,[2] and begged the Indians to be kind enough to preserve it, as well as those they would find along the trails by which we had come.[3] I said to them that if they broke these down, harm would befall them, but that if they preserved them, they would not be attacked by their enemies. They promised me to do this, and that I should find these again when I came back to their country.

---

[1] The Lachine rapids.

[2] Lower Allumette lake. See Champlain's small map, Plate I, p. 1, where he gives a cross evidently intended for this.

[3] See pp. 272 *et seq. supra*.

Nostre retour au Saut. Fausse alarme. Ceremonie du Saut de la chaudiere. Confession de nostre menteur deuant tous les chefs. Et nostre retour en France.

CHAP. V.

LE 10. Iuin ie prins congé de Tessoüat, bon vieux Capitaine, & luy fis quelques presens, & luy promis, si Dieu me preseruoit en santé, de venir l'annee prochaine, en equippage pour aller à la guerre ; & luy me promit d'assembler grand peuple pour ce temps là, disant, que ie ne verrois que sauuages & armes, qui me dōneroyent contentement ; & me bailla son fils pour me faire compagnie. Ainsi nous partismes auec 40. Canots, & passasmes par la riuiere que nous auions laissee, qui court au Nord,[1] où nous mismes pied à terre pour trauerser des lacs.[2] En chemin nous rēcontrasmes 9. grands Canots de Ouescharini,[3]

Our return to the Rapids. False alarm. Ceremony at the Chaudière falls. Our impostor's confession before all the leaders. And our return to France.

CHAPTER V

ON June 10 I took leave of Tessoüat, the kind old chief, and made him some presents, promising him, if God kept me in good health, to come again in the following year, prepared to go on the war-path. He promised me to collect great numbers for that occasion, declaring that I should see nothing but Indians and arms which would satisfy me. Also he let me have his son to accompany me. So we set off in forty canoes and passed by way of the river we had left, which flows north,[1] where we landed in order to cross some lakes.[2] On the way down we met with nine large canoes of Ouescharini,[3] having in them forty strong and

[1] The Ottawa. *Cf.* p. 273 *supra*.

[2] They evidently came back by the Ottawa past Coulonge lake and Calumet island. As Laverdière pointed out, Champlain means 'land and make portage in order afterwards to cross some lakes.'

[3] See p. 266, note 1.

auec 40. hōmes forts & puissants qui venoient aux nouuelles qu'ils auoient euës ; & d'autres que rencontrasmes aussi, p. 45. qui faisoient ensemble 60. Canots ; & 20. autres qui estoient partis deuant nous, ayans chacun assés de marchandises.

Nous passasmes 6. ou 7. Sauts depuis l'isle des Algoumequins[1] iusques au petit Saut,[2] païs fort desagreable. Ie recogneus bien que si nous fussions venus par là que nous eussiōs eu beaucoup plus de peine, & malaisémēt eussions nous passé : & ce n'estoit sans raison que les sauuages contestoient contre nostre mēteur, qui ne cerchoit qu'a me perdre.

Continuant nostre chemin 10. ou 12. lieuës au dessous l'isle des Algoumequins,[1] nous posasmes[a] dans vne isle fort agreable, remplie de vignes & noyers, où nous fismes pescherie

[a] *Cf.* plus haut, p. 271.

---

powerful men who were coming in response to the news they had received ; and we also met with others, which altogether made sixty canoes, and twenty more which had set out in advance of us, each canoe with a good deal of merchandise in it.

We passed six or seven rapids between the island of the Algonquins[1] and the Small rapid,[2] a most unpleasant country. I saw clearly that had we come up that way, we should have encountered many more difficulties, and should barely have got through ; and that it was not without reason that the Indians opposed our liar, whose one object was my destruction.

Continuing our journey, some ten or twelve leagues below the island of the Algonquins,[1] we rested on a very pleasant island, covered with vines and butternut trees,

[1] Morrison island. After leaving Lower Allumette lake the following rapids are met with : Paquette, Desjardins, Garvan, Mice, Muskrat, La Barrière, Long, Roche Fendue and Big and Little Sable. Then comes Gould's Landing, where Champlain had left the Ottawa. See Plate XI, p. 273.

[2] This was the Chenaux rapids mentioned under this name on p. 272.

de beau poisson. Sur la minuict arriua deux Canots qui venoient de la pesche plus loing, lesquels rapporterent auoir veu 4. Canots de leurs ennemis. Aussi tost on despescha 3. Canots pour les recognoistre, mais ils retournerēt sans auoir rien veu. En ceste asseurance chacun prit le repos, excepté les femmes qui se resolurēt de passer la nuict dans leurs Canots, ne se trouuans asseurees à terre. Vne heure auant le iour vn sauuage songeant que les ennemis le chargeoyent se leua en sursaut, & se prit à courir vers l'eau pour se sauuer, criant, On me tue. Ceux de sa bande s'esueillerent tous estourdis, & croyans estre poursuiuis de leurs ennemis se ietterent en l'eau, comme feit vn de nos p. 46. Frāçois, qui croyoit qu'on l'assommast. A ce grand bruit nous autres qui estions esloignés, fusmes aussi tost esueillés, & sans plus s'enquerir accourusmes vers eux : mais les voyans en l'eau errans çà & là, estions fort estonnés, ne les

---

where we caught some fine fish. About midnight arrived two canoes that had been fishing farther off, who reported that they had seen four enemy canoes. Immediately three canoes were sent to reconnoitre, but returned without having seen anything. Reassured by this, each of us slept, except the squaws who decided to pass the night in their canoes, not feeling safe on land. An hour before daybreak, an Indian, dreaming that the enemy were attacking him, started up, and in order to escape took to flight towards the water, screaming out 'They are killing me.' The rest of his party awoke quite bewildered, and thinking they were pursued by their enemies, jumped into the water, as did one of our Frenchmen, who thought he was being tomahawked. At this great noise, we, who were some distance off, were also at once aroused, and without further questions rushed towards them : but seeing them moving here and there in the water, were much astonished ; for we perceived no

voyans poursuiuis de leurs ennemis, ny en estat de se deffendre, quand cela eust esté, mais seulement de se perdre. Apres que i'eus enquis nostre François de la cause de ceste esmotion, il me dict qu'vn sauuage auoit songé, & luy auec les autres pour se sauuer, s'estoit ietté en l'eau, croyant auoir esté frappé. Ainsi ayant recognu ce que s'estoit, tout se passa en risee.

En continuant nostre chemin, nous paruinsmes au Saut de la chaudiere,[1] où les sauuages firent la ceremonie accoustumee, qui est telle. Apres auoir porté leurs Canots au bas du Saut, ils s'assemblēt en vn lieu, où vn d'entr'eux auec vn plat de bois va faire la queste, & chacū d'eux met dans ce plat vn morceau de petun ; la queste faicte, le plat est mis au milieu de la troupe, & tous dansent à l'entour, en chantant à leur mode ; puis vn des Capitaines faict vne harangue, remonstrant que dés long temps ils ont accoustumé

enemy in pursuit of them, nor indeed, had there been any, would they have been in a fit state to defend themselves, but would simply have perished. Having enquired of our Frenchman the cause of this excitement, he told me that an Indian had had a dream, and thinking he had been struck and in order to escape, had along with the rest jumped into the water. Having in this way realized what had happened, the whole thing passed off as a joke.

Continuing our journey, we arrived at the Chaudière falls,[1] where the natives celebrated their usual ceremony, which is as follows. Having carried their canoes to the foot of the fall, they assemble in one place, where one of them takes up a collection with a wooden plate into which each puts a piece of tobacco. After the collection, the plate is set down in the middle of the group and all dance about it, singing after their fashion. Then one of the chiefs makes a speech, pointing out that for years they have been

---

[1] See p. 268 *supra*.

de faire telle offrãde, & que par ce moyẽ ils sont garãtis de leurs ennemis, qu'autrement il leur arriueroit du malheur, ainsi que leur persuade le diable, & viuent en ceste superstition, comme en plusieurs autres, comme nous auons dict en d'autres lieux. Cela faict, le harangueur prent le plat, & va ietter le petun au milieu de la chaudiere, & font vn grand cry tous ensemble. Ces pauures gẽs sont si superstitieux, qu'ils ne croiroient pas faire bon voyage, s'ils n'auoiẽt faict ceste ceremonie en ce lieu, d'autant que leurs ennemis les attendent à ce passage, n'osans pas aller plus auant, à cause des mauuais chemins, & les surprennent là : ce qu'ils ont quelquesfois faict. p. 47.

Le lendemain nous arriuasmes à vne isle, qui est à l'entree du lac, distante du grand Saut S. Louys de 7. à 8. lieuës,[1] où reposans la nuict, nous eusmes vne autre alarme, les sauuages croyãs auoir veu des Canots de leurs ennemis : ce qui leur

---

accustomed to make such an offering, and that thereby they receive protection from their enemies ; that otherwise misfortune would happen to them, as the devil persuades them. They live in this superstition, and in many others, as we have stated elsewhere. When he has finished, the orator takes the plate and throws the tobacco into the middle of the boiling water, and all together utter a loud whoop. These poor people are so superstitious, that they would not think they could have a safe journey, unless they had performed this ceremony here, more particularly since their enemies, not daring to go farther on account of the bad trails, wait for them at this spot and surprise them, as they have sometimes done.

On the following day we arrived at an island at the entrance of the lake, distant seven or eight leagues from the great St. Louis rapids.[1] Passing the night here we had another alarm, the Indians believing they had seen some

[1] Probably Carillon island at the head of the lake of Two Mountains.

fit faire plusieurs grãds feux, que ie leur fis esteindre, leur remonstrant l'inconuenient qui en pouuoit arriuer, sçauoir, qu'au lieu de se cacher il se manifestoient.

Le 17. Iuin nous arriuasmes au Saut S. Louys[1] où ie trouuay l'Ange qui estoit venu au deuant de moy dans vn Canot, pour m'aduertir que le sieur de Maison-neufue de S. Maslo auoit apporté vn passeport de Monseigneur le Prince[2] pour trois vaisseaux. En attendant que ie l'eusse p. 48. veu, ie fis assembler tous les sauuages pour leur faire entendre que ie ne desirois pas qu'ils traictassent aucunes marchandises, que ie ne leur eusse permis : & que pour des viures ie leur en ferois bailler si tost que serions arriués ; ce qu'ils me promirent, disans, qu'ils estoient mes amis. Ainsi poursuiuant nostre chemin, nous arriuasmes aux barques, & fusmes salués de quelques canonades, dequoy quelques vns de nos sauuages estoient ioyeux, & d'autres

enemy canoes. This induced them to light several big fires, which I made them put out, showing them the harm which might arise from this, namely that instead of concealing themselves, they were revealing themselves.

On June 17 we arrived at the rapids of St. Louis,[1] where I found L'Ange, who had come to meet me in a canoe, to inform me that the Sieur de Maisonneuve of St. Malo had brought a passport from Monseigneur the Prince[2] for three ships. Until I had seen him, I called all the Indians together, to explain to them that I did not wish them to barter any goods, unless I gave them permission, and as for provisions, that I should have these given to them, as soon as we arrived. They promised to do what I asked, saying they were my friends. Thereupon, continuing our journey, we arrived at the pinnaces, and were saluted with several cannonades, whereat some of our Indians were delighted,

---

[1] The Lachine rapids.

[2] De Condé. See p. 245 *supra* and Plate IX, p. 239.

fort estonnés, n'ayans iamais ouy telle musique. Ayans mis pied à terre, Maison-neufue me vint trouuer auec le passeport de Monseigneur le Prince : & aussi tost que l'eus veu, ie le laissay iouïr, & les siens, du benefice d'iceluy, comme nous autres ; & fis dire aux sauuages qu'ils pouuoyent traicter le lendemain.

Ayant veu tous les Chefs, & deduit les particularités de mon voyage, & la malice de nostre menteur, dequoy ils furent fort estonnés, ie les priay de s'assembler, afin qu'en leur presence, des sauuages & de ses compagnons, il declarast sa meschanceté ; ce qu'ils firent volõtiers. Ainsi estans assemblés, ils le firent venir, & l'interrogerent, pourquoy il ne m'auoit monstré la mer du Nord, comme il m'auoit promis à son depart : Il leur fit respõse qu'il auoit promis vne chose impossible à luy, d'autant qu'il n'auoit iamais veu ceste mer, & que le desir de faire le voyage luy auoit fait p. 49.

---

and others much astonished, never having heard such music. On landing, Maisonneuve came to see me with the passport from Monseigneur the Prince, and as soon as I had examined it, I allowed him and his men to take advantage of it with the rest of us. And I announced to the Indians that they could barter on the following day.

Having seen all the principals and set forth in order the particulars of my journey, and the wickedness of our impostor, at which they were much astonished, I requested them to come together so that in their presence and in that of the Indians and of his companions, he should acknowledge his wicked deed, and to this they readily consented. Being thus assembled, they sent for him and questioned him as to why he had not shown me the northern sea, as at his departure he had promised. He replied to them that he had promised a thing which was impossible for him, inasmuch as he had never seen this sea, and that the desire of making the journey had made him say what he did. He also stated

dire cela ; aussi qu'il ne croyoit que ie le deusse entreprendre, & les prioit luy vouloir pardōner, comme il fit à moy derechef, confessant auoir grandement failly : mais que si ie le voulois laisser au pays, qu'il feroit tāt par son labeur, qu'il repareroit la faute, & verroit ceste mer, & en rapporteroit certaines nouuelles l'annee suiuāte : & pour quelques considerations ie luy pardonnay à ceste condition.

Aprés leur auoir deduit par le menu le bon traictemēt que i'auois reçeu dans les demeures de ces sauuages, & mon occupation iournaliere, ie m'enquis aussi de ce qu'ils auoyent faict pendant mon absence, & de leurs exercices, lesquels estoient la chasse, où ils auoient faict tel progrés, que le plus souuent ils apportoient six cerfs. Vne fois entre autres le iour de la S. Barnabé,[1] le sieur du Parc y estant auec deux autres, en tua 9. Ils ne sont pas du tout semblables aux nostres, & y en a de differētes especes, les vns plus grands,

that he did not think I would undertake the journey, and begged them to be good enough to pardon him ; and again asked me to do so, confessing that he had grievously erred. But he said that if I would leave him in the country, he would work so hard that he would make good his fault, and would visit this sea, and in the following year would bring back definite news regarding it. And on account of certain considerations I pardoned him upon that condition.

After I had related to them in detail the kind treatment I had received in the homes of these Indians, and my daily occupation, I enquired also what they [the French] had been doing in my absence, and about their amusements, which lay in hunting. In this they had made such progress that they quite often brought in six stags. Especially once on St. Barnabas's day,[1] the Sieur du Parc with two others had killed nine. These stags are not at all like ours, and there are different kinds of them, some larger and others smaller

---

[1] June 11.

les autres plus petits, approchāt fort de nos dains. Ils auoient aussi si grande quantité de Palombes qu'impossible estoit de plus, ils n'auoient pas moins de poisson, cōme brochets, Carpes, Esturgeons, Aloses, Barbeaux, Tortues, Bars, & autres qui nous sont incognus, desquels ils disnoient & souppoient tous les iours : aussi estoyent-ils tous en meilleur point que moy, qui estois attenué par le trauail & la fascherie p. 50. que i'auois euë, & n'auois mangé le plus souuent qu'vne fois le iour de poisson mal cuit, & à demy rosti.

Le 22. Iuin sur les 8. heures du soir les sauuages nous donnerent vne alarme, à cause qu'vn des leurs auoit songé qu'il auoit veu les Yroquois : pour les contenter chacun prit ses armes, & quelques vns furent enuoyés vers leurs cabanes pour les asseurer, & aux aduenues pour descouurir : si bien qu'ayant recognu que s'estoit vne fausse alarme, l'on se contenta de tirer quelques 200. mousquetades & harquebusades, puis on posa les armes en laissant la garde

---

quite like our fallow deer. They had also shot the largest possible number of wild pigeons, and had caught as many fish, such as pike, carp, sturgeon, shad, barbel, turtle, bass and others which are not known to us, on which they dined and supped every day. Thus they were all in better fettle than I, who was run down by the toil and worry I had undergone. Moreover the greater part of the time I had eaten but one meal a day of badly cooked, half-roasted fish.

On June 22, about eight o'clock in the evening, the Indians gave us the alarm, on account of one of them having dreamed that he had seen the Iroquois. In order to satisfy them, every man of us took up his arms and some were sent over to their wigwams to reassure them, and to spy out the approaches. Then having realized that it was a false alarm, we contented ourselves with firing some two hundred musket and arquebus shots, after which we laid down our arms and posted the ordinary guard. This reassured them greatly ordinaire. Cela les asseura fort, & furent bien contens de voir les François qui se preparerent pour les secourir.

Apres que les sauuages eurent traitté leurs marchandises, & qu'ils eurent resolu de s'en retourner, ie les priay de mener auec eux deux ieunes hommes pour les entretenir en amitié, leur faire voir le païs & les obliger à les ramener, dont ils firent grāde difficulté, me representant la peine que m'auoit donné nostre menteur, craignans qu'ils me feroient de faux rapports, comme il auoit faict. Ie leur fis response qu'ils estoient gens de bien & veritables, & que s'il[s] ne les vouloient emmener, ils n'estoyent pas mes amys, & pource p. 51. ils s'y resolurent. Pour nostre mēteur aucun de ses sauuages n'en voulust, pour priere que ie leur feit, & le laissasmes à la garde de Dieu.

Voyant n'auoir plus rien affaire [a] en ce pays, ie me resolus de passer dans le premier vaisseau qui retourneroit en France. Le sieur de Maison-neufue ayant le sien prest m'offrit le

---

[a] Lire *à faire*.

---

and they were very glad to see that the French made ready to come to their aid.

When the Indians had bartered their merchandise, and had decided to return home, I asked them to take with them two young men, in order to keep the Indians friendly, learn something of their country, and place them under the obligation of coming back to us. But they raised great objection to this, pointing out to me the trouble our liar had given me, and fearing lest these, like him, should make false reports. I replied that these were honest, truthful youths, and that if they would not take these young men with them, they were not my friends. At this they yielded. As for our liar, none of the Indians would have him, in spite of my request, and we left him in God's keeping.

Seeing that I had no further business in this country, I decided to sail home in the first ship that was returning to France. The Sieur de Maisonneuve's pinnace being

passage, lequel i'acceptay, & le 27. Iuin auec le sieur l'Ange nous partismes du Saut,[1] où nous laissasmes les autres vaisseaux, qui attendoyent que les sauuages qui estoient à la guerre fussent de retour, & arriuasmes à Tadoussac le 6. Iuillet.

Le 8. Aoust le temps se trouua propre qui nous en feit partir.

Le 18. sortismes de Gaspé à l'isle percee.[2]

Le 28. nous estions sur le grand banc, où se faict la pesche de poisson vert, où l'on prit du poisson tant que l'on voulut.

Le 26. Aoust [3] arriuasmes à S. Maslo, où ie vis les Marchans, ausquels ie remonstray combien il estoit facile de faire vne bonne association pour l'aduenir, à quoy ils se sont resolus, comme ont faict ceux de Rouën, & de la Rochelle apres qu'ils ont recognu ce reglement estre

ready, he offered me a passage which I accepted, and on June 27, along with the Sieur L'Ange, we set out from the Rapids,[1] where we left the other pinnaces which were awaiting the return of the Indians who had gone on the war-path. We arrived at Tadoussac on July 6.

On August 8 the weather became favourable and we set sail.

On the eighteenth we left Gaspé at isle Percée.[2]

On the twenty-eighth we were on the Grand Bank, where the green fishery is carried on, and here we caught as many fish as we wished.

On August 26[3] we arrived at St. Malo, where I saw the merchants, to whom I pointed out how easy it was to form a good company for the future. They decided to do this, as did also those of Rouen and La Rochelle, when they

---

[1] The Lachine rapids.

[2] See p. 9 *supra* note 4, and p. 108 note 1.

[3] This should doubtless be September.

necessaire, & sans lequel il est impossible d'esperer quelque fruict de ses[a] terres. Dieu par sa grace face prosperer ceste entreprise à son honneur, à sa gloire, à la conuersion de ses[a] pauures aueugles, & au bien & honneur de la France.

[a] À lire *ces*.

FIN

realized that regulations were necessary. Without these it is useless to hope for any profit from that country. May God by His grace prosper this enterprise to His honour and glory, to the conversion of these poor savages, and to the welfare and honour of France.

THE END

TABLE DES CHAPITRES DV QVATRIESME VOYAGE.

CHAP. I.

CE qui m'a occasionné de recercher vn reglement. Commission obtenue. Oppositions à l'encontre. En fin la publication par tous les ports de France. page 241

CHAP. II.

Partement de France : Et ce qui se passa iusques à nostre arriuee au Saut. 248

CHAP. III.

Partement pour descouurir la mer du Nord, sur le rapport qui m'en auoit esté faict. Description de plusieurs riuieres, lacs, isles, du Saut de la chaudiere, & autres Sauts. 255

CHAP. IIII.

Continuation. Arriuee vers Tessoüat, & le bon accueil qu'il me feit. Façon de leurs cimetieres. Les Sauuages me promettent 4. Canots pour continuer mon chemin. Tost apres me les refusent. Harangue des sauuages pour me dissuader mon entreprise, me remonstrant les difficultés. Response à ces difficultés. Tessoüat argue mon conducteur de mensonge, & n'auoir esté où il disoit. Il leur maintient son dire veritable. Ie les presse de me dõner des Canots. Plusieurs refus. Mon conducteur conuaincu de mensonge, & sa confession. 277

CHAP. V.

Nostre retour au Saut. Fausse alarme. Ceremonie du Saut de la chaudiere. Confession de nostre menteur deuant tous les chefs. Et nostre retour en France. 298

TABLE OF CHAPTERS OF THE FOURTH VOYAGE

CHAP. I.

What caused me to seek a regulation. Commission obtained. Opposition thereto. Finally its publication in all the harbours of France. p. 241

CHAP. II.

Departure from France. And what happened until our arrival at the Rapids. p. 248

CHAP. III.

Departure to discover the Northern Sea, upon the account thereof that had been given to me. Description of several rivers, lakes, islands, of the Chaudiere and other Falls. p. 255

CHAP. IV.

Continuation. Arrival at Tessoüat's, and the good reception he gave me. Style of their cemeteries. The Savages promise me four canoes to continue my journey. Soon afterwards refuse them. Speech of the Savages to dissuade me from my undertaking, pointing out to me the difficulties. Reply to these difficulties. Tessoüat accuses my guide of lying and of not having been where he stated. He maintains to them the truth of his statement. I urge them to give me the canoes. Several refusals. My guide convicted of lying, and his confession. p. 277

CHAP. V.

Our return to the Rapids. False alarm. Ceremony at the Chaudiere Falls. Confession of our liar before all the leaders. And our return to France. p. 298

SIX
CONTEMPORARY
DOCUMENTS

RELATING TO

CHAMPLAIN

1610-1618

I

Par[a] devant Nicolas Chocquillet et Loys Arragon, notaires et gardenottes[1] du Roy nostre Sire en son chastelet de Paris, soubzsignez, furent presens en leurs personnes Messire Nicolas Boullé, secretaire de la Chambre du Roy, demeurant à Paris, Rue et parroisse St. Germain d'Auxerrois, et Margueritte Alix, sa femme, de luy auctorisée en ceste partye, ou nom et comme stipulans et eulx faisant fort, pour Heleyne Boullé, leur fille, à ce presente, et de son consentement d'vne part, et noble homme Samuel de Champlain, sieur dudict lieu, capitaine ordinaire de la marine, demeurant à la ville de Brouage, pays de Saintonge, fils de feu Anthoine de Complain,[b] vivant capitaine de la Marine et de dame

---

[a] From the Archives Nationales, Paris, Série Y, volume 150, ff. 293–94.

[b] *Sic.*

I

Before Nicolas Chocquillet and Loys Arragon, notaries and notary-record-keepers[1] of the King our sovereign Lord in his Châtelet of Paris, subscribing, were present in their persons Messire Nicolas Boullé, Secretary of the King's Chamber, residing at Paris, in the street and parish of St. Germain l'Auxerrois, and Margueritte Alix, his wife, by him authorized in this party, in the name of and contracting for and representing Heleyne Boullé, their daughter, upon this present, and with her consent, of the one part, and noble man Samuel de Champlain, Lord of the said place, Captain in ordinary in the Navy, residing in the town of Brouage, province of Saintonge, son of the late Anthoine de Complain, in his lifetime Captain in the Navy, and of Dame Margueritte

---

[1] Notaires gardes-notes. Officers appointed within everie Bailliage, and Siege Royal (by Edict anno 1575) to receive from the widows or heirs of deceased Notaries all such notes, draughts, & Records of Instruments as they left behind them ; since that time all Notaries and Tabellions have beene, by another Edict, made Gardes-Notes. (Cotgrave.)

Margueritte Le Roy, ses pere et mere, ledict Sieur de Champlain estant de present en ceste ville de Paris, logé Rue Tirechappe[1] de ladicte parroisse St. Germain d'Auxerrois, pour luy et en son nom d'autre part, lesquelles parties de leurs bons grez se ont recongnu et confessé en la presence par l'advis et consentement de Messires Pierre du Gas, gentilhomme ordinaire de la chambre du Roy, et son lieutenant general en la Nouvelle France, Gouverneur de Pontz en Saintonge pour le service de Sa Majesté, amy, honnorable homme Lucas Le Gendre, marchand bourgeois de la ville de Rouen, aussy amy, honnorable homme Hercules Rouer, bourgeois de Paris, Marcel Chesnu, marchand bourgeois de Paris, Messire Jehan Roeruau,[2] secretaire dudict Sieur de Mont, amiz dudict sieur futur Espouz, et d'honnorable homme François Le Saige, apoticaire de l'escurye du Roy, allié et amy, Jehan Ravenel, sieur de La Merrois, Pierre Noel,

Le Roy, his father and mother, the said Sieur de Champlain being at present in this city of Paris, lodging in the rue Tirechappe[1] of the said parish of St. Germain l'Auxerrois, for himself and in his name, on the other part, which parties of their own free will in the presence, and with the advice and consent of Messires Pierre du Gas, gentleman in ordinary of the King's Chamber, and his Lieutenant-General in New France, Governor for his Majesty's service of Pons in Saintonge, friend, honourable Lucas Le Gendre, merchant citizen of the town of Rouen, also friend, honourable Hercules Rouer, citizen of Paris, Marcel Chesnu, merchant citizen of Paris, Messire Jehan Roeruau,[2] Secretary of the said Sieur de Mont, friends of the said future husband, and of honourable François Le Saige, Apothecary of the King's Stable, kinsman and friend, Jehan Ravenel, Lord of La Merrois,

---

[1] A street between the present rue du Roule and rue des Bourdonnais, but which was done away with in 1857.

[2] In Vol. I, p. 280, his name is given as Ralleau.

Sieur de Cosigne, amy, Messire Anthoine de Murat, conseiller et aumosnier du Roy, amy, Anthoine Maryé, Maistre barbier cirugien à Paris, allyé et amy, Genneviefve Le Saige, femme de Messire Simon Alix, oncle du costé maternel de ladicte Heleyne Boullé, avoir faict, feyrent et font entre eulx de bonne foy, les traicté, açcordz, dons, douaires, promesses et conventions qui ensuivent, pour raison du mariage futur desdicts Samuel de Champlain et Heleyne Boullé, qui ont promis et promectent prendre l'vn d'eulx l'aultre par nom et loy de mariage dedans le plus bref temps que faire ce pourra et sera advisé entre eulx, leurs parens et amis, sy Dieu et nostre mère Ste. Eglise s'y accordent, aux biens et droitz à eulx appartenans qu'ilz promectent porter l'vn avec l'aultre pour estre vngs et commungs entre eulx, selon les vz et coustume de Paris, lequel mariage neantmoings en consideration

---

Pierre Noel, Lord of Cosigne, friend, Messire Anthoine de Murat, King's Councillor and Almoner, friend, Anthoine Maryé, master barber surgeon at Paris, kinsman and friend, Gennevieve Le Saige, wife of Messire Simon Alix, uncle on the maternal side of the said Heleyne Boullé, have acknowledged and confessed that they have made, did make and do make between them in good faith the contract, marriage preliminaries, gifts, settlements, promises and covenants which follow, by reason of the future marriage of the said Samuel de Champlain and Heleyne Boullé, who have promised and do promise to take each other in lawful wedlock within the briefest space of time possible and that shall be decided upon between them, their relatives and friends, if God and our Holy mother Church thereto consent, with the goods and rights belonging to them, which they promise to bring to each other to be mutual and common between them, according to the usage and custom of Paris, which marriage nevertheless it has been agreed, in consideration

du bas aage de ladite Heleine Boullé a esté accordé qu'il ne se fera et effectura qu'après deux ans d'huy finis et accomplis, sinon que plustost il soit trouvé bon et advisé entre eulx, leurs parens et amis, passer oultre à la confection dudict mariage, En faveur duquel promectent et s'obleigent solidairement lesdicts Boullé et sa femme de bailler et paier ausdictz futurs mariez par advancement d'hoirye venant par ladicte Boullé aux successions futurs de sesdicts père et mère, la somme de six mil livres tournois, en deniers comptans, dans le jour precedent leurs espouzailles : Et partant ledict sieur futur espoux a doué et doue ladicte future espouze de la somme de dix-huict cens livres tournois en douaire prefix pour vne fois paier à icelle, douaire avoir et prendre par elle, sy tost que douaire aura lieu, sur tous et chacuns les biens, meubles et immeubles presens et advenir dudict futur espoux, qu'il en a pour ce du tout chargés,

---

of the tender age of the said Heleine Boullé, shall not be carried out and effected until two years elapsed and completed from this day, unless it be deemed advisable and be decided between them, their relations and friends, to proceed earlier to the completion of the said marriage. In favour of which the said Boullé and his wife promise and bind themselves jointly and severally to deliver and pay to the said future husband and wife as an advance heritage on the future inheritances coming through the said Boullé from her said father and mother, the sum of six thousand livres in ready money of Tours on the day preceding their nuptials. And therefore the said future husband has endowed and endows the said future wife with the sum of eighteen hundred livres tournois as a settled jointure, to be paid in one payment to the said beneficiary, to be had and taken by her as soon as the jointure shall take effect, upon all and several the goods, movable and immovable, present and to come, of the said future husband, which he has to this intent wholly bound,

obleigés et ypotecquez, obleige et ypotecque par ces presentes à fournir et faire valloir et duquel douaire prefix, ladicte future espouze jouira selon les vz et coustume de Paris ; a esté accordé que le survivant desdicts futurs mariez aura et prendra par preciput et avant que faire aucun partaige des biens de leur commun(un)aulté et hors part, la somme de six cens livres tournois sçavoir : ledict sieur futur espoux pour ses habitz, armes et chevaulx et ladicte future espouze pour ses habitz, bagues et joyaulx, selon la prisée qui en sera faicte par l'inventaire et sans crié faire sur icelle, ou ladicte somme en deniers comptans, aux choix et option dudict survivant, pourveu que lors de la dissolution dudict futur mariage, il n'y ayt enfant ou enfans vivans nez et procrées d'icelluy ; Et recongnoissant ledict futur espoux et ayant égard à la grande jeunesse de ladicte Heleinne Boullé et pour

---

obligated and hypothecated, does obligate and hypothecate by these presents to furnish and provide, and which settled jointure the said future wife shall enjoy according to the usage and custom of Paris ; and it has been agreed that the survivor of the said future marriage shall receive and take as a specific legacy, and before any division is made of the goods of their common property, and apart from his or her share, the sum of six hundred livres tournois to wit : the said future husband for his apparel, arms and horses, and the said future wife for her apparel, rings and jewels, according to the valuation which shall be made in the inventory and without any public announcement thereupon, or the said sum in ready money, at the choice and option of the said survivor, provided that at the time of the dissolution of the said future marriage there be no child or children living, born and begotten from the said marriage. And the said future husband, recognizing and considering the extreme youth of the said Heleinne Boullé, and from the affection and friendship

l'affection et amityé que luy porte, veult et entend ledict futur espoux après la consommation dudict mariage l'advancer et luy donner moien de vivre et de s'entretenir après son decedz, et advenant qu'il feust prevenu de mort en ses voiages sur la mer et aultres lieux où il est employé pour le service du Roy, en ceste consideration et advenant, comme dict est, son decedz, veult et entend ledict futur espoux que ladicte future espouze jouisse sa vye durant de tous et chacuns les biens, meubles et immeubles, presens et advenir, quelque part qu'ilz soient scituez et assis, et qui pourront appartenir audict futur espoux, soit par acquisition, succession, donnation ou autrement, pourveu qu'il n'y ayt enfant ou enfans vivans lors nez et procrées dudict futur mariage. Pour faire insinnuer lequel present contract au greffe du chastelet de Paris, et partout ailleurs où il appartiendra, ont lesdicts futurs espoux faict et constitué et par ces presentes font et

that he bears her, wills and intends, after the consummation of the said marriage, to provide for her and to give her the means of living and of maintaining herself after his decease, and should he be forestalled by death during his voyages at sea, and elsewhere, where he is employed on the King's service, in consideration of this and in the event, as has been said, of his death, the said future husband wills and intends that the said future wife shall enjoy during her lifetime all and severally the goods, movable and immovable, present and to come, wheresoever situated and located, and which may belong to the said future husband, either by purchase, inheritance, gift or otherwise, provided there be no child or children then living, born and begotten from the said marriage. In order to have this present contract recorded in the Registry of the Châtelet of Paris, and elsewhere where it shall appertain, the said future husband and wife have made and constituted and by these presents make and

constituent leur procureur general et special, le porteur des presentes, auquel ilz ont donné et donnent pouvoir et puissance de ce faire et tout ce qui au cas appartiendra, sera requis et necessaire, et generallement : car ainsi a esté accordé entre lesdictes parties nonobstant vz, stil, coustume ne aultres choses à ce contraires, à quoy lesdictes parties ont desrogé et desrogent pour ce regard, promectant, obleigeant, chacun en droict soy renonceant. Faict et passé à Paris en la maison desdicts Boullé et sa femme, scize à Paris en ladicte Rue et paroisse St. Germain, enseigne du Miroir, après midy l'an mil six cens dix, le lundy vingt-septiesme jour de decembre ; et ont lesdicts futurs espoux et aultres susnommez signé la minutte des presentes demeurée vers Arragon, l'vn des notaires soubzsignez. Signé Chocquillet et Arragon : et plus bas est escript ce qui ensuit :

constitute their general and special attorney, the bearer of these presents, to whom they have given and give power and authority to do this and all that may pertain and be requisite and necessary to the case and generally : for so it has been agreed between the said parties, notwithstanding usage, practice, custom or anything else to the contrary, which the said parties have invalidated and invalidate in that regard, promising, binding, each for himself renouncing. Done and executed at Paris in the house of the said Boullé and his wife, situated in Paris in the said street and parish of St. Germain, at the sign of the Mirror, after noon in the year 1610, Monday the twenty-seventh day of December ; and the said future husband and wife and the others named above have signed the draft of these presents, which remains in the keeping of Arragon, one of the undersigned notaries. Signed, Chocquillet and Arragon : and lower down is written that which follows :

Ledict Sieur Samuel de Complain,[a] sieur dudict lieu, cy dessus nommé, confesse avoir eu et receu desdicts Messire Nicolas Boullé et Margueritte Alix, sa femme, aussy cy dessus nommez, ledict Boullé à ce present, la somme de quatre mil cinq cens livres sur et temoings de la somme de six mil livres tournois audict sieur de Champlain promis en faveur de mariage de luy et de Heleyne Boullé, selon qu'il est à plain contenu et declairé par leur contract cy dessus escript, de laquelle somme de quatre mil cinq cens livres, ledict sieur de Champlain s'est tenu et tient pour content et bien payé, et en quicte lesdicts Boullé, sa femme, et tous aultres sans prejudice du surplus. Promectant, obleigeant, renonceant. Faict et passé à Paris ès estudes des notaires soubzsignez, après midy, l'an mil six cens dix, le mercredy vingt-neufiesme jour de decembre, et ont signé

[a] *Sic.*

The said Sieur Samuel de Complain, Lord of the said place, here above named, confesses that he has had and received from the said Messire Nicolas Boullé and Margueritte Alix, his wife, also here above named, the said Boullé being present, the sum of four thousand five hundred livres as an earnest of the sum of six thousand livres tournois promised to the said Sieur de Champlain in favour of the marriage of himself and Heleyne Boullé, according as is fully contained and declared by their contract here above written, with which sum of four thousand five hundred livres the said Sieur de Champlain has held himself and holds himself for satisfied and well paid, and discharges therefrom the said Boullé and his wife, and all others without prejudice to the remainder. Promising, binding, renouncing. Done and executed at Paris in the chambers of the undersigned notaries after noon in the year 1610, Wednesday the twenty-ninth day of December, and they have signed the draft of these

la minutte des presentes estant au bas de la minutte dudict contract de mariage. Signé Chocquillet et Arragon. Et plus bas a esté mis l'insinnuation ainsy qu'il s'enssuit :

L'an mil six cens vnze, le mardy vnziesme janvier, le present contract de mariage a esté apporté au greffe du chastelet de Paris et icelluy insinué, accepté et eu pour agreable aux charges, causes et conditions y apposées et selon que contenu est par icelluy par honnorable homme Messire Nicolas Boullé, secretaire de ladite chambre du Roy, porteur dudict contract et comme procureur de noble homme Samuel de Champlain, sieur dudict lieu, capitaine ordinaire de la maryne et encores ledict Boullé stipulant et acceptant pour Heleyne Boullé, sa fille et future espouze dudict sieur Champlain, tous desnommez audict present contract, lequel a esté enregistré, ensemble la quictance cy dessus transcripte, au present Registre LXV^{e} volume des Insinnuations dudict

---

presents, being underneath the draft of the said marriage contract. Signed: Chocquillet and Arragon. And lower down has been placed the act of registration as follows :

In the year 1611, Tuesday, January 11, the present marriage contract was brought to the Registry of the Châtelet of Paris and the same recorded, accepted and approved with the charges, interests and conditions therein inserted and according as is contained in the same, by honourable Messire Nicolas Boullé, Secretary of the said King's Chamber, bearer of the said contract and as attorney for noble Samuel de Champlain, Lord of the said place, Captain in ordinary in the Navy, and also the said Boullé stipulating and accepting for Heleyne Boullé, his daughter and future wife of the said Sieur Champlain, all named in the said present contract, which has been recorded, together with the quittance here above transcribed, in the present Register, LXVth volume of the Registrations of the said Châtelet, in accordance with the ordinance, at the request of the said Boullé who has

chastelet suivant l'ordonnance, ce requerant ledict Boullé, qui de ce a requis acte à luy octroyé et baillé ces presentes tant pour servir et valloir audict sieur Complain qu'à sadicte future femme en temps et lieu ce que de raison.

II

Fut[a] présent en sa personne Richard Terrier, facteur de marchandz, demeurant rue de la Heaulmiere, parroisse S^t^ Jacques de la Boucherye, lequel a confessé et confesse avoir baillé et mis en service Ysabel Terrier, sa fille, dujourd'huy jusques à quatre ans prochain après ensuivant finiz, à et aveq noble homme Samuel de Champlain, cappitainne ordinaire du Roy en la Marine de ponent, et damoiselle Eslayne Boullé, sa femme, demeurant rue et parroisse S^t^ Germain de l'Auxerroys, à ce présens, qui l'ont prinse et retenue à leur

---

[a] From Étienne Charavay, *Documents inédits sur Samuel de Champlain*, 4–5, Paris, 1875.

---

demanded a certificate of the same to be granted and given to him, these presents as well to serve and avail both for the said Sieur Complain as for his said future wife in proper time and place.

II

Was present in his person Richard Terrier, merchants' factor, residing in the rue de la Heaulmiere, in the parish of St. Jacques de la Boucherye, who has confessed and confesses that he has given and placed in service Ysabel Terrier, his daughter, for the term of four years dating from this day to and with the noble Samuel de Champlain, Captain in ordinary to the King in the Western Navy, and Madame Eslayne Boullé, his wife, residing in the street and parish of St. Germain l'Auxerrois, here present, who have taken

service pendant ledit temps. Laquelle Ysabel promect les servir pendant ledit temps en touttes choses qui lui seront commandées par ses maistre et maistresse, licittes et honnestes, moyennant trente livres tournois par chacun an, que ledit s^r^ de Champlain et sa femme s'obligent sollennellement d'en baller et payer à ladite Ysabel Terrier au feur et à mesure qu'elle en aura affaire, mesme lui advencer sur sesdits gaiges ce qui lui sera de présent nécessaire pour l'abiller, et laquelle Ysabel Terrier ledit Richard Terrier pleuvist de toute loyaulté et preudhomye, car ainsi appartient chacun en droict, s'engageant, remettant, promettant. Fait et passé à Paris en estudes après midy MVI^c dix sept, le vingt deuxiesme jour de juillet. Et ont signé, fors ladite Ysabel qui a déclaré ne sçavoir.

CHAMPLAIN H. BOULLÉ TERRIER
FONTAINE CARTIER

---

and engaged her in their service for the said term. Which Ysabel promises to serve them during the said term in all things lawful and honest which may be commanded her by her master and mistress in consideration yearly of thirty livres tournois, which the said Sieur de Champlain and his wife solemnly bind themselves to deliver and pay to the said Ysabel Terrier in proportion as it falls due to her, even to advance to her on her said wages whatever will now be necessary to fit her out, and which Ysabel Terrier the said Richard Terrier warrants honest and of good character, for thus belongs to each by right, agreeing, remitting, promising. Done and executed at Paris in the chambers of the notary after noon on the twenty-second day of July in the year 1617. All have signed, except the said Ysabel, who has declared that she does not know how.

CHAMPLAIN H. BOULLÉ TERRIER
FONTAINE CARTIER

III

Au Roy et à nosseigneurs de son Conseil.[a]

Sire,

Vous remonstre très humblement le sieur de Champlain que, depuis seize ans, il auroit travaillé avec vn soing laborieux tant aux descouverture[s] de la Nouvelle-France que de divers peuples et nations qu'il a amenez à nostre cognoissance, qui n'avoient jamais esté cognues que par luy ; lesquels luy ont donné telle et si fidelle rellation des mers du nor et du su, que l'on n'en peut doubter, qui seroit le moyen de parvenir facilement au Royaume de la Chine et Indes orientales, d'où l'on tireroit de grandes richesses ; oultre le culte divin qui s'y pourroit planter, comme le peuvent

---

[a] Documents III to VI were first printed in 1879 by Louis Audiat in the *Archives historiques de la Saintonge et de l'Aunis,* VI, 381 *et seq.* They have been compared afresh with MS. No. 1777 in the Bibliothèque de Carpentras, Vaucluse, by M. Robert Caillet, to whom the editor begs to express his heartiest thanks for this help.

III

To the King and the Lords of his Council.

Sire,

The Sieur de Champlain represents to you most humbly that for sixteen years he has toiled with laborious zeal as well in the discoveries of New France as of divers peoples and nations whom he has brought to our knowledge, who had never been discovered save by him ; which peoples have given him such and so faithful report of the north and south seas that one cannot doubt but that this would be the means of reaching easily to the Kingdom of China and the East Indies, whence great riches could be drawn ; besides planting there the divine worship, as our Récollet friars can bear

tesmoigner nos relligieux récollés, plus l'abondance des marchandises dudict pays de la Nouvelle-France, qui se tireroit annuellement par la dilligence des ouvriers qui s'y transporteroient. Que sy cedict pais estoit délaissé et l'abitation abandonnée, faulte d'y apporter le soing qui seroit requis, les Anglois ou Flamens, envieux de nostre bien, s'en empar[er]oist en jouissant du fruict de nos labeurs, et empeschant par ce moyen plus de mille vaisseaux d'aller faire paicherie de poissons sec, vert, et huilles de balleyne, comme ils ont desjà faict au nor et habitations du sieur de Poitrincourt, que des Jésuites qu'ils [ont] prises et brullées, comme l'a faict veoir ledict Champlain à messieurs de la chambre du commerce, qui se sont bien et deuement informés sur chasque point des articles cy attachés. Et considérant le bien et utilité qui en peut revenir, tant à la gloire de Dieu que pour l'honneur de Sa Majesté et bien de ses subjects,

---

witness, in addition to the abundance of merchandise from the said country of New France, which would be drawn thence annually through the diligence of the workmen who would go there. Should this said country be given up and the settlement abandoned, for want of bestowing upon it the needed attention, the English or Flemings, envious of our prosperity, would seize upon it, thereby enjoying the fruits of our labours, and preventing by this means more than a thousand vessels from going to the dry and green fisheries, and for whale-oil, as they have already done in the north and in the Sieur de Poitrincourt's settlements as well as in those of the Jesuits, which they have captured and burned, as the said Champlain has reported to the gentlemen of the Chamber of Commerce, who have properly and duly informed themselves concerning every point of the articles hereto appended. And considering the advantage and profit to be derived therefrom, as well for the glory of God as for the honour of His Majesty and for the good of his subjects, the Chamber

elle auroit donné son advis pour le présenter à sadicte Majesté et nosdicts seigneurs de son Conseil les moyens qu'elle doibt donner pour vne si saincte et glorieuse entreprise.

A ces causes, ledict Champlain supplie très humblement sadicte Majesté et nosdicts seigneurs de son conseil luy donner moyen de fortiffier et augmenter son desseing. Et d'aultant que ledict de Champlain, en ceste présente année, faict le voiage de la Nouvelle-France, il supplie humblement sadicte Majesté d'avoir pour agréable que le sieur baron de Roussillon, l'vn des commissaires de ladicte chambre du commerce, ayent le soing de vacquer aux choses nécessaires pour ladicte entreprise, et poursuivre l'accomplissement dudict advis de ladicte chambre du commerce près de sadicte Majesté et nosdicts seigneurs de son conseil, pendant l'absance dudict de Champlain ; lequel continuera à prier Dieu incessamment pour le bien et accroissement de vostre dicte Majesté. Signé

Champlain.

---

of Commerce has passed a resolution to represent to His Majesty and to the said Lords of his Council on the measures which he should take for such a holy and glorious enterprise.

For these reasons the said Champlain most humbly entreats His said Majesty and the said Lords of his Council to grant him the means of strengthening and extending his design. And forasmuch as the said de Champlain, in this present year, is making a voyage to New France, he humbly entreats His said Majesty to consent that the Baron de Roussillon, one of the commissioners of the said Chamber of Commerce, be entrusted with the care of looking after the things necessary for the said undertaking, and of pursuing the fulfilment of the said resolution of the said Chamber of Commerce with His said Majesty and the said Lords of his Council, during the absence of the said de Champlain; who will continue to pray God unceasingly for the prosperity and increase of Your said Majesty.

(Signed) Champlain.

IV

Premièrement.—Sadicte Majesté establira la foy chrestienne parmy vn peuple infini d'ames, lequel ne tient ny n'a aucune forme de religion quelle qu'elle soit, et néantmoings ne respire autre chose que la cognoissance du culte divin et humain, selon qu'il est rapporté par la relation de tous ceux qui ont fait le voyage dans ladicte Nouvelle-France.

Secondement.—Le roy se rendra maistre et seigneur d'vne terre de près de dix-huict cens lieues de long, arrousée des plus beaux fleuves du monde et des plus grands lacs en plus grande quantité, et les plus fertiles et abondants en toute sorte de poissons qui se peuvent trouver, comme aussy des plus grandes prairies, campagnes, forests remplies la plupart de noyers,[1] et coutaulx très agréables où il se trouve grande quantité de vignes sauvages, lesquelles apportent le grain aultant ou plus gros que les nostres, toutes cultivées qu'elles sont.

IV

Firstly.—His said Majesty will establish the Christian faith among an infinite number of souls, who neither hold nor possess any form of religion whatsoever, and nevertheless wish only for the knowledge of divine and human worship, according to the reports of all those who have made the voyage to the said New France.

Secondly.—The King will make himself master and lord of a country nearly eighteen hundred leagues in length, watered by the fairest rivers in the world and by the greatest and most numerous lakes, the richest and most abundant in all varieties of fish that are to be found, and full also of the greatest meadows, fields, and forests, for the most part of walnut-trees,[1] and very pleasant hills upon which there is found a great abundance of wild vines, which yield grapes as large as or larger than ours, cultivated as these are.

[1] See Vol. I, 140.

Tiercement.—Le sieur de Champlain prétend trouver le passage de la mer du sud pour aller à la Chine et aux Indes orientales par le moyen du fleuve Saint-Laurent, qui traverse les terres de ladicte Nouvelle-France, et sort icelluy fleuve d'vn lac contenant environ trois cens lieues, duquel lac sort vn fleuve, lequel entre dans ladicte mer du sud, suivant la relation faicte audict sieur de Champlain par quantité de peuples, ses amis audict païs ; lesquels il a visités et recongneus, aïant remonté ledict fleuve Saint-Laurent plus de quatre cens lieues dans ledict lac de trois cens, auquel voyage il a trouvé des villes fermées en quantité, enceintes et closes de bois, à la mode qu'elles sont pour le jourdhuy dans Mouscovye ; desquelles villes peut sortir deux mille hommes armés à leur mode ; en quelcune aultre, moins.

Que sadicte Majesté retireroit vn grand et notable profit des imposts et denrées qu'elle pourroit mettre sur les mar-

---

Thirdly.—The Sieur de Champlain undertakes to discover the South Sea passage to China and to the East Indies by way of the river St. Lawrence, which traverses the lands of the said New France, and which river issues from a lake about three hundred leagues in length, from which lake flows a river that empties into the said South Sea, according to the account given to the said Sieur de Champlain by a number of people, his friends in the said country ; whom he has visited and become acquainted with, having ascended the said river St. Lawrence for more than four hundred leagues into the said lake of three hundred leagues in length, on which voyage he found numerous fortified towns, encircled and enclosed with wooden palissades after the manner used to-day in Muscovy ; which towns can furnish two thousand men armed after their fashion ; others less.

That His said Majesty would derive a great and notable profit from the taxes and duties he could levy on the merchandises sortant dudict païs, suivant le mémoire donné, comme aussy de la douane des marchandises qui viendroient de la Chine et des Indes, laquelle surpasseroit en prix dix fois [au] moings toutes celles qui se lèvent en France, d'autant qu'au passage prétendu par le sieur de Champlain, passeroient tous les marchands de la chrestienté, s'il plaict au roy leur octroyer ledict passage, pour oster vn racourcissement dudict passage de plus d'vn an et demy de temps, sans le dangier des coursaires et de la fortune de la mer et du passage, par le grand tour qu'il convient de prendre maintenant, rapporte mille sorte d'incommodités aux marchands et voyageurs.

Ce que ledict sieur de Champlain dict d'abondant et entend de faire soubs le bon vouloir de Sa Majesté, si elle a pour agréable de commencer et poursuivre ladicte entreprise et de faire à Quebec, lieu de l'habitation du sieur Champlain, assise sur la rivière Saint-Laurent, en vn détroict d'icelle

chandise coming from the said country, according to the memorial submitted, as likewise from the customs' duties on the merchandise that would come from China and from the Indies, which would surpass in value at least ten times all those levied in France, inasmuch as all the merchants of Christendom would pass through the passage sought by the Sieur de Champlain, if it please the King to grant them leave to do so, in order to shorten the said journey by more than a year and a half, without any risk from pirates and from the perils of the sea and of the voyage, on account of the great circuit it is necessary now to make, which brings a thousand inconveniences to merchants and travellers.

Furthermore the said Sieur de Champlain declares and proposes, subject to the good pleasure of His Majesty, should he see fit to undertake and pursue the said enterprise, to build at Quebec, the site of the Sieur Champlain's settlement situated on the river St. Lawrence, at a narrow part of the

rivière, qui peut contenir environ neuf cens ou mille pas, vne ville de la grandeur presque que celle de Sainct-Denis, laquelle ville s'appellera, s'il plaict à Dieu et au roy, LUDOVICA, dans laquelle l'on faira faire vn beau temple au milieu d'icelle, dédié au Rédempteur, et nommé *le Rédempteur*, en signe et commémoration du bien qu'il plaira à Dieu faire à ces pouvres peuples, lesquel[s] n'ont aucune cognoissance de son sainct nom, de porter la volonté du roy à les faire venir à la congnoissance de la sainte foy chrestienne et au giron de nostre mère saincte église.

Il sera faict vn fort composé de cinq bastions, à cousté de ladicte ville, sur vn certain lieu relevé des deux coustés, lequel commandera sur ladicte ville et sur le destroit de ladicte rivière ; de l'autre cousté de laquelle et vis-à-vis se fera vn fort de mesme grandeur pour barrer entièrement le passage de ladicte rivière, comme estant l'entrée et la porte dudict païs, sans laquelle on n'y peut aucunement

---

said river, some nine hundred or a thousand yards in width, a town almost as large as St. Denis, which shall be called, if it please God and the King, LUDOVICA, in the centre of which will be built a fair temple, dedicated to the Redeemer, and called the Church of the Redeemer, as a memorial and commemoration of the good that it shall please God to do to these poor people, who have no knowledge of His holy name, to incline the will of the King to bring them to the knowledge of the holy Christian faith and to the bosom of our holy mother Church.

A fort with five bastions will be built alongside the said town, on a certain spot elevated on two sides, which will command the said town and the narrows of the said river. On the other side of the river and directly opposite will be built a fort of the same dimensions in order to bar completely the passage of the said river, as being the entrance and the gateway of the said country, through which alone anyone

entrer, estant despuis l'embuchure de ladicte rivière jusques dans la mer, laquelle embouchure dans la mer peut contenir environ trente lieues jusques audict Quebec, qui est distant de ladicte embouchure de quelques six vingts lieues, le pays tout remply à droicte et à gauche de montagnes et rochers espouvantables et pays déserts, lesquels il n'y a moien de traverser, ne s'y trouvant aucun port ny havres pour tirer les vaisseaux, sinon vn, nommé Tadoussac, auquel lieu se retirent les grands vaisseaux. Et là il sera faict vn fort sur vne poincte d'icelluy, fort adventageuse, auquel l'on mettra garnison, et laquelle garnison sera changée de six en six mois.

Ledict Tadoussac est au-dessoubs dudict Quebec, environ trente et cinq lieues. Entre ledict Quebec et Tadoussac ny amis ny ennemis, ny s'y peuvent loger.

Ce que ledict sieur de Champlain dict estre nécessaire pour s'establir fermement dans ledict païs de la Nouvelle-France est : premièrement, afin que ce saint œuvre soit

---

may enter therein, since from the mouth of the said river to the sea, from which mouth it may be about thirty leagues to the said Quebec, which is distant from the opening into the sea some six score leagues, the country on the right and on the left is very full of horrible mountains and rocks and desert lands, which there is no means of traversing, there being no port nor harbours for laying up vessels, save one, called Tadoussac, where the great vessels come to anchor. And in this place a fort will be built on a very suitable point of land, in which will be placed a garrison, which garrison will be changed every six months.

The said Tadoussac is some thirty-five leagues below the said Quebec. Between the said Quebec and Tadoussac neither friends nor enemies can secure a footing.

What the said Sieur de Champlain declares to be necessary in order to secure a solid footing in the said country of New France is : firstly, in order that this holy enterprise may be

bény de Dieu, d'y mener d'abord quinze religieux récolets, lesquels seront logés en vn cloistre qui sera faict proche de ladicte église du Rédempteur ;

Secondement, y mener trois cens familles chascune composée de quatre personnes, sçavoir le mary et la femme, fils et fille, ou serviteur et servante, au-dessous de l'aage de vingt ans, sçavoir les enfants et serviteurs.

Et d'autant que tous les estats qui subsistent sont appuiés politiquement sur quatre arcs-boutants, lesquels sont la force, la justice, la marchandise et le labourage, ayant parlé en premier lieu pour ce qui est de l'église, il est nécessaire d'y porter la force, laquelle sera de trois cens bons hommes bien armez et disciplinez, et lesquels néantmoings ne laisseront de travailler à tour de role à ce qui sera nécessaire, n'estant besoing aux establissements de colonnyes d'y porter des personnes de quelque qualité que ce soit, qui ne sçachent à gaigner la vie.

---

blessed by God, to take there first of all fifteen Récollet friars, who will be lodged in a monastery to be erected near the said Church of the Redeemer ;

Secondly, to conduct thither three hundred families, composed each of four persons, namely the husband and wife, son and daughter, or man-servant and maid-servant, below the age of twenty years, that is to say the children and servants.

And inasmuch as all existing states are supported politically on four buttresses, which are force, justice, trade and husbandry, having spoken in the first instance of what pertains to the Church, it is necessary to add thereto force, which will consist of three hundred good men well armed and disciplined, and who nevertheless will have to work by turns at whatever will be necessary, as it is inexpedient in founding colonies to carry thither people, whatever their quality may be, who are incapable of earning their living.

Et sera considéré que, si ladicte habitation de Quebec n'est maintenue et fortifiée de peuples pour habiter les terres voisines et se fortifier à bon essient dans le pays, que les Anglois ou les Flamans, qui sont nos voisins, nous en chassent, comme ils ont desjà faict les Jésuites et le sieur Potrincourt, desquels ils ont prins et bruslé leur habitation.

Les Flamans sont logés en vn lieu où ils ne permettent personne aller que ceux de leur nation, lequel lieu n'est pas beaucoup esloigné de nous. Les Anglois sont logés aux Virginies, auquel lieu ils ne permettent entrer aucun François, comme aussy d'autre part du cousté du nort, où lesdicts Anglois se sont logés, ne permettant aucuns estrangers que de leur nation faire la pesche de la baleine ; que, s'ils se venoient à s'emparer du fleuve Saint-Laurent et de notre habitation, ils empescheroient du moings six cens ou sept cens vaisseaux françois, qui vont tous les ans à la pesche des

---

And it will be well to consider that, should the said settlement at Quebec not be kept up and strengthened against attack by settlers on the neighbouring lands establishing themselves in the country in good earnest, the English or the Flemings, who are our neighbours, will drive us out, as they have already done the Jesuits and the Sieur de Poutrincourt, whose settlements they have captured and burned.

The Flemings are settled in a place where they permit no one to go save those of their nation, which place is not very far from us. The English are settled in Virginia, where they permit no Frenchman to enter, as likewise in the north, where the said English have established themselves, permitting no foreigners save of their own nation to engage in the whale fishery ; and if they should come to get possession of the river St. Lawrence and of our settlement, they would prevent at least six or seven hundred French vessels from going morues ; à quoy il est besoing de pourvoir et d'y mettre ordre de bonne heure.

A s'il plaict à Sa Majesté octroier les deniers provenus des moyens ci-dessus, lesquels néantmoings ledict suppliant ne veut ni manier ni toucher, comme il a dict cy-dessus, pour l'espace de quinze années, l'on prévoira à cet accident ; et ledict sieur de Champlain promet, ledict temps expiré, pourveu que desdicts moyens il en puisse tirer assez pour fournir aux frais desdictes familles et gens de guerre, sur le prix de son honneur et de sa vie, rendre la chose tellement establie à Sa Majesté qu'il n'y aura force humaine à redoubter aux quatre villes basties en remontant ledict fleuve Saint-Laurent, accompagnées de bourgs et villages, comme aussy tous les peuples dudict pays tributaires à Sa Majesté. Il faut faire estat d'autant de familles et gens de guerre que dessus, le tout suivant et conformément à la supputation

---

annually to the cod-fishery ; against which it is necessary to make provision and to take early measures.

Should it please His Majesty to grant the moneys raised from the above-mentioned sources, which nevertheless the said petitioner, as he has stated above, does not wish to handle or touch, for the period of fifteen years, this accident will be guarded against ; and the said Sieur de Champlain, upon the expiration of the said period, promises on his honour and his life, provided that from the said sources he can obtain sufficient to meet the expenses of the said families and soldiers, to hand over the enterprise to His Majesty so firmly established, that no human force need be feared in the four towns built along the said St. Lawrence, nor in the towns and villages, and also all the peoples of the said country tributary to His Majesty. Provision must be made for as many families and soldiers as stated above, the whole in accordance and conformity with the estimate above set out,

faicte cy-dessus, et y faire porter à quantité de toutes sortes d'animaux domestiques que nous avons par deça, lesquels ne sont audict pays. Et faut faire estat de cest article de quinze mille livres pour chasque année, et pour trois seulement consécutives. Pour l'establissement des autres trois parties de l'estat, sçavoir : la justice, le commerce et le labourage, Sa Majesté sera très-humblement suppliée députer quelques vns de son conseil, pour establir et ordonner des loix fondamentales de l'estat, par lesquelles toutes les chicaneries et procédures de ces quartiers seront retranchées et tous les différents terminés à la troisième tenue des causes et sans qu'il soit besoing de procureur ny d'avocat, et que la justice se fasse gratuitement.

Pour le faict des deux autres parties, il y sera mis ordre selon l'urgence des cas.

Sa Majesté sera très-humblement suppliée par ledict sieur de Champlain, comme aussy nosseigneurs du conseil

---

and to have transported thither in considerable numbers all sorts of domestic animals that we have in France, which are not found in the said country. And it is necessary to reckon for this article fifteen thousand livres annually, and for three consecutive years only. For the establishment of the other three parts of the state, to wit : justice, trade and husbandry, His Majesty will be most humbly entreated to appoint certain of his Council to establish and ordain the fundamental laws of the state, in accordance with which all litigations and suits in these parts shall be decided and all disputes settled at the third hearing of the cases and without the necessity of attorney or lawyer ; and that justice be done free of cost.

For the matter of the other two parts, measures will be taken according to the urgency of the cases.

His Majesty, and likewise the Lords of the Council and the gentlemen of the Chamber of Commerce, will be most et messieurs de la chambre du commerce, que le sieur baron de Roussillon, l'vn des commissaires de ladicte chambre du commerce, soit nommé pour l'vn des directeurs du maniement des deniers qui proviendront ou pourront provenir, tant par le moïen des advis dudict sieur de Champlain qu'autres deniers qu'il plaira à Sa Majesté faire délivrer pour le faict et expédition de ladicte entreprise, sans toutefois toucher aux deniers et affaires de la présente association destinée pour subvenir aux familles qui leur convient envoyer audict lieu, ny aussy en ce qui conserne la charge dudict de Champlain; ains ledict sieur baron, comme intelligent des voyages, navigation et commerce, voir et juger au doigt et à l'œil de ce qui se fera et sera nécessaire en ceste affaire, pour en faire son rapport à Sa Majesté, et à ceste fin qu'il se transporte sur lesdicts lieux.

Comme aussy la mesme supplication sera faicte en faveur

---

humbly entreated by the said Sieur de Champlain to appoint the Baron de Roussillon, one of the commissioners of the said Chamber of Commerce, as one of the directors for the management of the moneys which will accrue or may accrue, as well by means of the proposals of the said Sieur de Champlain as other moneys it may please His Majesty to have paid over for the carrying out and execution of the said undertaking, without, however, touching the moneys and business of the present association destined to provide for the families that they may send to the said place, nor likewise in what concerns the employment of the said de Champlain; but on the contrary the said Baron, as a man skilled in voyages, navigation and commerce, must see and judge diligently what is to be done and will be necessary in this affair, in order to make his report to His Majesty, and to this intent he should go to the said parts.

Inasmuch as the same petition will be made in favour of des marchands qui ont contribué pour maintenir et entretenir le fort de Quebec, assis au destroict de la rivière de Saint-Laurent ; que lesdicts marchands soient préférés sur tous autres pour le faict du commerce dudict pays.

Champlain.

V

Plaise à messieurs de la chambre du commerce.

Le sieur de Champlain supplie humblement estre entendu sur quelques faicts qu'il vous veut représenter pour l'honneur et gloire de Dieu, l'augmentation de ceste couronne et l'establissement d'vn grand commerce infaillible dans la Nouvelle-France, comme il est spécifié aux articles cy-dessoubs :

L'vtilité qui viendroit en premier rang de la pescherie des molue[s], qui se feroit annuellement par la demeure arrestée

---

the merchants who have contributed to the maintenance and upkeep of the fort of Quebec, situated at the narrows of the river St. Lawrence, the said merchants should be preferred above all others in the matter of the trade of the said country.

Champlain.

V

May it please the Gentlemen of the Chamber of Commerce.

The Sieur de Champlain humbly begs to be heard concerning certain facts which he wishes to present to you for the honour and glory of God, for the increase of this realm and for the establishment of a great and permanent trade in New France, as is specified in the following articles :

The advantage that would accrue in the first place from the cod-fishery, which would be carried on annually thanks des peuples qui seroit audict païs de la Nouvelle-France, où l'on pourroit faire du sel en bon nombre, et se fairoit deux sortes de pescherie qui seroict sect et vert, le sect pour l'Espaigne et le destroit, et le vert pour la France ; et se tireroit, par la diligence des pescheurs, plus d'vn million de livres par chacun an.

Plus la pescherie des saulmons, qui sont en telle quantité dans les ports et rivières que l'on en pourroit tirer par an, 100,000 livres.

Plus la pescherie de l'esturgeon marine, comme aussi des truites marines, qui est en telle quantité en la plupart des lieux qu'il s'en débiteroit en Allemagne, ou ès lieux que ce poisson est fort requis, par an, 100,000 liv.

Plus la pescherie des anguilles, sardignes, harans et autres poissons, y est en telle abondance que l'on en feroit, par an, 100,000 liv.

to the permanent settlement of the people inhabiting the said country of New France, where salt could be made in considerable quantity, and two kinds of fishing could be carried on, namely dry and green, the dry for Spain and the Straits [of Gibraltar], and the green for France ; and through the industry of the fishermen more than a million livres would be earned annually.

Likewise the salmon fishery, which fish are in such abundance in the harbours and rivers that one could procure annually 100,000 livres.

Likewise the sea-sturgeon fishery, as also that of the sea-trout, which are so abundant in most places that there might be sold in Germany, or in the regions where this fish is much in demand, annually for 100,000 livres.

Likewise eels, sardines, herrings and other fish are so plentiful that there could be obtained annually for 100,000 livres.

Plus des huilles de balleines, dont le pays abonde, l'on en peut faire audict pays, par an, pour 200,000 liv.

Plus l'on peut avoir des barbes desdictes baleines et dents de vache marine, qui sont meilleurs que le morfil, la livre valant vingt sols, et quantité de loups marins ; et s'en feroit par an, pour 500,000 liv.

Plus des bois, qui sont de haulteur esmerveillable, se feroit nombre de bons vaisseaux que l'on pourroit charger des marchandises cy-dessus et aultres, comme il sera dict cy-après. Desdicts bois se feroit mas de navires de plusieurs grandeurs, poutres, solives, planches de plusieurs sortes, comme chesnes, ormeaux, hestres, noyers, planes, érables, bouleaux, cèdres, cyprès,[1] chastaigniers, pruse, pains, sapains et aultres bois, se feroit merrains, bois de fantes pour fenestrage et lambris et pour aultres ameublements, dont

Likewise the whale-oils, in which the country abounds, of which one can make in the said country annually to the value of 200,000 livres.

Likewise whale-bone from the said whales, and walrus-tusks, which are better than elephant's teeth, the pound being worth twenty sols, and an abundance of seals ; and of these commodities there might be taken annually to the value of 500,000 livres.

Likewise from the forests, which are of marvellous height, a number of good vessels might be built, which could be laden with the above-mentioned merchandise and other commodities, as will be stated below. From the said forests could be made ships' masts of several sizes, beams, joists, planks of many varieties, such as oak, elm, beech, walnut, plane, maple, birch, cedar, cypress,[1] chestnut, hemlock, pine, fir and other woods ; there could be made stave-wood, sawed oak for window-frames and wainscoting and for other interior decoration, for which the most part of the said la plupart desdicts bois sont propres ; et s'en feroit, par an, pour 400,000 liv.

---

[1] Eastern red-cedar (*Juniperus virginiana*, L.). See p. 272 *supra*.

Plus il se retireroit nombre de goume, dont l'odeur tire à l'encens.

Plus des bois qui seroient inutiles se feroient des cendres ; et en tireroit-on, par an, pour 400,000 liv.

Des pains et sapains se tireroit bray, goudron, résine, par an, pour 100,000 liv.

Quant à la nature de la terre, il est certain qu'elle rend à leurs culteurs des bleds, mays, fèves, poids, racines dont la teinture de la racine fait vne couleur pareille à la cochenille ; et si ladicte racine estoit cultivée, il s'en tireroit, par an, pour 400,000 liv.

Plus l'on pourroit tirer vn notable profit de la chanvre, que la mesme terre rapporte sans cultiver, qui en bonté et

---

woods are suitable ; and there would be obtained from them annually to the value of 400,000 livres.

Likewise there could be obtained a quantity of gum, the smell of which resembles incense.

Likewise of the useless woods one could make ashes, from which there could be obtained annually to the value of 400,000 livres.

From the pines and firs could be obtained pitch, tar and resin to the value annually of 100,000 livres.

As for the nature of the soil, it is certain that it yields to the native tillers corn, maize, beans, peas, roots the dye of which makes a colour similar to cochineal ; and if the said root were cultivated one could obtain from it annually to the value of 400,000 livres.

Likewise a notable profit could be gained from the hemp, which the same soil yields without cultivation and which in quality and texture is in no wise inferior to nature ne doibt rien à la nostre ; et en tireroit-on, par an, pour 300,000 liv.

Après ces choses, on met en considération le fruict qui se tirera de plusieurs sortes de mines, comme argent, assier, fer qui rend 45 pour cent, du plomb qui rend 30 pour cent, du cuivre 18 pour cent, et ce que la demeure arrestée sur les lieux pourra descouvrir d'aultres minéraux ou aultres choses qui ne sont encores venus à nostre cognoissance ; et se pourroit tirer desdictes mines, par an, plus d'vn 1,000,000 liv.

Plus se feroit des toiles, comme olonnes, de ladicte chanvre dudict païs ; et se feroit cables, cordages, agrez pour toutes sortes de vaisseaux, pour plus de 400,000 liv.

Plus le trafiq et commerce des pelleteries n'est à rejeter, tant des martres, castors, renards, loups-serviers et aultres fourrures, avec peaux de cerfs, eslans, bufles, qui sont choses que dès à présent on en peut tirer plus de 400,000 liv.

---

ours ; and there could be obtained from it annually to the value of 300,000 livres.

In addition is to be considered the profits to be derived from several kinds of mines, such as those of silver, steel, iron which yields 45 per cent., lead which yields 30 per cent., copper 18 per cent., and whatever other minerals, or things not yet come to our knowledge which a permanent settlement in the country may discover ; and there could be derived from the said mines annually more than 1,000,000 livres.

Likewise cloths, such as sail-cloths, could be made from the hemp of the said country ; as well as cables, ropes, and rigging for all sorts of vessels, to the value of more than 400,000 livres.

Likewise the traffic and trade in furs is not to be scorned, not only marten, beaver, fox, lynx and other skins, but also deer, moose and buffalo robes, which are commodities from which one can derive at present more than 400,000 livres.

Plus l'on peut tirer dudict païs marbre, jeaspe, albastre, porfil et aultres espèces de pierres qui sont de valeur ; et peut s'en faire vn notable profit.

Les vignes sont en quantité audict païs, que la terre rapporte d'elle-mesme ; que si elles estoient cultivées, elles rendroient de grandes vtilités, comme des bleds et aultres choses, que la demeure arrestée pourra apporter par la diligence des habitants dudict païs.

Après toutes ces choses, on peut espérer à l'advenir la mesme abondance du bestial que nous voyons arriver au Pérou, despuis que les Espagnols y en ont apporté ; lequel aujourdhuy y abonde en telle sorte que presque il n'a plus de maistre ; et par le récit des Espagnols, il se retire des cuirs plus d'vn million d'or par chacun an. Car la terre de la Nouvelle-France est tellement arrousée de toutes parts, que la fertilité des prairies y est présente pour la nourriture, multiplication dudict bestial, quand l'on l'y aura porté.

Likewise from the said country can be obtained marble, jasper, alabaster, porphyry and other kinds of valuable stones; and a notable profit may be made therefrom.

Vines are in abundance in the said country, which the soil yields of itself ; and if they were cultivated they would yield great profits, as likewise corn and other things, which the permanent settlements will be able to supply through the industry of the inhabitants of the said country.

Besides all these things one may expect in the future the same abundance of cattle that is seen in Peru since the Spaniards introduced them there ; which cattle abound there to-day to such an extent that they almost run wild ; and from the Spaniards' account more than a million in gold is obtained annually from the hides. For New France is so well watered everywhere that the fertility of the meadows ensures the feeding and multiplying of the said cattle, whenever they are introduced there.

Oultre toutes ces choses, l'on peut espérer de treuver un chemin raccourcy pour aller à la Chine par le moyen du fleuve Saint-Laurent ; et cela estant, comme il est certain que l'on y parviendra, moyennant la grace de Dieu, sans beaucoup de difficultés ; et dedans six moys le voyage se pourroit faire ; d'où l'on peut tirer vn notable profit, tel que le tire le Portugois et aultres nations qui vont aux Indes. Car le sieur de Champlain a travaillé à icelle recherche despuis seize ans ; mais le peu d'assistance qu'il a eu, ne luy a pu permettre de parvenir à la fin de son entreprise, comme il fera estant assisté, et fera cognoitre la facilité de son entreprise.

In addition to all these things one may hope to find a short route to China by way of the river St. Lawrence ; and that being the case, it is certain that we shall succeed by the grace of God in finding it without much difficulty ; and the voyage could be made in six months ; whence a notable profit may be gained such as the Portuguese and other nations derive, who go to the Indies. For the Sieur de Champlain has been toiling at this quest for sixteen years ; but the scant assistance he has received has not been sufficient to allow him to complete his undertaking, as he will do when assisted, and will make known the freedom from difficulty of his undertaking.

VI

EXTRAIT DES LETTRES DE LA CHAMBRE DU COMMERCE

9 *Février*, 1618

Veu par la chambre la proposition faicte par le sieur de Champlain pour continuer la descouverture du pays de la Nouvelle-France par le dedans des terres, suivant le cours de la grande rivière de Canada, dict[e] de Saint-Laurent, et autres rivières et laqs qui y descendent, par le moyen de laquelle on peut venir à la congnoissance d'vn nombre infini de peuples jusques à présent incogneus, et les tirant des ténèbres de l'impiété et brutales mœurs esquels ils ont toujours vescu et vivent encores, les amener à la lumière de la vraye religion et à vne vie plus heureuse et civile, soubs l'heureuse conduicte de Sa Majesté très-chrestienne, de laquelle l'empire peut

---

VI

EXTRACT FROM THE LETTERS OF THE CHAMBER OF COMMERCE

February 9, 1618

The Chamber of Commerce in consideration of the proposal made by the Sieur de Champlain to continue the discovery of the country of New France towards the interior along the course of the great river of Canada, called the St. Lawrence, and other rivers and lakes which empty into it, by which means a knowledge can be had of an infinite number of peoples hitherto unknown, and by leading them out of the darkness of impiety and brutal manners in which they have always lived and do still live, bring them to the light of the true religion and to a more happy and civilized life, under the happy guidance of his Most Christian Majesty, whose empire can also thereby be greatly extended, by sub-

aussy grandement estre augmenté, réduisant en son obéissance vn pays aussy grand que la moitié de toute l'Europe, peu esloigné et quasi soubs mesme ciel, pararcolle et température ; veu aussi les articles et mémoires contenant les autres vtilités qui en peuvent revenir à Sa dicte Majesté et à ses subjects, tant pour le grand nombre de denrées et marchandises des plus requises et nécessaires en France qui se tirent à présent à grand prix des pays estrangers, que par l'espérance qu'il y a fondé en bonne conjecture et apparence, de pouvoir, par le moyen du cours de la grande rivière, le plus long de toutes celles du monde, et dont a esté desjà recogneu jusques à huit cens lieues et plus, parvenir, à travers de ce continent, jusques à la mer du Su ou du Nort, du costé de la Chine ; par le moyen de quoy, les marchandises desdictes provinces, qui ne peuvent estre conduictes en ces cartiers du couchant que par vne longue et périlleuse navigation, y seroient conduites à l'advenir par vn chemin

---

jecting to his authority a country as large as half of all Europe, not far distant and under almost the same latitude, parallel and climate ; in consideration likewise of the articles and memorials setting forth the other advantages that may thereby redound to his said Majesty and his subjects, both on account of the great quantity of goods and merchandise most requisite and necessary in France, which at present are obtained at great cost from foreign countries, as by the hope he has founded on good probability and likelihood of being able, by way of the course of the great river, the longest of all the rivers of the world, and of which already eight hundred leagues and more have been explored, to make his way, across this continent, as far as the South Sea or as the North Sea, towards China ; by which means the merchandise of the said provinces, which can only be brought into these western parts by a long and perilous navigation, would in future be brought by a much shorter and safer route, and one

beaucoup plus court et plus seur, et qui estant entièrement dans les terres subjectes à Sa Majesté, obligera tous les estrangers qui désirent vser de la commodité d'icelluy à prendre la loy d'elle, et apporteroit à ses subjects vn grand moyen de s'enrichir par ce trafficq ; ouy aussy ledict de Champlain par diverses fois, ensemble plusieurs autres personnes qui ont voyagé et faict séjour esdicts lieux, mandés pour estre enquis sur la commodité ou incommodité desdictes propositions et mémoires, mesme sur la plainte faicte à la chambre de ce que ledict Champlain et ses associés pour le commerce des castors et autres pelletteries sur ladicte rivière n'y ont faict conduire aucune famille pour peupler audict pays, encores que par le contrat de leur association ils fussent obligés à ce faire, en considération de ce qu'en leur faveur la liberté du commerce est ostée et interdite à tous autres marchands ; la matière mise en délibération et tout considéré,

---

which, lying entirely within the countries subject to His Majesty, will oblige all foreigners who desire to avail themselves of the advantages thereof to submit to his authority, and would afford his subjects a wonderful means of enriching themselves through this traffic ; having heard also the said de Champlain several times, together with several other persons who have travelled and sojourned in the said countries, called in to be questioned upon the advantages or disadvantages of the said proposals and memorials, even as to the complaint made to the Chamber that the said Champlain and his associates in the trade in beaver and other furs on the said river have not had a single family taken there to settle in the said country, although by the charter of their association they were bound to do so, in view of the fact that the freedom of trade is denied and forbidden to all other merchants in favour of them ; the matter having been deliberated upon and fully considered, the said Chamber is

ladicte chambre e[s]t d'advis, soubs le bon plaisir du roi et de nosseigneurs de son conseil, qu'il est du bien et de l'honneur de son service et de la commodité de ses subjects de recevoir ladicte proposition le plus promptement que faire se pourra, pour éviter les inconvéniens que l'on prévoit pouvoir bientost advenir si elle est négligée et remise, et que, à cest effet, elle doibt estre humblement suppliée de vouloir ordonner moyens et fonds audict Champlain, suffisants pour faire conduire esdicts lieux trois cens familles par chacun an, et continuer tant et si longuement qu'il sera jugé nécessaire pour peupler et establir des colonyes dans ledict pays, chacune desquelles familles sera composée de trois personnes au moings, et fournir des bestiaux et outils nécessaires, tant pour le labourage et culture de la terre que pour l'exercice des arts et mestiers qui seront jugés propres pour ledict establissement, et y conduire vne fois seulement trois cens soldats pour y faire, s'il en est besoing, avec les armes, recongnoistre

---

of the opinion, subject to the good pleasure of the King and of the Lords of his Council, that it is to the advantage and honour of his service and to the welfare of his subjects to receive the said proposal as promptly as possible, in order to avoid the inconveniences that are likely soon to arise if it is neglected and postponed, and that, to this end, His Majesty be humbly entreated to grant means and funds to the said Champlain, sufficient to have three hundred families taken out annually to the said country, and to continue for such a length of time as will be judged necessary, in order to settle and establish colonies in the said country, each of which families to be composed of at least three persons, and to furnish them with the cattle and implements necessary, as well for the tillage and cultivation of the soil as for the exercise of the arts and trades which will be judged suitable for the said establishment, and to take there in one lot three hundred soldiers in order to have His Majesty acknowledged there,

Sa Majesté, luy faire rendre l'obéissance et maintenir soubs son authorité les peuples et familles qui establiront la colonye ; et afin que, pendant que Sa Majesté ordonnera ce qui est nécessaire à la conduite desdictes familles et gens de guerre, les choses soient toujours maintenues de telle sorte, dans le pays, que ce qu'il y a de commencement de disposition au bien du service de Sa Majesté et à son obéissance, ne puisse recepvoir de diminution, mais elle augmentant en tant qu'il sera possible, elle sera humblement suppliée de confirmer audict de Champlain et ses associés, le privilége qui leur a esté accordé de faire ledict commerce de pelleteries sur ladicte rivière, privativement à tous autres pour le temps de ans qui en reste à expirer, à la charge expresse que, pendant chacune desdictes années restantes, ils seront tenus d'envoyer et faire conduire à Kebecq, où ils ont dressé leur habitation, dix familles composées et fournies comme il a esté dict cy-dessus, à leurs

---

if necessary, by force of arms, to have obedience shown him and to keep under his authority the people and families who will establish the colony ; and in order that, until His Majesty shall appoint what is necessary for the conduct of the said families and soldiers, affairs there may always be maintained in such wise that whatever beginning there is of a disposition for the good of His Majesty's service and for obedience to him may receive no diminution, but may increase as much as possible, His Majesty will be humbly entreated to confirm to the said de Champlain and his associates the monopoly granted to them of carrying on the said fur-trade along the said river, to the exclusion of all others for the period of years which still remain, on the express undertaking that, during each of the said remaining years they be required at their own costs and charges to send and have taken to Quebec, where they have established their settlement, ten families composed and

frais et despens ; et moyennant ce, demeureront lesdicts marchands et associés quittes, tant pour le passé que pour l'advenir, de toutes gratifications par eulx promises à quelques personnes que ce soit, soubs tittre de protection ou quelque autre prétexte ou couleur que ce puisse estre, dont Sa Majesté sera suppliée les descharger, encores que volontairement ou autrement ils y fussent obligés, sans toucher néantmoings à l'appointement accordé par eulx audict sieur de Champlain. Faict en ladicte chambre, le vendredy neufviesme jour de febvrier mil six cens dix-huict, et délivré suivant l'advis de ladicte chambre, du deuxiesme mars audict an.

furnished as was stated above ; and in return for this the said merchants and associates shall be exempt, not only for the past but also for the future, from all gratifications promised by them to any persons whatsoever under the guise of protection or any other pretext or pretence whatsoever, from which His Majesty will be entreated to discharge them, even though voluntarily or otherwise they be bound thereto, without prejudice nevertheless to the salary granted by them to the said Sieur de Champlain. Done in the said Chamber on Friday the ninth day of February 1618, and delivered in accordance with the resolution of the said Chamber of the second of March in the said year.

Printed in England at THE BALLANTYNE PRESS
SPOTTISWOODE, BALLANTYNE & CO. LTD.
Colchester, London & Eton

The Champlain Society

President

GEORGE M. WRONG, M.A., Professor of History in the University of Toronto

Vice-Presidents

Sir GEORGE GARNEAU, LL.D., B.A.Sc., Quebec, Chairman of the National Battlefields Commission

Sir DANIEL H. McMILLAN, K.C.M.G., Winnipeg, sometime Lieutenant-Governor of Manitoba

WALTER C. MURRAY, LL.D., Saskatoon, President of the University of Saskatchewan

Sir ROBERT FALCONER, K.C.M.G., LL.D., Toronto, President of the University of Toronto

CHARLES W. COLBY, Ph.D., Montreal, formerly Professor of History in McGill University

Hon. N. A. BELCOURT, LL.D., K.C., P.C., Ottawa, Senator of Canada

Rt. Hon. Sir ROBERT BORDEN, G.C.M.G., LL.D., K.C., P.C., Ottawa, sometime Prime Minister of Canada

Sir ROBERT KINDERSLEY, G.B.E., London, Eng., Governor of the Hudson's Bay Company

Hon. Sir CHARLES HIBBERT TUPPER, K.C.M.G., K.C., LL.B., Vancouver, B.C., sometime Minister of Justice and Attorney-General for Canada

Members of the Council

ARTHUR G. DOUGHTY, C.M.G., Docteur ès Lettres, Dominion Archivist

ADAM SHORTT, C.M.G., LL.D., Ottawa, Chairman of the Board of Historical Publications

A. H. U. COLQUHOUN, LL.D., Toronto, Deputy Minister of Education, Ontario

J. B. TYRRELL, M.A., B.Sc., Toronto, Editor of "The Journal of David Thompson"

His Honour Judge F. W. HOWAY, New Westminster, B.C.

J. CLARENCE WEBSTER, M.D., F.R.S. (Edin.), Shediac, N.B.

L'Abbé IVANHOË CARON, LL.D., Quebec

His Honour Judge GEORGE G. PATTERSON, New Glasgow, N.S.

Secretaries

ERIC ARMOUR, K.C., Toronto, Crown Attorney for the City of Toronto and the County of York

W. STEWART WALLACE, M.A., Toronto, Librarian of the University of Toronto

Treasurer

H. H. LANGTON, M.A., Toronto, late Librarian of the University of Toronto

Assistant Secretary-Treasurer

Miss JULIA JARVIS

Note.—*Correspondence should be addressed in care of The University of Toronto, The Library, Toronto, Canada.*

LIST OF MEMBERS

Abbott, J. L. G.	Vancouver
Acheson, The Rt. Rev. E. C., D.D.	Middletown, Conn.
Adami, J. G., M.D., F.R.S.	Liverpool
Adams, F. D., Ph.D., F.R.S.	Montreal
Aird, Sir John	Toronto
Allan, A. C.	London, Eng.
Amery, The Rt. Hon. L. S., M.P.	London, Eng.
Armour, Donald, M.B., F.R.S.	London, Eng.
Armour, Eric, K.C.	Toronto

Bain, J. Watson, B.A.Sc.	Toronto
Baird, A. B., M.A., D.D.	Winnipeg
Bartlet, Walter G.	Windsor, Ont.
Belcourt, Hon. N. A., K.C., LL.D.	Ottawa
Bell, Charles N., LL.D., F.R.G.S.	Winnipeg
Bennett, R. B., K.C.	Calgary
Bennett, W. S.	Quebec
Biggar, Geo. C.	Toronto
Biggar, H. P., LL.D.,	London, Eng.
Biggar, O. M., K.C.	Ottawa
Bingay, James, M.A., D. Paed.	Glace Bay, N.S.
Birks, Mrs. Henry	Montreal
Birks, W. M.	Montreal
Blake, Hume	Toronto
Bonner, G. T.	New York
Boone, C. A.	Toronto
Borden, Rt. Hon. Sir R. L., K.C., LL.D.	Ottawa
Boyce, A. C., K.C.	Ottawa
Breithaupt, A. L.	Kitchener
Breithaupt, W. H., C.E.	Kitchener
Brouse, W. H.	Toronto
Brown, Adam	Hamilton
Brown, Sir George	London, Eng.
Bruce, Alexander D.	Unionville
Bruce, Herbert A., M.D., F.R.C.S., Eng.	Toronto
Buchanan, A. W. P., K.C., LL.D.	Montreal
Burland, Mrs. J. H.	Montreal
Burns, A. N.	Toronto
Buscombe, Frederick	Vancouver

Cameron, I. H., M.B.	Toronto
Cameron, J. Home, M.A.	Toronto
Campbell, F. J.	Windsor, Que.
Campbell, Graham, M.B.	Toronto
Cantley, Thomas	New Glasgow
Caron, Abbé Ivanhoë	Quebec
Cartwright, A. D.	Ottawa
Casselman, A. C.	North Bay
Cassels, Hamilton, K.C.	Toronto
Caven, W. P., M.D.	Toronto
Chaffey, A. M.	Los Angeles, Cal.
Chapman, Joseph	Minneapolis, Minn.
Clark, J. M., K.C., LL.D.	Toronto
Clarke, A. H.	Calgary
Clarke, Eric, M.D.	Toronto
Clement, S. B.	North Bay, Ont.
Clements, W. L.	Bay City, Mich.
Colby, Charles W., M.A., Ph.D.	New York
Coldwell, Hon. Geo. R., K.C.	Brandon
Coleman, D. C.	Winnipeg
Colquhoun, A. H. U., LL.D.	Toronto
Conway, G. R. G.	Mexico City
Corbet, J. B.	Calgary
Coyne, J. H., M.A., LL.D.	St. Thomas, Ont.
Craick, W. A.	Toronto
Crowe, W., K.C., LL.B.	Sydney, N.S.
Cumberland, Mrs. Barlow	Port Hope

Dampier, L. H.	Strathroy
Davison, Horace W.	Toronto
Denham, Edward	New Bedford, Mass.
Dennis, J. S.	Montreal

LIST OF MEMBERS

Desjardins, Rev. P. E.	Westbrook, Me.
Dewar, D. B.	Hamilton
De Witt Jacob, B.C.L.	Montreal
Dingman, W. S.	Toronto
Doherty, Hon. C. J., K.C.	Ottawa
Donaldson, A. G.	Toronto
Douglas, Mrs. J.	New York
Dunlap, Mrs. D. A.	Toronto
Dunn, J. H.	London, Eng.
Dyment, A. E.	Toronto

Eaton, Mrs. Timothy	Toronto
Edwards, Major J. P.	Halifax
Egerton, Hugh E., M.A.	Oxford, Eng.
Ellison, R. S.	Casper, Wyoming
Ewart, John S., K.C.	Ottawa

Fairclough, H. R., M.A., Ph.D.	Stanford Univ., Cal.
Falconer, Sir Robert, K.C.M.G., LL.D.	Toronto
Flaherty, R. J.	Norwalk, Conn.
Flavelle, Sir J. W., Bart., LL.D.	Toronto
Fleck, Mrs. A. W.	Ottawa
Foran, T. P., K.C.	Hull, Que.
Foster, Francis A.	Edgartown, Mass.
Fotheringham, Major-Gen. J. T., M.D.	Toronto
Fox, W. Sherwood, M.A., Ph.D.	London, Ont.
Fraser, Lt.-Col. Alexander	Toronto
Fraser, John A.	Toronto
Fuller, H. J.	New York
Fulton, J. H.	New York

Galt, G. F.	Winnipeg
Garneau, Sir George, LL.D.	Quebec
Gill, Robert	Ottawa
Glasgow, Paul J.	New York
Goldie, William, M.D.	Toronto
Gooderham, G. H.	Toronto
Goodwin, W. L., B.Sc.	Toronto
Gow, George	Toronto
Grant, Lieut.-Col. W. A.	Côteau du Lac, Que.
Grant, W. L., M.A.	Toronto
Gray, F. M.	Toronto
Green, T. Milton	Lomond, Nfld.
Griffith, W. L.	London, Eng.
Groulx, Abbé Lionel	Montreal
Gundy, Mrs. W. P.	Toronto
Gurd, Norman	Sarnia

Hahn, Paul	Toronto
Hamilton, John, M.A., D.C.L.	Quebec
Hanna, D. B.	Toronto
Hanna, Mrs. W. J.	Sarnia
Harcourt, F. W., K.C.	Toronto
Hart, J. S., M.D.	Toronto
Harvey, D. C.	Winnipeg
Harvey, Hon. Horace	Edmonton
Heaton, F. R.	Montreal
Hebden, Mrs. E. F.	Montreal
Henderson, J.	Toronto
Hindlip, Rt. Hon. Lord	Worcester, Eng.
Hobson, R.	Hamilton
Hogg, William	Toronto
Holt, G. V.	Vancouver
Horne-Payne, R. M.	Brentwood, Essex, Eng.
Howay, His Hon. Judge	New Westminster, B.C.
Howland, Peleg	Toronto
Hunter, A. F., M.A.	Toronto
Hunter, Hon. Gordon	Victoria, B.C.
Huycke, His Hon. Judge	Peterborough

Ingersoll, J. H., K.C.	St. Catharines

James, Wilfred C.	Toronto
Jarvis, Aemilius	Toronto
Jeffreys, C. W.	Toronto
Jennings, C. A. C.	Toronto
Jones, F. C. L.	Toronto
Jones, H. V. F.	New York
Jones, T. Roy	Ottawa
Jost, A. C., M.D.	Halifax, N.S.

Kains, Archibald	New Orleans, La.
Keefer, F. H.	Thorold
Kemp, Sir A. E., K.C.M.G.	Toronto
Kennedy, Mrs. T. J.	SaultSte.Marie
Kennedy, W. P. M.	Toronto
Kerallain, Réné de	Quimper, France
Kilgour, J.	Toronto
Kindersley, Sir Robert, G.B.E.	Sharpthorne, Sussex, Eng.
Kingman, Abner	Montreal

LIST OF MEMBERS

Ladd, William Sargent, M.D.	New York
Lafleur, E., K.C., D.C.L.	Montreal
Laidlaw, R. A.	Toronto
Laidlaw, W. C.	Toronto
Lang, A. E., M.A.	Toronto
Langton, H. H., M.A.	Toronto
Lash, J. F.	Toronto
Lash, Miller	Toronto
Lee, J. T.	Chicago
Lefroy, H. B.	Toronto
Lefroy, Walter	London, Eng.
Leggat, William	Montreal
Leonard, Lt.-Col. R. W.	St. Catharines
Lighthall, W. D., K.C.	Montreal
Little, E. S.	London, Ont.
Little, H. A.	Woodstock
Lotbinière, A. J. de	Quebec

McArthur, D. A., M.A.	Kingston
McConnell, J. W.	Montreal
Macdonald, Mrs. W. C.	Toronto
McDougall, J. A.	Edmonton
McGibbon, G. C., M.D.	Honeywood, Ont.
Macgillivray, D.	Halifax
Machum, E. R.	St. John, N.B.
McInnes, Hector, K.C., LL.B	Halifax
Mackay, John	Toronto
MacKelcan, F. R.	Toronto
MacKinnon, James	Sherbrooke, Que.
McLaughlin, J. F.	Toronto
McLean, James A., LL.D.	Winnipeg
McLennan, Hon. J. S.	Sydney, N.S.
Macleod, J. E. A., K.C.	Calgary, Alta.
McMillan, Sir Daniel	Winnipeg
Macmillan, K. D., S.T.D.	Aurora, N.Y.
Macpherson, W. M.	Quebec
McPhillips, L. G., K.C.	Vancouver
Malpas, F. C.	Portland, Ore.
Marien, A., M.D.	Montreal
Massey, C. D.	Toronto
Massey, Vincent	Toronto
Masten, Hon. Mr. Justice	Toronto
Masters, C. H., K.C.	Ottawa
Meighen, Brig.-Gen. F.S.	Montreal
Meyers, C. D., M.D.	Toronto
Miller, J. O., M.A., D.C.L.	Toronto
Mills, Colonel Dudley	London, Eng.
Morison, J. L., M.A.	Newcastle-upon-Tyne, Eng.
Morris, H. H.	Vancouver
Moxon, A. E., F.R.G.S.	London, Eng.
Mulvey, Thomas	Ottawa
Murray, W. C., M.A., LL.D.	Saskatoon

Nason, Joseph	Toronto
Needler, G. H., Ph.D.	Toronto
Northrup, W. B., K.C., M.P.	Belleville

O'Brian, J. B., K.C.	Toronto
O'Brien, A. H., M.A.	Toronto
Osler, Britton	Toronto
Osler, Britton Bath	Toronto
Osler, F. G.	Toronto
Osler, Glyn, K.C.	Toronto
Osler, H. S., K.C.	Toronto

Patterson, E. G.	Peterborough
Patterson, E. L. S.	Sherbrooke, Que.
Patterson, His Hon. Judge	New Glasgow, N.S.
Peacock, E. R.	London, Eng.
Pearce, William	Calgary
Peck, E. A.	Peterborough
Penhallow, D. P., M.D.	St. Louis, Mo.
Phipps, A. R.	London, Eng.
Pierce, Lorne A.	Toronto
Ponton, W. M., K.C.	Belleville
Porteous, C. E. L.	Ile d'Orleans, Que.
Porter, A. J.	Niagara Falls, N.Y.
Primrose, A., M.B., C.M. (Edin.)	Toronto
Puddington, H. F.	St. John, N.B.

Redden, F. A. C.	London, Eng.
Reford, R. W.	Montreal
Reid, R. L., K.C.	Vancouver
Rice, A. Hamilton, M.D.	Newport, R.I.
Riddell, Hon. Mr. Justice	Toronto
Ross, Mrs. J. F. W.	Toronto
Ross, Rt. Rev. F.-X.	Gaspé, P.Q.
Rounsefell, F. W.	Vancouver
Rowell, Hon. N. W., K.C.	Toronto
Rowley, C. W.	Winnipeg
Rundle, W. E.	Toronto
Russell, T. A.	Toronto

Saul, J. C.	Toronto
Saunders, E. M.	Toronto

LIST OF MEMBERS

Schooling, Sir William, K.B.E.	London, Eng.
Scott, C. S.	Hamilton
Scott, Abbé H. A.	St. Foy, Que.
Scott, H. P.	Windsor, N.S.
Scott, James	Toronto
Short, William, K.C.	Edmonton
Shortt, Adam, C.M.G., LL.D.	Ottawa
Silcox, S., Ph.D.	Stratford, Ont.
Silver, H. R.	Halifax
Sirois, J., LL.D.	Quebec
Skelton, O. D., M.A., Ph.D.	Ottawa
Skinner, Sir Thomas	London, Eng.
Smith, G. Larratt	Toronto
Soliday, G. W.	Seattle, Wash.
Somerville, C. R.	London, Ont.
Squair, John, M.A.	Toronto
Starr, F. N. G., M.D.	Toronto
Stavert, Sir William, K.B.E.	Montreal
Stephenson, R. H.	Leicester, Eng.
Stevenson, P. C.	Ottawa
Stoker, Mrs. T. T. McG.	Montreal
Stone, William	Toronto
Strathcona, Baroness	London, Eng.
Strathy, G. B., M.A.	Toronto
Stuart, Sir Campbell, K.B.E.	London, Eng.
Surveyer, Hon. Mr. Justice	Montreal
Sweny, Brig.-Gen. W. F.	Salisbury, Eng.
Taylor, His Hon. Judge	Edmonton
Trethewey, W. G.	Toronto
Trigge, A. St. L.	Toronto
Tupper, Sir C. Hibbert, K.C.M.G.	Vancouver
Tyrrell, J. B., M.A.	Toronto
Underhill, F. H.	Saskatoon
Van Horne, Lady	Montreal
Wade, F. C., K.C.	London, Eng.
Walker, A. H.	Toronto
Walker, H. B.	Montreal
Wallace, W. S., M.A.	Toronto
Warner, C. M.	Boston
Webster, J. C., M.D. (Edin.)	Shediac, N.B.
Wetherell, J. E.	Toronto
White, James, F.R.G.S.	Ottawa
White, W. K.	Woodstock, Ont.
Wilkie, Major A. B.	Toronto
Williams-Taylor, Sir F.	Montreal
Willison, Sir John	Toronto
Wishart, D. Gibb, M.D.	Toronto
Witton, H. B.	Hamilton
Wood, E. R.	Toronto
Woods, J. H.	Calgary
Wrong, G. M., M.A., LL.D.	Toronto
Young, A. H., M.A.	Toronto

SUBSCRIBING LIBRARIES

Adelaide, S. Australia	Public Library of South Australia
Albany, N.Y.	State Library
Amherst, Mass.	Converse Memorial Library, Amherst College
Ann Arbor, Mich.	University of Michigan
Annapolis Royal, N.S.	Fort Anne Park Museum
Augusta, Maine	Maine State Library
Austin, Texas	University of Texas
Baltimore, Md.	Enoch Pratt Free Library
,,	Johns Hopkins University
,,	Peabody Institute
Bangor, Maine	Public Library
Barrie, Ont.	Public Library
Berkeley, Cal.	University of California
Berlin, Germany	State Library
Birmingham, England	Birmingham Public Library
Bloomington, Ind.	University of Indiana Library
Bordeaux, France	Bibliothèque de la Ville de Bordeaux
Boston, Mass.	Athenæum Library
,,	Public Library
,,	Massachusetts Historical Society
Brisbane, Australia	University of Queensland
Brooklyn, N.Y.	Public Library
Buffalo, N.Y.	Buffalo Historical Society
Calgary, Alberta	Public Library
,,	Western Canada College
Cambridge, England	University Library
Cambridge, Mass.	Harvard University
Cardiff, Wales	Central Library
Chatham, Ont.	Public Library
Chicago, Ill.	Newberry Library
,,	Public Library
,,	The John Crerar Library
,,	University of Chicago
Cincinnati, Ohio	Public Library
Cleveland, Ohio	Public Library
Clinton, N.Y.	Hamilton College Library
Columbus, Ohio	Ohio State University Library
Detroit, Mich.	Public Library
Dublin, Ireland	Trinity College
Edinburgh, Scotland	Library of Society of Writers to H.M. Signet
,,	University of Edinburgh
Edmonton, Alberta	Alberta Provincial Library
,,	Edmonton Public Library
Evanston, Ill.	Northwestern University
Fort William, Ont.	Public Library
Fredericton, N.B.	New Brunswick Legislative Library

SUBSCRIBING LIBRARIES

Galt, Ont.	Public Library
Glasgow, Scotland	Mitchell Library
,,	University of Glasgow
Göttingen, Germany	University Library
Grand Forks, N.D.	State Historical Society of North Dakota
Guelph, Ont.	Ontario Agricultural College
Halifax, N.S.	Presbyterian College
,,	Nova Scotia Legislative Library
,,	Dominion Atlantic Railway Library
,,	Dalhousie University
,,	Cambridge Library
Hamilton, Ont.	Public Library
Hanover, N.H.	Dartmouth College
Hochelaga, P.Q.	Villa Maria Convent
Indianapolis, Ind.	Indiana State Library
Kingston, Ont.	Queen's University
,,	Royal Military College
,,	Kingston Public Library
Kitchener, Ont.	Kitchener Public Library
Lansing, Mich.	Michigan State Library
Lawrence, Kan.	University of Kansas
Leeds, England	University of Leeds
Lincoln, Nebraska	University of Nebraska
Lindsay, Ont.	Lindsay Public Library
London, England	Dept. of Printed Books, British Museum
,,	Royal Colonial Institute
,,	Royal Geographical Society
,,	The Colonial Office Library
,,	House of Lords
,,	Hudson's Bay Co.
,,	London Library, St. James' Square, S.W.
,,	University of London
London, Ont.	Public Library
,,	University of Western Ontario
Los Angeles, Cal.	Los Angeles Public Library
Lynn, Mass.	Public Library
Madison, Wis.	State Historical Library of Wisconsin
Manchester, England	Reference Library
,,	John Rylands Library
,,	University of Manchester
Melbourne, Australia	Public Library, Museums, and National Gallery
Middletown, Conn.	Wesleyan University
Minneapolis, Minn.	Minneapolis Athenæum
,,	University of Minnesota
Montpelier, Vt.	Vermont Historical Society
Montreal, P.Q.	Fraser Institute
,,	Civic Library
,,	Montreal College
,,	Normal School Library
,,	McGill University
,,	Canadian Pacific Railway Library
,,	Université de Montréal

SUBSCRIBING LIBRARIES

Montreal, P.Q.	Ecole des Hautes Etudes Commerciales
Moose Jaw, Sask.	Public Library
Newcastle-upon-Tyne, England	Public Library
New Haven, Conn.	Yale University
New Orleans, La.	Howard Memorial Library
New York, N.Y.	Public Library
,,	American Geographical Society of New York
,,	New York Historical Society
,,	Columbia University Library
Niagara Falls, Ont.	Public Library
Northampton, Mass.	The Forbes Library
North Bay, Ont.	Public Library
Oberlin, Ohio	Oberlin College
Ottawa, Ont.	Carnegie Library
,,	Department of National Defence
,,	Dominion Archives
,,	Canadian National Parks, Dept. of Interior, Ottawa
,,	Library of Parliament, Canada
,,	Collegiate Institute
,,	University of Ottawa
,,	Northwest Territories Branch, Department of the Interior
,,	Geological Survey of Canada
Owen Sound	Public Library
Oxford, England	All Souls College
,,	Beit Library of Colonial History
,,	Bodleian Library
Paris, France	Bibliothèque de l'Université de Paris
,,	Bibliothèque Nationale
,,	Bibliothèque du Ministère de la Guerre
Petrolea, Ont.	The Charlotte Eleanor Englehart Hospital Library
Philadelphia, Pa.	The Library Company of Philadelphia
,,	University of Pennsylvania
Pittsburg, Pa.	Carnegie Library
Plymouth, Eng.	Plymouth Public Library
Port Arthur, Ont.	Public Library
Poughkeepsie, N.Y.	Vassar College
Princeton, N.J.	Princeton University
Providence, R.I.	Brown University
,,	The John Carter Brown Library
Quebec, P.Q.	Archives Office, Province of Quebec
,,	Legislative Library of Quebec
,,	Quebec Literary and Historical Society
Regina, Sask.	Legislative Library of Saskatchewan
Sacramento, Cal.	State Library of California
Salem, Mass.	The Essex Institute
San Francisco, Cal.	Mechanics' Institute Library
,,	Public Library
San Gabriel, Cal.	The Henry E. Huntington Library
Sarnia, Ont.	Sarnia Public Library
Saskatoon, Sask.	University of Saskatchewan

SUBSCRIBING LIBRARIES

Seattle, Wash.	University of Washington
,,	Public Library
Sherbrooke, P.Q.	La Corporation Episcopale du Diocèse
Sidney, Vancouver Island, B.C.	Alpine Club of Canada
Spokane, Wash.	Spokane Public Library
Ste. Anne de Bellevue	Macdonald College
St. Catharines, Ont.	Public Library
,,	Collegiate Institute
St. Hyacinthe, Que.	Séminaire de St. Hyacinthe
St. John, N.B.	Free Public Library
St. Louis, Mo.	St. Louis Mercantile Library Association
,,	Washington University
St. Paul, Minn.	Minnesota Historical Society
St. Thomas, Ont.	St. Thomas Public Library
Stanford University, Cal.	Leland Stanford University
Stratford, Ont.	Public Library
Sydney, Australia	The Public Library of New South Wales
Syracuse, N.Y.	Public Library
Topeka, Kan.	Kansas State Historical Society
Toronto, Ont.	Academy of Medicine
,,	Canadian Bank of Commerce, Archives Department
,,	Department of Education, Ontario
,,	Law Society of Upper Canada
,,	Legislative Library, Ontario
,,	McMaster University Library
,,	National Club
,,	Provincial Archives
,,	Public Library (two sets)
,,	Toronto Club
,,	Trinity College
,,	University of Toronto
,,	Victoria College
,,	York Club
Upsala, Sweden	Royal University of Upsala
Urbana, Ill.	University of Illinois
Vancouver, B.C.	Carnegie Library
,,	University of British Columbia
Victoria, B.C.	Legislative Library of British Columbia
Walkerville, Ont.	Public Library
Washington, D.C.	Bureau of American Ethnology, Smithsonian Institution
,,	Library of Congress
Wellesley, Mass.	Wellesley College Library
Wellington, N.Z.	Turnbull Library, Dept. of Internal Affairs
West Point, N.Y.	United States Military Academy
Windsor Eng.	The Royal Library, Windsor Castle
Windsor, Ont.	Public Library
Williamstown, Mass.	The Chapin Library, Williams College
Winnipeg, Man.	Provincial Library
,,	Women's Canadian Club
,,	University of Manitoba
Woodstock, Ont.	Public Library
Worcester, Mass.	Free Public Library

PUBLICATIONS OF THE CHAMPLAIN SOCIETY

1. The History of New France, Vol. I., by Marc Lescarbot, with English translation and appendices by W. L. Grant, and an introduction by H. P. Biggar.

2. The Description and Natural History of the Coasts of North America (Acadia), by Nicolas Denys, translated and edited, with a memoir of the author, collateral documents, and a reprint of the original, by Professor W. F. Ganong.

3. Documents Relating to the Seigniorial Tenure in Canada, 1598–1854; edited, with historical introduction and explanatory notes, by Professor W. Bennett Munro.

4. The Logs of the Conquest of Canada, edited, with an historical introduction constituting a history of the naval side of the British Conquest of Canada, by Colonel William Wood.

5. New Relation of Gaspesia, by Christian LeClercq. An interesting study, hitherto untranslated, of the Gaspé region and of the North American Indians, translated and edited by Professor W. F. Ganong.

6. Samuel Hearne: Journey from Prince of Wales Fort, in Hudson Bay, to the Northern Ocean, 1769–1772. A new edition edited by J. B. Tyrrell. The original, published in 1795, is now difficult to obtain.

7. The History of New France, by Marc Lescarbot. Vol. II.

8. Historical Journal of the Campaigns in North America, 1757–1760. Vol. I. By Captain John Knox; edited by A. G. Doughty, Dominion Archivist. This work, now very scarce, is by far the fullest account of the events of the time, including especially the two sieges of Quebec in 1759–1760.

9 and 10. Historical Journal of the Campaigns in North America. Vols. II. and III. By Captain John Knox.

11. The History of New France, by Marc Lescarbot. Vol. III.

12. The Journals of David Thompson. Edited by J. B. Tyrrell.

13. The Canadian War of 1812. (In three volumes.) Edited by Colonel William Wood. Vol. I.

14. The Canadian War of 1812, by Colonel William Wood. Vol. II.

NEW SERIES

The Works of Samuel de Champlain. An English translation with French text. (In six volumes.) Edited by H. P. Biggar. Vol. I.

The Works of Samuel de Champlain. Vol. II.